PHOTODYNAMIC THERAPY FOR BARRETT'S OESOPHAGUS

with use of 5-Aminolevulinic Acid

Jolanda van den Boogert-Kluin

ISBN 90-73235-87-1

Front cover: laser scanning microscopy image of a rat oesophagus at 3 hours after administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid (with the help of GJ, Fred and Vivian).

Back cover: Desiderius Erasmus.

Print: Optima Grafische Communicatie, Rotterdam.

PHOTODYNAMIC THERAPY FOR BARRETT'S OESOPHAGUS

with use of 5-Aminolevulinic Acid

FOTODYNAMISCHE THERAPIE VOOR BARRETT OESOFAGUS

met gebruik van 5-Aminolevulinezuur

PROEFSCHRIFT

ter verkrijging van de graad van doctor
aan de Erasmus Universiteit Rotterdam
op gezag van de rector magnificus
prof.dr. P.W.C. Akkermans M.A.
en volgens het besluit van het College voor Promoties

de openbare verdediging zal plaats vinden op
woensdag 8 december 1999 om 15.45 uur

door

Jolanda van den Boogert-Kluin

geboren te Rotterdam

PROMOTIECOMMISSIE

Promotor:	Prof.dr. H.W. Tilanus
Overige leden:	Prof. J.H.P. Wilson
	Prof.dr. W.J. Mooi
	Prof.dr.ir. M.J.C. van Gemert
Copromotor:	Dr. R.W.F. de Bruin

This study was supported by
The Netherlands Digestive Diseases Foundation (grant WS 95-10).

This thesis was made possible thanks to financial contributions of
AstraZeneca, Baxter, CardioFocus, Harlan Nederland, Hope Farms, Netherlands Digestive Diseases Foundation, St. Jude Medical, UDT Instruments.

PREFACE

Since 1970 the incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma is rising in a rate greater than that of any other malignancy. It is assumed that the majority of these adenocarcinomas arise in metaplastic transformed epithelial cells lining the oesophagus, known as Barrett's oesophagus. Treatment of patients with Barrett's oesophagus involves antireflux medication or antireflux surgery. Although the reflux complaints disappear, these therapies have no effect on the Barrett's epithelium itself and malignant degeneration can still proceed. Photodynamic therapy with use of 5-aminolevulinic acid is a new treatment option ideally leading to selective endoscopic ablation of the Barrett's epithelium.

Before photodynamic therapy can routinely be used in clinical practice the technique must be optimized to ensure complete ablation of all (pre)malignant cells and minimize the occurrence of unwanted side effects. The preclinical studies described in this thesis were set up to provide insight in the therapy and to investigate the modalities for effective results. This thesis forms the fundamentals for future clinical studies with photodynamic therapy employing 5-aminolevulinic acid to treat oesophageal lesions.

For a long time both clinical and experimental research on Barrett's oesophagus have been points of interest of the Department of Surgery from the University Hospital Rotterdam Dijkzigt. The experiments described in this thesis were conducted at the Laboratory for Experimental Surgery, Erasmus University Rotterdam and were supported by the Netherlands Digestive Diseases Foundation. The studies for this project were carried out in close collaboration with the Department of Gastro-enterology and Hepatology, University Hospital Rotterdam Dijkzigt, the Department of Pathology, Erasmus University Rotterdam and the Department of Clinical Physics, Dr. Daniël den Hoed Cancer Centre, Rotterdam, the Netherlands.

Rotterdam, December 1999
Jolanda van den Boogert-Kluin

CONTENTS

	Outline of the Thesis	13
PART I:	GENERAL INTRODUCTION	
Chapter 1	Barrett's Oesophagus: Pathophysiology, Diagnosis and Management *Scand J Gastroenterol 1998;33:449-453*	19
Chapter 2	Endoscopic Ablation Therapy for Barrett's Oesophagus: Prospects for Photodynamic Therapy *Am J Gastroenterol 1999;94:1153-1160*	31
Chapter 3	Fundamentals of 5-Aminolevulinic Acid-Based Photodynamic Therapy	49
PART II:	ANIMAL MODEL	
Chapter 4	Animal Model for Barrett's Oesophagus in the Rat and Opossum *Gastroenterology (submitted)*	63
Chapter 5	Oesophagojejunostomy Provides a Unique, Reproducible Model for Barrett's Oesophagus *J Surg Oncol (submitted)*	79
Chapter 6	Gastric Perforation in Rats after Oesophagojejunostomy *Lab Anim Sci 1999;38:49-52*	93
PART III:	PHARMACOKINETICS OF 5-AMINOLEVULINIC ACID	
Chapter 7	Pharmacokinetics of 5-Aminolevulinic Acid-induced Porphyrin Production in Rats *J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1998;44:29-38*	103

Chapter 8 Kinetics, Localization and Mechanism of 5-Aminolevulinic Acid-induced Endogenous Photosensitization of Rat Normal and Barrett's Oesophagus
Lasers Surg Med 1999;24:3-13
Proc SPIE 1997;3191:214-220 121

PART IV: OPTIMIZATION OF PHOTODYNAMIC THERAPY

Chapter 9 Timing of Illumination Is Essential for Safe and Efficient Photodynamic Therapy
Br J Cancer 1999;79:825-830
Proc SPIE 1998;3563:82-88 139

Chapter 10 Photodynamic Therapy for Oesophageal lesions: Selectivity depends on Wavelength, Power and Light Dose
Ann Thorac Surg 1999;68:1764-1770
Proc SPIE 1998;3563:112-117 153

Chapter 11 Fractionated Illumination: Effect on Ferrochelatase Activity
J Photochem Photobiol B Biol (submitted) 165

Chapter 12 Fractionated Illumination: Effect on Blood Flow and PpIX Formation
Lasers Med Sci (submitted) 179

PART V: GENERAL DISCUSSION

Chapter 13 General Discussion: Considerations for Clinical Application 195

Summary and Conclusions 205

Samenvatting en Conclusies 215

ADDENDUM

Contributing Authors 227

Dankwoord 229

Curriculum Vitae 233

List of Abbreviations 235

To my parents

To Vincent

Responsura tuo nunquam est par fama labori
(Horatius)

sed

suavis laborum est praeteritorum memoria
(Cicero)

Je roem zal nooit evenredig zijn aan de moeite die je je getroost hebt
maar
zoet is de herinnering aan het voorbije zwoegen

PHOTODYNAMIC THERAPY FOR BARRETT'S OESOPHAGUS

with use of 5-Aminolevulinic Acid

OUTLINE OF THE THESIS

Barrett's oesophagus is a premalignant lesion of the oesophagus characterized by the presence of columnar epithelium with intestinal metaplasia in the distal oesophagus. Oesophageal adenocarcinoma (the most rapidly increasing cancer in the Western world) is thought to originate from Barrett's oesophagus following a sequence from metaplasia through dysplasia to adenocarcinoma. To gain insight in the various aspects of Barrett's oesophagus, the state of the art of its pathophysiology, diagnosis and management is reviewed in **Chapter 1**, Part I, the general introduction of the thesis.

Both endoscopic surveillance and oesophageal resection are recommended for patients with Barrett's oesophagus and high-grade dysplasia. This, however, is still controversial as the mortality and morbidity associated with oesophageal resection are considered to be high in view of a preneoplastic disease. Therefore, endoscopic ablation therapies, including photodynamic therapy, have been experimentally used to treat Barrett's oesophagus. The characteristics of the various endoscopic ablation therapies and their results are summarized in **Chapter 2**.

The studies described in this thesis aim at making 5-aminolevulinic acid-mediated photodynamic therapy clinically applicable for the endoscopic treatment of Barrett's oesophagus. For a better understanding of the experimental chapters, Part I is completed with **Chapter 3**, outlining the fundamentals of 5-aminolevulic acid-based photodynamic therapy.

All experiments in the present thesis are performed in animals. Besides the normal rat oesophagus, rats with Barrett's oesophagus are used. Part II includes Chapters 4, 5 and 6 and discusses the animal model.

In **Chapter 4** it is hypothesized that longstanding reflux of alkaline duodenal content in the oesophagus is involved in the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus. To test this hypothesis an oesophagojejunostomy, inducing duodeno-oesophageal reflux, is performed in rats and opossums. The opossum is

chosen because the gastrointestinal tract of this species is similar to man.

Although the animal model introduced in Chapter 4 is suitable for studies of the pathogenesis and etiology of Barrett's oesophagus, for studies concerning photodynamic treatment it is more convenient to have an animal model that induces Barrett's oesophagus within a shorter time period. Therefore, in **Chapter 5** several pathogenetic and possibly synergistic factors are investigated which could hasten the induction of Barrett's oesophagus in rats by duodeno-oesophageal reflux.

The occurrence and differential diagnosis of gastric perforation, as observed in some animals in the rat model for Barrett's oesophagus, is described in **Chapter 6**.

Prior to the routine use of the endogenous photosensitizer 5-aminolevulinic acid for photodynamic therapy several practical questions must be answered. These questions include general and oesophagus-specific pharmacokinetic aspects of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced photosensitivity and are studied in Part III.

Chapter 7 is set up to investigate the pharmacokinetics of 5-aminolevulinic acid and 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrin production in rats. Special attention is given to general pharmacokinetic questions regarding the toxicity of 5-aminolevulinic acid after oral and intravenous administration, the site of porphyrin synthesis and its relation to 5-aminolevulinic acid concentration, and the time course for the development and declination of photosensitization. Additionally, localization of photosensitive porphyrins is studied using laser scanning microscopy.

Chapter 8 focusses on the pharmacokinetics of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrin accumulation in the rat normal and Barrett's oesophagus. For an optimal treatment questions arise as where and at what time after 5-aminolevulinic acid administration do porphyrins accumulate in the normal and Barrett's oesophagus. In the study in this Chapter biochemical determinations and laser scanning microscopy are carried out to answer these questions.

Possibilities for improving 5-aminolevulinic acid-photodynamic therapy are investigated in Part IV of this thesis.

In **Chapter 9** the optimal time between administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid and subsequent illumination, as deducted on a pharmacological base in Chapter 8, is studied in an animal model. Besides the effect of the length of the time-interval on the effectiveness of the treatment in terms of complete ablation of the epithelium, the occurrence of side effects and its impact on oesophageal function in the healing phase are evaluated.

Although in the literature the selectivity of photosensitization has been given more attention than the physical aspects of the applied laser light, these aspects will also have their effect on the achieved damage. **Chapter 10** was set up to investigate the effect of the applied wavelength, power output, and total light dose on the epithelial and muscular damage induced by endo-oesophageal 5-aminolevulinic acid-based photodynamic therapy. To make possible proper evaluation of the results the porphyrin fluorescence in the oesophageal wall and the total applied light dose at the oesophageal surface are both measured during illumination.

Finally, the supposed beneficial effects of fractionated illumination are studied in **Chapters 11** and **12**. Not only the effect on the extent of epithelial ablation but also the possible mechanism of fractionation is studied. Chapter 11 tests the biochemical hypothesis that a fractionated illumination selectively reduces ferrochelatase activity and herewith raises the concentration of the photosensitive porphyrins. Furthermore, this chapter investigates the effect of a second dose of 5-aminolevulinic acid to ensure that the relative ferrochelatase deficit becomes relevant. Chapter 12 focusses on the effect of fractionating the light on oesophageal blood flow and ongoing protoporporphyrin IX production. For this, experiments using various fractionating schedules are carried out.

Finally, in **Chapter 13**, Part V, the general discussion, the consequences of the results of the thesis for 5-aminolevulinic acid-photodynamic therapy for Barrett's oesophagus are briefly discussed, recommendations for future research are provided and the prospects for clinical application are considered.

Part I

General Introduction

Chapter 1

Barrett's Oesophagus: Pathophysiology, Diagnosis and Management

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.* *Scandinavian Journal of Gastroenterology* 1998;33:449-453.

INTRODUCTION

Since 1970 the incidence of adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus has increased in many Western countries, at a rate that exceeds that of any other malignancy.[1] Most adenocarcinomas arise in a short or long segment of Barrett's epithelium.[2] Strict follow-up of patients with Barrett's oesophagus seems therefore of great importance. Consensus about the necessity, the manner and frequency of follow-up has not been achieved. The same holds for the definition, diagnosis, and treatment of Barrett's oesophagus. This chapter presents the state of the art of the pathophysiology of Barrett's oesophagus, its diagnosis and its management.

DEFINITION

In 1950 the British surgeon Norman Barrett published a report that described ulcers in the distal part of the oesophagus lined by columnar epithelium. He believed that the ulcerated columnar-lined tissue was a tubular segment of the stomach in patients with congenitally short squamous-lined oesophagus.[3] Today it is generally thought that the tubular structure is the lower oesophagus, lined with columnar epithelium. This entity is now called Barrett's oesophagus. Theoretically, in a Barrett's oesophagus the junction between the squamous epithelium of the oesophagus and the columnar epithelium of the stomach (the so-called Z-line) is located more proximal than the anatomic junction between oesophagus and stomach. As the exact location of the end of the oesophagus and the beginning of the stomach cannot be identified precisely, this definition is not always useful in clinical practice.[4] The only reliable endoscopic landmarks for defining the anatomic gastro-oesophageal junction are provided by the proximal margins of the gastric mucosal folds. Until recently a Barrett's oesophagus was diagnosed when columnar epithelium was obtained by biopsy at a site minimally 2 to 3 centimetres above the proximal margins of the gastric folds.[5] In 80% of cases the columnar Barrett's mucosa consists of specialized epithelium with incomplete intestinal metaplasia and characteristic goblet cells. In 20% only cardia-type or gastric fundic-type mucosa is found. Only specialized columnar epithelium with intestinal metaplasia predisposes to adenocarcinoma.[6]

Today, a generally accepted definition of Barrett's oesophagus is therefore the presence of metaplastic columnar mucosa with goblet cells in the oesophagus, regardless of the length of the segment (Figure 1.1). This replaces the former term "short-segment Barrett's", used to indicate columnar glandular mucosa within 2 to 3 centimetres of the proximal edge of the gastric folds.[4,7,8] Recently, much attention has been paid to the fact that in biopsy specimens from, or just distal to, a normally

located Z-line intestinal metaplasia can be found.[9] This intestinal metaplasia of the cardia should not be labelled Barrett's oesophagus.[10]

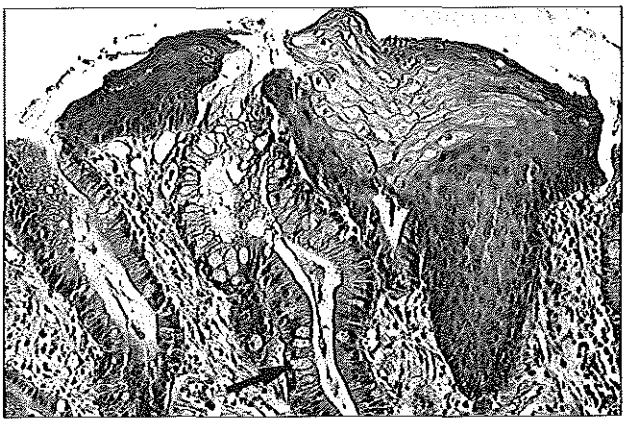


Figure 1.1 Columnar-lined oesophagus with intestinal metaplasia and characteristic goblet cells (arrow) (haematoxylin and eosin staining).

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

A Barrett's oesophagus probably originates from a multipotent undifferentiated stem cell of oesophageal origin.[11] The pathogenetic stimulus that causes metaplasia in case of Barrett's oesophagus is still the subject of research. Usually, Barrett's oesophagus is found in patients who are examined endoscopically because of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, on the basis of a defective lower oesophageal sphincter or hiatus hernia.[12] Not all patients with gastro-oesophageal reflux disease develop Barrett's oesophagus. In animal models reflux of gastric content alone is not enough to induce comparable abnormalities.[13] One hypothesis is that alkaline (bile) duodenal content reflux is involved in the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus. As such, patients with complications of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, like strictures, Barrett's oesophagus and adenocarcinoma would have mainly duodenogastro-oesophageal reflux.[14] Analysis of frequency and duration of reflux and reflux material in gastro-oesophageal reflux disease patients with and without Barrett's oesophagus show conflicting results, partly due to inaccurate detection methods.[15] The same difficulties are encountered when assessing differences in life-style as potential risk factors for the development of Barrett's oesophagus. Environmental risk factors for the development of adenocarcinoma in apparent Barrett's oesophagus have been identified: a higher frequency and long-standing periods of (acid) reflux, smoking and, possibly, excessive alcohol consumption.[15,16]

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The true prevalence of Barrett's oesophagus is difficult to determine. From an autopsy study at the Mayo Clinic it appears that only one of 20 patients with Barrett's oesophagus is clinically diagnosed.[17] On the basis of these findings the estimated prevalence of Barrett's oesophagus in the general population is 1%. In patients with gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (10% to 30% of the general population) prevalence is 12%.[18] The prevalence of Barrett's oesophagus increases with age and occurs predominantly in the Caucasian race, with a male to female ratio of 2:1. The high number of unrecognized Barrett's oesophagus can be explained by the fact that Barrett's oesophagus itself does not cause any symptoms. Moreover, not all patients with symptoms of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease will be examined endoscopically. Finally, not all abnormalities will be recognized at endoscopy. The risk of oesophageal adenocarcinoma in patients with Barrett's oesophagus appears to be about 30- to 50-fold higher than that in general population, with an estimated incidence of 1 in 150 patient-years.[6,19,20] Since 1970 a marked epidemiological change in oesophageal carcinoma has appeared in many Western countries: incidence rates for oesophageal squamous cell carcinoma are fairly stable, whereas the incidence of adenocarcinoma increases at a rate surpassing that of any other cancer.[1] The incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma in the USA in 1990 is estimated to be about three times the incidence of 1978.[21,22] In many Western countries the mortality due to oesophageal cancer has increased during the past 25 years (for example, a threefold increase in The Netherlands between 1970 and 1994) (Table 1.1).

Table 1.1 Mortality of oesophageal cancer in The Netherlands, according to data of the Central Bureau for Statistics.

Year	Men	Women	Total
1970	238	141	379
1980	288	143	431
1990	547	286	833
1994	657	317	974

Unfortunately, in most countries data concerning the percentage of adenocarcinoma are not available. It is estimated that approximately 75% of all adenocarcinomas of the oesophagus originate from Barrett's oesophagus according to the former definition of >2-3 cm Barrett's epithelium.[2,23,24] Unrecognized short-segment columnar metaplasia may account for a large proportion of the remaining 25%.[23,24]

CLINICAL DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of Barrett's oesophagus depends on endoscopic examination with biopsy of the abnormal epithelium. At endoscopy squamous epithelium appears glossy, pearly white or pinkish-tan, whereas columnar mucosa has a salmon-pink velvety-like aspect (Figure 1.2).

The junction between squamous and Barrett's epithelium can therefore readily be seen in most cases, so that an experienced endoscopist can diagnose Barrett's oesophagus mostly on sight. However, in 18% of the endoscopically negative patients glandular mucosa with intestinal metaplasia can be found in the distal oesophagus.[25] These, formerly called short-segment Barrett's with intestinal metaplasia, may underlie the increasing frequency of cancer of the gastro-oesophageal junction in the USA and Europe (Figure 1.3).[21,25] Thus, acquisition of biopsy specimens is also required when glandular mucosa is just seen within 2 to 3 cm of the gastric folds (that is, a normal appearing Z-line). Experimental diagnostic techniques, like cytopathology, are only used in situations in which biopsy is difficult (for example, stricture).[26]

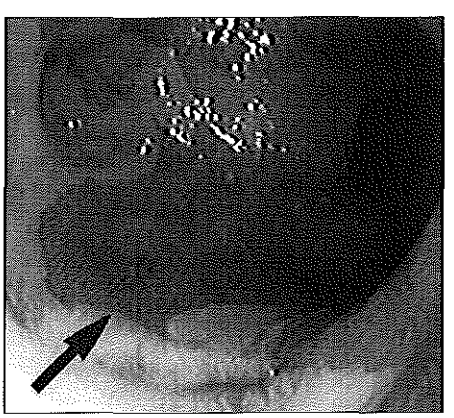


Figure 1.2 Endoscopic appearance of a patient with Barrett's oesophagus. The border between Barrett's and squamous epithelium is indicated by an arrow.

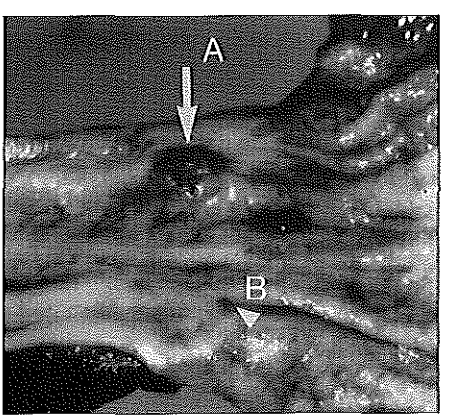


Figure 1.3 Resection specimen with a small adenocarcinoma (A) just above the gastro-oesophageal junction. Area B shows microscopic Barrett's mucosa with intestinal metaplasia.

Malignant degeneration. At present, dysplasia is the best known marker for malignant change in Barrett's epithelium. The grade of dysplasia is indistinguishable at endoscopy. Neoplastic transformation has to be clearly differentiated from reactive and regenerative changes. Dysplasia is defined as "indefinite" when this distinction cannot be made unequivocally. Dysplasia is classified histologically in accordance with a modification of the guidelines for

inflammatory bowel disease: high-grade or low-grade, on the basis of the grade of distortion of crypt architecture and the extent of nuclear abnormalities.[27] In high-grade dysplasia nuclei often vary markedly in size, shape and polarity. It is unnecessary and probably impossible to distinguish reliably between high-grade dysplasia and carcinoma *in situ*. Use of the latter term has now been abandoned to prevent confusion with the classification intramucosal carcinoma.

Since there is a considerable inter- and intra-observer variation in the histological diagnosis of dysplasia in Barrett's oesophagus, biopsy specimens should be examined by a second pathologist.[28] More objective markers to determine the potential risk of cancer development are extensively studied. Flow cytometric analysis of DNA content in Barrett's epithelium showed that aneuploidy or increased G2/tetraploidy fraction is an independent risk factor for malignant degeneration in younger patients.[29] More data on DNA content in Barrett's oesophagus without dysplasia is required before flow cytometry can be used in clinical practice. Specific genetic changes, like mutations and loss of the p53 tumour suppressor gene (resulting in p53 protein overexpression) and Y-chromosome loss, are found to go along with increasing dysplasia.[30] Increased expression of epidermal growth factors and their receptors, reduced or absent cell adhesion molecule expression (such as E-cadherine), and endoscopic laser-induced fluorescence spectroscopy may also identify Barrett's oesophagus at risk of neoplastic progression.[31] These markers can not be applied for clinical diagnosis yet, since long-term follow-up studies of these features are lacking.

ENDOSCOPIC SURVEILLANCE

There is no consensus on the management of patients with Barrett's oesophagus. Prospective studies on the effect of surveillance on survival are not available. Early detection of adenocarcinoma during endoscopic surveillance for known Barrett's oesophagus leads to a better survival.[24,32] Regular endoscopic surveillance is therefore advised by many authors.[7,8,32-34] A recommended protocol for surveillance requires four biopsies, one from each quadrant, every 2 cm along the visible length of Barrett's mucosa, with additional specimens from any abnormal-appearing area. Cost-effectiveness studies advise endoscopic surveillance every 2 to 3 years.[33,34] Other retrospective studies, however, could not find a significant difference in life expectancy between patients who are and who are not under endoscopic surveillance.[35,36] This is mainly due to the relative low absolute incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma (ranging from one case per 46 to 441 patient-years). Other causes of death play a more important role in patients with Barrett's oesophagus. These data, strengthened by the substantial costs of

surveillance programs, form an argument to examine patients with Barrett's oesophagus only when they are symptomatic.[35,36] Arguments for both views considered, ideally every patient should undergo an individual surveillance program, based on co-morbidity and the relative risk of malignant degeneration. Estimating this relative risk for each individual is the main problem; at present only male sex, smoking, (possibly excessive alcohol consumption), considerable length of the Barrett's epithelium (> 8 cm), time of existence, and dysplasia count for risk factors.[20] As yet, surveillance programs are being carried out in a few clinics only.

THERAPY

The choice of therapy in patients with Barrett's oesophagus depends mainly on the existence and grade of dysplasia.

Barrett's oesophagus without dysplasia. Because reflux is the presumed inciting factor in the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus, the therapy has been aimed at reducing the acid exposure of the oesophagus. By far most patients are treated medically with a H-2 receptor blocker or a proton pump inhibitor. Although reflux symptoms can mostly be controlled successfully, medical therapy usually does not result in consistent reduction in the extent of existing Barrett's epithelium and consequently does not lead to a reduction of the risk of developing adenocarcinoma.[37] Especially in young patients whose reflux complaints are not controlled after a 12-week course of medical therapy, a Nissen fundoplication is optional.[8,38] Besides the disadvantages of morbidity and a (small) chance of mortality, surgical treatment does not lead to regression of the length and grade of dysplasia of the Barrett's epithelium either.[39] The chance of progression is probably smaller than after conservative treatment.[40] Once surveillance is considered, endoscopy every 2 years seems to be the best option.

Barrett's oesophagus with indefinite or low-grade dysplasia. Patients who are diagnosed as being indefinite for dysplasia should undergo a repeat endoscopic examination after an 8- to 12-week course of intensive acid suppression (for example, 40 mg omeprazole daily). In case of low-grade dysplasia, antireflux therapy (either conventional or surgical) is recommended, followed by endoscopic surveillance every 6 to 12 months.

Barrett's oesophagus with high-grade dysplasia. There are two main schools of thought with regard to the stage of the disease that requires surgery. According to the first school, an intensive (every 3 to 6 months) endoscopic biopsy protocol

with multiple biopsies can differentiate high-grade dysplasia from early adenocarcinoma in Barrett's oesophagus.[41] In the second school an oesophagectomy is performed already in the stage of high-grade dysplasia. The latter is based on studies showing that multiple biopsies can fail to detect malignant lesions owing to sampling error and that the distinction between high-grade dysplasia and early adenocarcinoma is not always possible by biopsy.[42] In our opinion no general treatment protocol can be advised for patients with high-grade dysplasia. Instead, therapy must be prescribed individually on basis of histological findings and co-morbidity, after discussing the risks and alternatives (experimental therapies).

EXPERIMENTAL THERAPIES

Neither medical nor surgical treatment in fact eliminates Barrett's epithelium itself: progression of the length, the grade of dysplasia, and development of adenocarcinoma can still occur. Experimental therapies focus on removal of the abnormal epithelium. Endoscopic mucosectomy is one of these new modalities, mainly investigated in China and Japan.[43] A second approach is thermal therapy using laser light that causes destruction of the superficial epithelium (for example, ablation or coagulation). In combination with acid suppression, restoration of squamous epithelium has been shown to occur.[44,45] Another form of laser therapy is photodynamic therapy. As will be outlined in Chapter 3, this type of therapy is based on the accumulation of exogenously administered or endogenously produced photosensitive porphyrins.[46] Porphyrins ideally accumulate semi-selectively in Barrett's epithelium, and subsequent intraluminal illumination with light of an appropriate wavelength creates a photochemical reaction that results in destruction of the Barrett's epithelium. As will be reviewed in the next chapter, in some clinics (mainly in the USA) photodynamic therapy has already been applied clinically, with various degrees of success.[47-50] For both forms of laser therapy it is not clear whether the risk of adenocarcinoma development is indeed decreased. Recently, it has been reported that beneath the area that is re-epithelialized with squamous epithelium, areas with Barrett's epithelium are still apparent.[44,48] Probably this can be avoided by optimizing the treatment factors. The described laser therapies require additional long-term acid suppression to prevent new development of Barrett's oesophagus. Another question concerns the long-term consequence of laser therapy. It is known that a corrosive lesion is a risk factor for the development of squamous cell carcinoma. Long-term follow-up studies are therefore required.

CONCLUSIONS

Barrett's oesophagus is a complication of long-standing gastro(duodeno)-oesophageal reflux. Since the exact pathophysiology is not known, prevention is hardly possible. The diagnosis of Barrett's oesophagus requires the presence of intestinal metaplasia in at least one biopsy from the lower oesophagus. Barrett's oesophagus is a premalignant condition with an increased risk for the development of adenocarcinoma. The incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma is increasing sharply. Cost and time-consuming surveillance programs -with still doubtful efficacy- are carried out in few clinics only. Research on objective markers to determine the risk of malignant degeneration must lead to efficient surveillance of a selected group of patients in the future. Antireflux therapy seems to have little effect on the Barrett's epithelium itself. Experimental therapies focus on the removal of the columnar epithelium with restoration of the squamous epithelium. Laser therapy and especially photodynamic therapy seem to be promising modalities.

REFERENCES

1. Blot WJ, Devesa SS, Kneller RW, Fraumeni JF. Rising incidence of adenocarcinoma of the esophagus and gastric cardia. JAMA 1991;265:1287-1289.
2. Cameron AJ, Lomboy CT, Pera M, Carpenter HA. Adenocarcinoma of the esophagogastric junction and Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1995;109:1541-1546.
3. Barrett NR. Chronic peptic ulcer of the oesophagus and "oesophagitis". Br J Surg 1950;38:175-182.
4. Spechler SJ, Goyal RK. The columnar-lined esophagus, intestinal metaplasia, and Norman Barrett. Gastroenterology 1996;110:614-621.
5. McClave SA, Worth Boyce H Jr, Gottfried MR. Early diagnosis of columnar-lined esophagus: a new endoscopic diagnostic criterion. Gastrointest Endosc 1987;33:413-416.
6. Hameeteman W, Tytgat GNJ, Houthoff HJ, Van den Tweel JG. Barrett's esophagus: development of dysplasia and adenocarcinoma. Gastroenterology 1989;96:1249-1256.
7. Tytgat GNJ. Does endoscopic surveillance in esophageal columnar metaplasia (Barrett's esophagus) have any real value? Endoscopy 1995;27:19-26.
8. Clark GWB, Ireland AP, DeMeester TR. Dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus: diagnosis, surveillance and treatment. Dig Dis Sci 1996;14:213-227.
9. Riddell RH. The biopsy diagnosis of gastroesophageal reflux disease, "carditis", and Barrett's esophagus, and sequelae of therapy. Am J Surg Pathol 1996;S31-S51.
10. Weinstein WM, Ippoliti AF. The diagnosis of Barrett's esophagus: goblets, goblets, goblets. Gastrointest Endosc 1996;44:91-95.
11. Spechler SJ, Goyal RK. Barrett's esophagus. N Engl J Med 1986;315:362-371.
12. Monnier P, Fontolliet C, Savary M, Ollyo JB. Barrett's oesophagus or columnar epithelium of the lower oesophagus. Baillière's Clin Gastroenterol 1987;1:769-789.
13. Miwa K, Sahara H, Segawa M, Kinami S, Sato K, Miyazaki I, Hattori T. Reflux of duodenal or gastro-duodenal contents induces esophageal carcinoma in rats. Int J Cancer 1996;67:269-274.
14. Attwood SEA, DeMeester TR, Bremner CG, Barlow AP, Hinder RA. Alkaline gastroesophageal reflux: implications in the development of complications in Barrett's columnar-lined lower esophagus. Surgery 1989;106:764-770.
15. Vaezi MF, Singh S, Richter JE. Role of acid and duodenogastric reflux in esophageal mucosal injury: a review of animal and human studies. Gastroenterology 1995;108:1897-1907.
16. Savarino V, Mela GS, Zentilin P, Mele MR, Mansi C, Remagnino AC, Vigneri S, Malesci A, Belicchi M, Lapertosa G, Celle G. Time pattern of gastric acidity in Barrett's esophagus. Dig Dis Sci 1996;41:1379-1383.
17. Cameron AJ, Zinsmeister AR, Ballard DJ, Carney JA. Prevalence of columnar-lined (Barrett's) esophagus. Comparison of population-based clinical and autopsy findings. Gastroenterology 1990;99:918-922.
18. Winters C Jr, Spurling TJ, Chobanian SJ, Curtis DJ, Esposito RL, Hacker JF, Johnson DA, Cruess DF, Cotelingam JD, Gurney MS, Cattau EL. Barrett's esophagus: a prevalent, occult complication of gastroesophageal reflux disease. Gastroenterology 1987;92:118-124.
19. Cameron AJ, Ott BJ, Payne WS. The incidence of adenocarcinoma in columnar-lined (Barrett's) esophagus. N Engl J Med 1985;313:857-859.
20. Menke-Pluymers MB, Hop WC, Dees J, Van Blankenstein M, Tilanus HW. Risk factors for the development of an adenocarcinoma in columnar-lined (Barrett) esophagus. The Rotterdam Esophageal Tumor Study Group. Cancer 1993;72:1155-1158.
21. Pera M, Cameron AJ, Trastek VF, Carpenter HA, Zinsmeister AR. Increasing incidence of

adenocarcinoma of the esophagus and esophagogastric junction. Gastroenterology 1993;104:510-513.
22. Blot WJ, Devesa SS, Fraumeni JF. Continuing climb in rates of esophageal adenocarcinoma: an update. JAMA 1993;270:1320.
23. Clark GWB, Smyrk TC, Burdiles P, Hoeft SF, Peters JH, Kiyabu M, Hinder RA, Bremner CG, DeMeester TR. Is Barrett's metaplasia the source of adenocarcinomas of the cardia? Arch Surg 1994;129:609-614.
24. Wright TA, Gray MR, Morris AI, Gilmore IT, Ellis A, Smart HL, Myskow M, Nash J, Donelly RJ, Kingsnorth AN. Cost effectiveness of detecting Barrett's cancer. Gut 1996;39:574-579.
25. Spechler SJ, Zeroogian JM, Antonioli DA, Wang HH, Goyal RK. Prevalence of metaplasia at the gastro-oesophageal junction. Lancet 1994;344:1533-1536.
26. Geisinger KR, Teot LA, Richter JE. A comparative cytopathologic and histologic study of atypia, dysplasia, and adenocarcinoma in Barrett's esophagus. Cancer 1991;69:8-16.
27. Haggitt RC. Barrett's esophagus, dysplasia, and adenocarcinoma. Hum Pathol 1994;25:982-993.
28. Reid BJ, Haggitt RC, Rubin CE, Roth G, Surawicz CM, Van Belle G, Lewin K, Weinstein WM, Antonioli DA, Goldman H, MacDonald W, Owen D. Observer variation in the diagnosis of dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. Hum Pathol 1988;19:166-178.
29. Menke-Pluymers MBE, Mulder AH, Hop WC, Van Blankenstein M, Tilanus. Dysplasia and aneuploidy as markers of malignant degeneration in Barrett's oesophagus. The Rotterdam Oesophageal Tumour Study Group. Gut 1994;35:1348-1351.
30. Krishnadath KK, Tilanus HW, Van Blankenstein M, Bosman FT, Mulder AH. Accumulation of p53 protein in normal, dysplastic, and neoplastic Barrett's oesophagus. J Pathol 1995;175:175-180.
31. Menke-Pluymers MBE. Risk factors for neoplastic progression in Barrett's mucosa. Eur J Surg Oncol 1996;22:311-316.
32. Streitz JM, Andrews CW, Ellis FH. Endoscopic surveillance of Barrett's oesophagus. Does it help? J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 1993;105:383-388.
33. Achkar E, Carey W. The cost of surveillance for adenocarcinoma complicating Barrett's esophagus. Am J Gastroenterol 1988;83:291-294.
34. Provenzale D, Kemp JA, Arora S, Wong JB. A guide for surveillance of patients with Barrett's esophagus. Am J Gastroenterol 1994;89:670-680.
35. Van der Burgh A, Dees J, Hop WCJ, Van Blankenstein M. Oesophageal cancer is an uncommon cause of death in patients with Barrett's oesophagus. Gut 1996;39:5-8.
36. Spechler SJ, Robbins AH, Bloomfield RH, Vincent ME, Heeren T, Doos WG, Colton T, Schimmel EM. Adenocarcinoma and Barrett's esophagus: an overrated risk? Gastroenterology 1984;87:927-933.
37. Sampliner RE, Garewal HS, Fennerty MB, Aickin M. Lack of impact of therapy on extent of Barrett's esophagus in 67 patients. Dig Dis Sci 1990;35:93-96.
38. Spechler SJ. Comparison of medical and surgical therapy for complicated gastroesophageal reflux in veterans. N Engl J Med 1992;326:786-792.
39. Sagar PM, Ackroyd R, Hosie KB, Patterson JE, Stoddard CJ, Kingsnorth AN. Regression and progression of Barrett's oesophagus after antireflux surgery. Br J Surg 1995;82:806-810.
40. Ortiz A, Martinez de Haro LF, Parrilla P, Morales G, Molina J, Bermejo J, Liron R, Aguilar J. Conservative treatment versus antireflux surgery in Barrett's oesophagus: long-term results of a prospective study. Br J Surg 1996;83:274-278.
41. Levine DS, Haggitt RC, Blount PL, Rabinovitch PS, Rusch VW, Reid BJ. An endoscopic biopsy protocol can differentiate high-grade dysplasia from early adenocarcinoma in Barrett's

esophagus. Gastroenterology 1993;105:40-50.
42. Cameron AJ, Carpenter HA. Barrett's oesophagus, high grade dysplasia and early adenocarcinoma. Comparison of endoscopic biopsy and surgical pathology findings. Gut 1996;38(suppl1):T92.
43. Fleischer DE, Wang GQ, Dawsey SM, Tio TL, Kidwell JA, Zhoe B, Goddkuhn E. Endoscopic therapy for esophageal dysplasia and early esophageal cancer in Linxian, China. Implications for the United States. Gastrointest Endosc 1997;45:AB68.
44. Berenson MM, Johnson TD, Markowitz NR, Buchi KN, Samowitz WS. Restoration of squamous mucosa after ablation of Barrett's esophageal epithelium. Gastroenterology 1993;104:1686-1691.
45. Sampliner RE, Hixson LJ, Fennerty B, Garewal HS. Regression of Barrett's esophagus by laser ablation in an anacid environment. Dig Dis Sci 1993;38:365-368.
46. Van Hillegersberg R, Kort WJ, Wilson JHP. Current status of photodynamic therapy in oncology. Drugs 1994;48:510-527.
47. Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Barrett's esophagus: photodynamic therapy for ablation of dysplasia, reduction of specialized mucosa, and treatment of superficial esophageal cancer. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;42;64-69.
48. Barr H, Shepherd NA, Dix A, Roberts DJH, Tan WC, Krasner N. Eradication of high-grade dysplasia in columnar-lined (Barrett's) oesophagus by photodynamic therapy with endogenously generated protoporphyrin IX. Lancet 1996;348:584-585.
49. Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Photodynamic therapy in Barrett's esophagus: reduction of specialized mucosa, ablation of dysplasia, and treatment of superficial esophageal cancer. Semin Surg Oncol 1995;11:372-376.
50. Laukka MA, Wang KK. Initial results using low-dose photodynamic therapy in the treatment of Barrett's esophagus. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;42:59-63.

Chapter 2

Endoscopic Ablation Therapy for Barrett's Oesophagus: Prospects for Photodynamic Therapy

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.* *American Journal of Gastroenterology* 1999;94:1153-1160.

INTRODUCTION

A generally accepted definition of Barrett's oesophagus is the presence of columnar epithelium with intestinal metaplasia in the distal oesophagus (Chapter 1).[1] This intestinal type with characteristic goblet cells is especially at risk for neoplastic progression. Carcinogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus is thought to follow a sequence from intestinal metaplasia, to low-grade dysplasia (LGD) through high-grade dysplasia (HGD), to adenocarcinoma.[2] The choice of therapy of Barrett's oesophagus mainly depends on the existence and grade of dysplasia. In Barrett's oesophagus without dysplasia, therapy is focussed on the reflux complaints of the patients. Although reflux is the presumed inciting factor in the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus and antireflux therapy (medical or surgical) is effective in controlling the reflux symptoms, it usually does not result in reduction in length or grade of Barrett's oesophagus.[3-5] Patients with Barrett's oesophagus with LGD are usually advised to undergo additional endoscopic biopsy surveillance. When intramucosal carcinoma is found, oesophagectomy is the treatment of choice. The treatment of patients with Barrett's oesophagus with HGD is still controversial; both oesophagectomy and intensive endoscopic surveillance are treatment options.[1] Alternatively, endoscopic ablation therapy, which is starting to become clinically applicable, could prove to be preferable. This chapter describes the current management of patients with Barrett's oesophagus with HGD and summarizes the various methods and results of endoscopic ablation. In addition, the future direction of the management of Barrett's oesophagus is discussed.

CURRENT MANAGEMENT OF HIGH-GRADE DYSPLASIA

The choice between surgery and endoscopic surveillance in the management of HGD in Barrett's oesophagus is determined by three factors: first, by the natural history of the dysplasia; second, by the accuracy of the (preoperative) diagnosis; and third, by the risks of both strategies.

Unfortunately, little is known about the first factor, the natural history of HGD. In a prospective study with a mean follow-up time of 30 months, Levine *et al.* examined 58 patients with Barrett's oesophagus with HGD.[2] Of these, 26% progressed to intramucosal carcinoma, in 27% the grade of dysplasia degraded to a less severe histological diagnosis, and in 47% the HGD remained stable. Another study reported the follow-up of 22 patients with HGD, of whom 16 had been followed for several months.[6] In two patients (13%) adenocarcinoma developed, in three patients (19%) HGD remained stable, and in 11 patients (69%) HGD could not be diagnosed in biopsies taken at consecutive exams. Therefore, the choice for

surgical treatment must not be based only on the presumption that carcinoma will develop in all patients with HGD. Whether the results of both studies can be explained by real regression or progression of the dysplasia, by a "therapeutic" biopsy, or by a false-positive or a false-negative diagnosis is not clear. Apart from a few case reports, no other studies have investigated the natural history of HGD in Barrett's oesophagus.

The second factor that determines the choice of therapy relates to the reliability of the endoscopic diagnosis of HGD in Barrett's oesophagus. Studies that compare the endoscopic biopsy diagnosis and the surgical pathology findings have shown that areas of HGD are often small and cannot be distinguished macroscopically from Barrett's oesophagus with no dysplasia.[7-9] In only two studies was a correlation found between endoscopic biopsy results and surgical pathology findings of HGD in Barrett's oesophagus.[7,10] Others have reported that in 11% to 67% of patients with HGD on endoscopic biopsies, an adenocarcinoma was found in the resected specimen.[8,9,11] In the English literature between 1990 and 1997, 10 retrospective reports of surgical therapy for Barrett's oesophagus with HGD have been published.[10-19] A total of 119 patients were analysed, of whom 56 (47%) were found to have adenocarcinoma in the resected specimen.[11] In 41 (73%) this concerned a stage I carcinoma ($T_1N_0M_0$, T_1=tumour that invades lamina propria or submucosa but not muscularis mucosae). These data explain why some authors advise an endoscopic biopsy surveillance for HGD, whereas others recommend resection of Barrett's oesophagus containing HGD. The difference between pre- and postoperative diagnosis suggests that dysplastic areas are often missed by routine biopsies. Moreover, there is a considerable intra- and inter-observer variation in histological diagnosis of dysplasia.[20] To increase the accuracy of the endoscopic biopsy, it is essential to take ample biopsies. A recommended protocol requires four biopsies, one from each quadrant, every 2 cm along the visible length of the Barrett's mucosa, with additional biopsies from any abnormal-appearing areas.[21] Furthermore, biopsies should be examined by a second experienced pathologist and, if available, compared with earlier biopsies from the same patient. Whenever the diagnosis of HGD remains uncertain, patients should undergo a repeat endoscopic examination within 1 month. As inflammation can make the diagnosis HGD difficult, these patients need to be treated with intensive acid suppression before the repeat endoscopic examination.[22]

Finally, the risks of both strategies must be determined for each patient individually. The operative mortality of a resection for oesophageal carcinoma in our hospital was 3% between 1990 and 1995. Other studies report mortality rates of 3% to 10%.[11,16,19,22] Short term morbidity of oesophagectomy in most studies has been described to be approximately 30%.[18,19,23] However, complications in up to 78% have been reported.[11,16] Quality of life after oesophagectomy is estimated to

be 0.8 on a quality-of-life scale from 0 to 1, with 1 being normal.[22] In studies after 1990, 56 patients have been followed who underwent an oesophagectomy for Barrett's oesophagus with HGD and in whom a carcinoma was detected in the resection specimen.[11] The 5-year overall survival was 82%. In a prospective Dutch study including 112 patients who underwent an oesophageal resection for adenocarcinoma, a 5-year survival of 24% was found.[23] In 12 patients the carcinoma was restricted to the (sub)mucosa; the 5-year survival in this subgroup was 63%. These results indicate that early detection of adenocarcinoma and subsequent oesophageal resection, preferable at the stage of HGD, is important in terms of survival. Therefore, in our opinion, endoscopic surveillance is indicated only in patients who can physically undergo an oesophagectomy when carcinoma is found. In the future this will probably change, as experimental studies focus on endoscopic ablation of Barrett's epithelium and small, early stage adenocarcinomas, resulting in the regeneration of squamous epithelium in the oesophagus. The minimally invasive character of endoscopic ablation therapies make them well suited for non-operable candidates.

ENDOSCOPIC ABLATION THERAPIES

Endoscopic surgical ablation can be performed by either a thermal, chemical or mechanical method. Combination with antireflux medication (or possibly antireflux surgery) is recommended to provide optimal circumstances for regeneration of squamous epithelium.[24]

Thermal ablation

Thermal ablation can be achieved using electrosurgery or laser coagulation. Multipolar electrocoagulation (MPEC) operates by passing a current between electrodes which are in contact with tissue. The main disadvantage of electrosurgery is the relatively uncontrolled depth of the ablation.[24] Therefore, the skill and the experience of the performing physician will determine the effect of the treatment and the occurrence of side effects. The effect of electrosurgery can be enhanced by transferring the electrical energy to the tissue surface through electrically conductive plasma of argon gas (argon beam plasma coagulation, ABPC).[25] This results in an evenly distributed ablation, and injury is controlled to a depth of 1 to 2 mm, because of insulating properties of the eschar formed after coagulation.[24]

Thermal destruction of Barrett's mucosa can also be achieved by contact or noncontact laser (photo)ablation, in which energy is rapidly transferred from the laser beam to the cell.[26] Depth of the ablation depends on tissue optical properties

and laser parameters. The absorption of optical radiation is strongly wavelength-dependent. Argon (514.5 nm) and potassium titanium phosphate (KTP, 532 nm) lasers penetrate tissue approximately 1 mm; neodymium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet (Nd:YAG, 1064 nm) lasers penetrate approximately 3 to 4 mm.

Chemical ablation

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) is a chemical ablation method. It is based on the accumulation of a photosensitizer in tissue. Subsequent illumination with light of an appropriate wavelength induces a photochemical reaction that results in tissue destruction (Chapter 3). The depth of treatment is dependent on the penetration of the laser light and localization of the photosensitizer in the oesophageal wall. The photosensitizers mainly used are haematoporphyrin derivative (HpD, a mixture of different porphyrins), and dihaematoporphyrin ester/ether (DHE, an enriched form of HpD marketed as Photofrin®). Problems associated with the administration of exogenous porphyrins are a low selectivity to accumulate in malignant tissues, skin photosensitivity for up to several months, and the occurrence of strictures in the oesophagus after PDT.[27-30]

A newer agent, 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA), is a naturally occurring intermediate of the haem synthetic pathway and induces the endogenous production of photosensitive protoporphyrin IX, predominantly in epithelial layers.[31,32] Consequently, tissue destruction is limited to the mucosa. In addition, skin photosensitivity lasts only 24 to 48 hours, because of the rapid metabolism of ALA *via* protoporphyrin IX into haem. Therefore, ALA seems highly suitable for treatment of Barrett's oesophagus. However, incomplete ablation of the Barrett's epithelium or the subsquamous persistence of Barrett's mucosa have been reported.[33,34] With respect to premalignancy, it is crucial to eliminate all Barrett's cells. Furthermore, subsquamous Barrett's mucosa (pseudoregression) is probably less accessible (or inaccessible) for endoscopic surveillance.[35]

Mechanical ablation

Endoscopic mucosal resection can be achieved by a "suck and cut" or "lift and cut" method using a diathermic snare.[36] This technique has gained increasing popularity in the treatment of early oesophageal cancer. It is most suitable for the removal of polyps or possibly small flat lesions. However, the technique is less appropriate for the removal of larger flat areas like Barrett's oesophagus. Surgical ultrasound, in which energy is concentrated very close to the tip of a transducer, is another method that causes primarily mechanical ablation by scrubbing, abrading or separating layers.[25] An important characteristic of ultrasonic aspiration is its ability to fragment cellular tissue while leaving elastic connective tissue undamaged.[37]

RESULTS OF ENDOSCOPIC ABLATION THERAPIES

Numerous reviews concerning Barrett's oesophagus and the endoscopic treatment of this entity have been published over the last 5 years.[1,38-44] They all describe one or more uncontrolled studies involving a few patients; however, no systematic overview including all reports of ablation therapy for Barrett's oesophagus exists.

Using the Index Medicus, the MEDLINE database, cross-referencing and abstracts of major meetings on endoscopic ablation therapy, we collected all of the case reports and patient studies on this topic up to May 1998. To complete the survey, results presented in abstracts are included in the tables in this chapter but will not be discussed in the text. Unfortunately, not all authors describe the grade of dysplasia before and after treatment, nor their exact definition of complete remission, nor whether Barrett's epithelium was completely ablated. Furthermore, the duration and thoroughness of the follow-up varied considerably.

Thermal ablation

Twenty-eight reports have been published on thermal ablation of Barrett's oesophagus, 13 as articles and 15 as abstracts (Table 2.1).[45-72] These reports include a total of 284 patients, of which only seven were reported to have HGD (all patients with HGD are presented in abstracts).

Electrocoagulation (MPEC and ABPC) was used in five studies including 15 patients.[45-48,52,53] MPEC was used in 12 patients. After 10 to 18 months follow-up, residual Barrett's oesophagus was found in none.[45-48] Treatment took, on average, five sessions; complications were mild and occurred in 7%.[46] ABPC was used in only three patients; all showed residual Barrett's oesophagus after treatment, and in one patient LGD progressed to HGD under treatment.[52,53]

In contrast to electrocoagulation, the results of laser ablation are reported mainly in published articles. Laser ablation was used in 73 patients, of whom 50 were reported in articles and 23 in abstracts.[63-72] Of the 50 patients, 33 were treated with argon or KTP laser and 17 with Nd:YAG laser. After laser ablation, residual Barrett's oesophagus was reported in 31 of 50 patients (62%). Using argon or KTP laser, residual Barrett's oesophagus was reported in 80% (26 of 33) of patients after 3 to 18 months of follow-up. With a minimal follow-up of 2 months after Nd:YAG laser treatment, residual Barrett's oesophagus was found in 29% (5 of 17). Laser ablation therapy usually took 1 to 8 sessions and, apart from minor retrosternal discomfort for 2 to 3 days, no complications were reported.

Table 2.1 Results of Studies Performing Thermal Ablation Therapy for Barrett's Oesophagus (for legend see page 39).

Author[ref]	Year	Treatment	Patients (n), Grade of Dysplasia	FU (months)	residual HGD	Residual BO	Remarks
McBride[45]	1995	MPEC	1 ND	15		0	6 sessions, not intestinal metaplasia but "heterotopic gastric mucosa"
Sampliner[46]	1996	MPEC	10 ND	10-18		0	2-4 sessions; only half the circumference was treated: residual BO in that half in 0 patients, untreated half served as internal control and was unchanged: BO in that half in 10 patients
Garcia Montes[47]	1998	MPEC	1	15		0	patient was a 13-year-old girl
Guelrud[48]	1997 a	MPEC	21	12	?	2	1-6 sessions
Jackson[49]	1997 a	MPEC	22	6	?	1	the 1 patient with residual BO had inadequate acid suppression
Kovacs[50]	1997 a	MPEC	20 ND	4.5		5	7 of 15 patients with CR had persistently abnormal pH studies
Michopoulos[51]	1997 a	MPEC	10	6		2	1 pseudoregression
Dumoulin[52]	1997	ABPC	2 ND	?		2	5-7 sessions
Maass[53]	1998	ABPC	1 (LGD)	12	1	1	patient with LGD developed HGD under ABPC therapy
V. Laethem[54]	1997 a	ABPC	21 (17 ND, 4 LGD)	3		2	1 patient showed no effect
Bohnacker[55], Porthun[56]	1997/8 a	ABPC	8 (1 MGD, 7 LGD/ND)	1	0	0	4-9 sessions
Byrne[57], Attwood[58]	1997/8 a	ABPC	35 (3 HGD,5 LGD,27 ND)	1-12	0	10	1-7 sessions, 10 patients showed squamous regeneration with underlying intestinal metaplasia and additional 10 patients showed submucosal glands without goblet cells or intestinal metaplasia covered by squamous epithelium, 2 perforations
Boyer[59]	1997 a	ABPC	15 (no HGD)	6	0	0	1-9 sessions

Table 2.1 (continued) Results of Studies Performing Thermal Ablation Therapy for Barrett's Oesophagus.

Author[ref]	Year	Treatment	Patients (n), Grade of Dysplasia	FU (months)	Residual HGD	Residual BO	Remarks
Martin[60]	1998 a	ABPC	18 (no HGD)	?		10	3-10 sessions, 2 patients showed no response
Mörk[61]	1998 a	ABPC	12 (10 ND, 2 LGD)	?		1	1-6 sessions, 1 pseudoregression
Stüker[62]	1998 a	ABPC	15	8		0	
Berenson[63]	1993	Argon	10 (8 ND, 2 LGD/MGD)	?		"7"	1-7 sessions, results expressed per lesion and not per patient, 38 of 40 lesions showed partial or complete squamous regeneration
Barham[64]	1997	KTP	13 ND	3-18		10	1-6 sessions, no macroscopic BO left but 10 pseudoregression
Gossner[65]	1997 a	KTP	8 (4 LGD, 4 HGD)	?-12	0	1	1 patient with residual BO showed pseudoregression
Biddlestone[66]	1998	KTP	10 ND	60		9	9 pseudoregression
Brandt[67]	1992	Nd:YAG	1	3		0	CR 6 weeks after treatment, BO returned after 14 weeks, patient had insufficient anti reflux therapy (acid reflux documented by 24-hour pH monitoring)
Brandt[68]	19951	Nd:YAG	1 (same patient)	12		0	second treatment under complete acid suppression documented by 24-hour pH recording
Sampliner[69]	1993	Nd:YAG	1	11		1	only partially treated
Luman[70]	1996	Nd:YAG	4 ND	6		4	maximal 3 sessions, prospective randomized trial, no effect seen on length of BO
Salo[71]	1998	Nd:YAG	11 ND	6-52		0	1-8 sessions, combined with antireflux surgery
Krevsky[72]	1998 a	Nd:YAG	15	2		4	3 patients showed no response, 1 stricture, 1 perforation

In conclusion, these studies show that thermal ablation therapies can reverse Barrett's oesophagus. However, multiple treatment sessions are required and because of the relatively uncontrollable depth of ablation, these methods are not without risk. Although in the manuscripts only minor complications were reported, in two abstracts perforation was said to occur after ABPC.[57,72] Furthermore, the number of reported patients treated with electrocoagulation is small. The results of ongoing studies on electrocoagulation are therefore awaited.[35,53]

From the present literature, it seems that electrocoagulation, and especially MPEC, results in more complete ablation compared with laser ablation, probably by producing deeper lesions. Also, from the results of laser ablation it seems that the more superficial the ablation (argon and KTP), the more often residual Barrett's epithelium is found. Finally, islands of residual columnar epithelium underneath regenerated squamous mucosa (pseudoregression) have been reported using MPEC, ABPC and KTP laser.[51,58,61,64-66]

Chemical ablation

Nine authors have published their results of PDT treatment in 233 patients, 63 of them being reported in articles (Table 2.2).[29,30,33,34,66,73-82] Exogenous porphyrins (HpD, DHE) were used in 45 patients and the endogenous sensitizer ALA was used in 18 patients. After PDT treatment with exogenous photosensitization, residual Barrett's oesophagus was reported to occur in 58% (26 of 45) of patients after 2 to 62 months follow-up. Besides skin photosensitivity, the main disadvantage of exogenous porphyrins was the formation of strictures in up to 45% of the patients, requiring endoscopic dilation in most cases.[77] After PDT treatment with endogenous photosensitization, residual Barrett's epithelium was found in 94% (17 of 18) of patients after 1 to 44 months of follow-up. Four patients did not respond to ALA-PDT at all.[82,83] Skin photosensitivity and strictures have not been reported after ALA-PDT. Chemical ablation was used in 47 patients with Barrett's oesophagus with HGD. Residual HGD was found in 10% (3 of 30) after PDT with exogenous photosensitisation and in 6% (1 of 17) after ALA-PDT.

Legend to Table 2.1

Abbreviations: a = abstract; l = letter; MPEC = multipolar electrocoagulation; ABPC = argon beam plasma coagulation; ND = no dysplasia; LGD = low-grade dysplasia; MGD = moderate-grade dysplasia; HGD = high-grade dysplasia; ? = not mentioned by the author; FU = follow-up (in months); BO = Barrett's oesophagus; CR = complete remission (no residual BO left). Sessions are expressed per patient.

Table 2.2 Results of Studies Performing Chemical Ablation Therapy (Photodynamic Therapy) for Barrett's Oesophagus.

Author[ref]	Year	Treatment/ wavelength (nm)	Patients (n), Grade of Dysplasia	FU (months)	Residual HGD	Residual BO	Remarks
Spinelli[73]	1992 b	DHE/630	3 HGD	6-84	0	?	
Laukka[74]	1995	HpD/630	5 (1 HGD)	6	0	5	skin photosensitivity
Overholt[75,76]	1995	DHE/630	7 (1 LGD, 6 HGD)	6-54	1	4	1 patient developed a T1 carcinoma during FU, skin photosensitivity
Overholt[29,77]	1996	DHE/630	30 (10 LGD, 20 HGD)	6-62	2	17	in 58% stricture formation, in some patients additional Nd:YAG laser ablation of residual islands of BO
Overholt[78]	1997a	DHE/630	62 (16 LGD, 46 HGD)	6-60	14*	39	2 pseudoregression, in 45% stricture formation
Wang[79,80]	1997/8 a	HpD/630	64 (23ND,32LGD,9HGD)	25±2	5	57	BO with ND showed longer trajectory of regression than HGD
Wang[30]	1997 a	HpD/630	6 HGD	?	1	4	in 20% stricture formation
Barr[33]	1996	ALA/630	5 HGD	26-44	0	4	2 pseudoregression
Gossner[34]	1997/8	ALA/635	10 HGD	1-11	0	10	2 pseudoregression
Biddlestone[66]	1998	ALA/630	3 (1 LGD, 2 HGD)	3-21	1	3	3 pseudoregression
Ackroyd[82]	1997 a	ALA/514	18 LGD	?		18	prospective randomized trial, 2 patients showed no response
Ortner[83]	1997 a	ALA/632	9 (all kinds of dysplasia)	?	?	5	ALA application in spray, 2 patients showed no response

In conclusion, chemical ablation therapies can also reverse Barrett's oesophagus. However, complete remission is achieved only in a minority of patients. Probably, PDT with exogenous photosensitization induces deeper damage than ALA-PDT, which results in less complete remission after ALA-PDT. However, in contrast to HpD/DHE-PDT, skin photosensitivity and stricture formation did not occur after ALA-PDT. After PDT treatment of patients with Barrett's oesophagus and HGD, residual HGD was found in approximately 10% of patients. Pseudoregression has been described with exogenous (two patients) and endogenous (seven patients) photosensitization.[78,33,34,66]

Mechanical ablation

Results of endoscopic mucosal resection in Barrett's oesophagus have not yet been reported.[83] Studies on oesophageal endoscopic mucosal resection focus on early oesophageal cancer.[36] Surgical ultrasound has not yet been used in human studies. However, a study in pigs showed that endoscopic mucosal resection resulted in complete ablation of the squamous epithelium of the lower oesophagus in a single setting.[24,84]

CONCLUSION

Barrett's oesophagus is a premalignant condition. In particular, HGD in Barrett's oesophagus carries an increased risk for developing adenocarcinoma. The treatment of HGD in Barrett's oesophagus, surgery or an endoscopic surveillance program, is still controversial. An argument in favour of resection is that adenocarcinoma is frequently found in resection specimens of patients operated for HGD in Barrett's oesophagus. Moreover, survival increases with early detection. In contrast, mortality and morbidity of oesophageal resection is considered to be high in view of a premalignant disease. The natural course of HGD, the reliablity of the endoscopic and histological diagnosis, the risks of both therapies, and the life expectancy and co-morbidity of each individual patient generally determine the choice of treatment.

Legend to Table 2.2

Abbreviations: a = abstract; b = chapter in book; l = letter; MPEC = multipolar electrocoagulation; ABPC = argon beam plasma coagulation; ND = no dysplasia; LGD = low-grade dysplasia; MGD = moderate-grade dysplasia; HGD = high-grade dysplasia; * = not specific HGD but dysplasia in general; ? = not mentioned by the author; FU = follow-up (in months); BO = Barrett's oesophagus; CR = complete remission (no residual BO left). Sessions are expressed per patient.

This review summarizes the results of 37 studies on experimental endoscopic therapies for Barrett's oesophagus. These therapies focus on the elimination of Barrett's epithelium with regeneration of squamous epithelium. All endoscopic surgical ablation techniques, in combination with antireflux treatment, can result in reversal of both HGD and Barrett's oesophagus. However, approximately 50% of patients treated by endoscopic ablation have residual Barrett's mucosa, which theoretically places them at risk for development of HGD and carcinoma. The deepest lesions and consequently lowest rate of residual Barrett's oesophagus (approximately 20%) are achieved by electrocoagulation. This method requires multiple sessions and is relatively prone to complications (specifically perforation).

In contrast, ALA-PDT causes a more superficial and controllable ablation; however, complete reversal of Barrett's epithelium has been achieved only in approximately 10% of patients. Optimization of the illumination parameters or repeated treatment regimens may improve these results. Furthermore, optimization of the laser parameters, using a low penetrating wavelength of laser light (*e.g.* green light and not red light), and/or using a 180^0 or 240^0 windowed cylindrical light distributor and not circumferential (360^0) illumination, may prevent the occurrence of strictures, which are frequently found after PDT with the use of exogenous porphyrins.[30,77,85]

Estimating the real value of ablation therapies is not yet possible, as most reports are case reports, abstracts or non-randomized personal experiences. Only two prospective randomized trials have been published.[70,82] The results of these two studies are not encouraging. In the first study, photoablation with Nd:YAG laser was performed in four patients.[70] It was shown that the treatment had no effect on these patients compared with the four untreated patients. In the second study, which was a double blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study, ALA-PDT was performed in 18 patients with LGD; 18 other patients with LGD were illuminated without prior ALA administration (they received a placebo).[82] In two patients treated with ALA-PDT no response was observed; 16 patients showed a mean decrease in the length of Barrett's oesophagus of 31%. No complete reversal of Barrett's oesophagus was achieved. In the placebo group, a small decrease in the length of Barrett's oesophagus was observed in two patients, which was significantly less than in the ALA group.

Interpretation of the results summarized in the present review is even more difficult, as different treatment schemes were used, the definitions of complete response were not uniform, and histological confirmation of the response was not achieved in all studies. Furthermore, some reports either did not indicate the time of follow-up, or described the results after only a very short follow-up. This will lead to relatively good initial results; however, Barrett's epithelium recurs after a

longer follow-up. Krevsky *et al.* found, in 11 patients treated with Nd:YAG photoablation, no evidence of Barrett's oesophagus at 2 months of follow-up.[72] At 6 months, however, in three of five evaluable patients, Barrett's oesophagus was found and, at 12 months, the only evaluable patient had a recurrence of Barrett's oesophagus.

In conclusion, the treatment parameters of the various ablation therapies should be optimized and the long term benefits of the therapies should be carefully evaluated in prospective randomized trials. Until then, the use of ablation therapy for Barrett's oesophagus with HGD should remain investigational.

REFERENCES

1. Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Siersema PD, De Bruin RWF, Tilanus HW. Barrett's oesophagus: pathophysiology, diagnosis and management. Scand J Gastroenterol 1998;33:449-453.
2. Levine DS, Haggitt RC, Irvine S, Reid BJ. Natural history of high-grade dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1996;110:A550.
3. Sampliner RE, Garewal HS, Fennerty MB, Aickin M. Lack of impact of therapy on extent of Barrett's esophagus in 67 patients. Dig Dis Sci 1990;35:93-96.
4. Sagar PM, Ackroyd R, Hosie KB, Patterson JE, Stoddard CJ, Kingsnorth AN. Regression and progression of Barrett's oesophagus after antireflux surgery. Br J Surg 1995;82:806-810.
5. Ortiz A, Martinez de Haro LF, Parilla P, Morales G, Molina J, Bermero J, Liron R, Aguilar J. Conservative treatment versus antireflux surgery in Barrett's oesophagus: long-term results of a prospective study. Br J Surg 1996;83:274-278.
6. Schnell T, Sontag S, Chejfec G, Chintam R, O'Connel S, Kurucar C. High-grade dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus: a report of experience with 43 patients. Gastroenterology 1989;96:A452.
7. Reid BJ, Weinstein WM, Lewin KJ, Haggitt RC, VanDeventer G, DenBesten L, Rubin CE. Endoscopic biopsy can detect high-grade dysplasia or early adenocarcinoma in Barrett's esophagus without grossly recognizable neoplastic lesions. Gastroenterology 1988;94: 81-90.
8. Falk GW, Rice TW, Achkar E, Petras RE. High-grade dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus is associated with early cancer. Gastroenterology 1992;102:A355.
9. Cameron AJ, Carpenter HA. Barrett's oesophagus, high-grade dysplasia and early adenocarcinoma. Comparison of endoscopic biopsy and surgical pathology findings. Gut 1996;38(suppl 1):T92.
10. Levine DS, Haggitt RC, Blount PL, Rabinovitch PS, Rusch VH, Reid BJ. An endoscopic biopsy protocol can differentiate high-grade dysplasia from early adenocarcinoma in Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1993;105:40-50.
11. Ferguson MK, Naunheim KS. Resection for Barrett's mucosa with high-grade dysplasia: implications for prophylactic photodynamic therapy. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 1997;114:824-829.
12. DeMeester TR, Attwood SEA, Smyrk TC, Therkildsen DH, Hinder RA. Surgical therapy in Barrett's esophagus. Ann Surg 1990;212:528-542.
13. Altorki NK, Sunagawa W, Little AG, Skinner DB. High-grade dysplasia and early invasive carcinoma in Barrett's esophagus. Am J Surg 1991;161:97-100.
14. McArdle JE, Lewin KJ, Randall G, Weinstein W. Distribution of dysplasias and early invasive carcinoma in Barrett's esophagus. Human Pathol 1992;23:479-482.
15. Pera M, Trastek VF, Carpenter HA, Allen MS, Deschamps C, Pairolero PC. Barrett's esophagus with high-grade dysplasia: an indication for esophagectomy? Ann Thorac Surg 1992;54:199-204.
16. Rice TW, Falk GW, Achkar E, Petras RE. Surgical management of high-grade dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. Am J Gastroenterol 1993;88:1832-1836.
17. Peters JH, Clark GWB, Ireland AP, Chandrasoma P, Smyrk TL, DeMeester TR. Outcome of adenocarcinoma arising in Barrett's esophagus with high-grade dysplasia. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 1994;108:813-822.
18. Edwards MJ, Gable DR, Lentsch AB, Richardson JD. The rationale for esophagectomy as the optimal therapy for Barrett's esophagus with high-grade dysplasia. Ann Surg 1996;233:585-591.
19. Heitmiller RF, Redmond M, Hamilton SR. Barrett's esophagus with high-grade dysplasia:

an indication for prophylactic esophagectomy. Ann Surg 1996;224:66-71.
20. Reid BJ, Haggitt RC, Rubin CE, Roth G, Surawicz CM, VanBelle G, Lewin K, Weinstein WM, Antonioli DA, Goldman H, MacDonald W, Owen D. Observer variation in the diagnosis of dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. Hum Pathol 1988;19:166-178.
21. Palley SL, Sampliner RE, Garewal HS. Management of high-grade dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. J Clin Gastroenterol 1989;11:369-372 (editorial).
22. Provenzale D, Kemp JA, Arora S, Wong JB. A guide for surveillance of patients with Barrett's esophagus. Am J Gastroenterol 1994;89:670-680.
23. Menke-Pluymers MB, Schoute NW, Mulder AH, Hop WC, Van Blankenstein M, Tilanus HW. Outcome of surgical treatment of adenocarcinoma in Barrett's esophagus. Gut 1992;33:1454-1458.
24. Brenner CG, DeMeester TR. Proceedings from an international conference on ablation therapy for Barrett's mucosa. Dis Esophagus 1998;11:1-27.
25. Farin G, Grund KE. Technology of argon plasma coagulation with particular reference to endoscopic applications. Endosc Surg 1994;2:71-77.
26. Fisher JC. Principles of safety in laser surgery and therapy. In: Baggish MS (ed). Basic and advanced laser surgery in gynaecology. Norwalk, CT: Appleton-Century Crofts, 1985:85-130.
27. Tralau CJ, Barr H, MacRobert AJ, Bown SG. Relative merits of porphyrins and phtalocyanine sensitization for photodynamic therapy. In: Kessel D (ed). Photodynamic therapy of neoplastic disease. Boca Raton, Fl: CRC Press, 1990:263-275.
28. Dougherty TJ, Cooper MT, Mang TS. Cutaneous phototoxic occurrences in patients receiving Photofrin. Lasers Surg Med 1990;10:485-488.
29. Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Photodynamic therapy in Barrett's esophagus. J Clin Laser Med Surg 1996;14:245-249.
30. Wang KK, WongKeeSong LM, Nourbakhsh A, Balm R. Can consistent tissue necrosis be achieved during photodynamic therapy for high-grade dysplasia or cancer within Barrett's esophagus? Gastroenterology 1997;112:A676.
31. Kennedy JC, Pottier RH. Endogenous protoporphyrin IX, a clinically useful photosensitizer for photodynamic therapy. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1992;14: 275-292.
32. Van den Boogert J, Houtsmuller AB, De Rooij FWM, De Bruin RWF, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Kinetics, localization and mechanism of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrin accumulation in the rat normal and Barrett's esophagus. Lasers Surg Med 1999;24:3-13.
33. Barr H, Shepherd NA, Dix A, Roberts DJH, Tan WC, Krasner N. Eradication of high-grade dysplasia in columnar-lined (Barrett's) oesophagus by photodynamic therapy with endogenously generated protoporphyrin IX. Lancet 1996;348:584-585.
34. Gossner L, Stolte M, Sroka R, Rick K, May A, Hahn EG, Ell C. Photodynamic ablation of high-grade dysplasia and early cancer in Barrett's esophagus by means of 5-aminolevulinic acid. Gastroenterology 1998;114:448-455.
35. Guelrud M, Herrera I. Acetic acid improves identification of remnant islands of Barrett's epithelium after endoscopic therapy. Gastrointest Endosc 1998;47:512-515.
36. Soehendra N, Binmoeller KF, Bohnacker S, Seitz U, Brand B, Thonke F, Gurakuqui G. Endoscopic snare mucosectomy in the esophagus without any additional equipment: a simple technique for resection of flat early cancer. Endoscopy 1997;29:380-383.
37. Cimino WW, Bond LJ. Physics of ultrasonic surgery using tissue fragmentation. Ultrasound Med Biol 1996;22:89-100.
38. Falk GW. Barrett's esophagus. Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am 1994;4:773-789.
39. Wang KK. Barrett's esophagus: current and future management. Compr Ther 1994;20:36-43.

40. Wright TA. High-grade dysplasia in Barrett's oesophagus. Br J Surg 1997;84:760-766.
41. Mayrand S. Treatment of Barrett's esophagus. Can J Gastroenterol 1997;11 (suppl B):98B-102B.
42. Bremner CG, Bremner RM. Barrett's esophagus. Surg Clin North Am 1997;77:1115-1137.
43. Sampliner RE. Ablative therapies for the columnar-lined esophagus. Gastrointest Endosc Clin North Am 1997;26:685-694.
44. Lambert R. Review article: current practice and future perspectives in the management of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 1997;11:651-662.
45. McBride MA, Vanagunas AA, Breshnahan JP, Barch DB. Combined endoscopic thermal coagulation with high dose omeprazole therapy in complicated heterotopic gastric mucosa of the esophagus. Am J Gastroenterol 1995;11:2029-2031.
46. Sampliner RE, Fennerty MB, Garewal HS. Reversal of Barrett's esophagus with acid suppression and multipolar electrocoagulation: preliminary results. Gastrointest Endosc 1996;44:532-535.
47. Garcia Montes C, Brandalise NA, Deliza R, Servidoni MFCP, Ferraz JGP, Magalhaes AFN. Regression of childhood Barrett's esophageal mucosa by antireflux surgery and bipolar electrocoagulation. J Pediatr Surg 1998;33:747-749.
48. Guelrud M. Herrera I. Multipolar electrocoagulation in the treatment of Barrett's esophagus. Gastrointest Endosc 1997;45:AB69.
49. Jackson FW, Husson M, Wright S, Lipschutz W, DuFayne F, Aronchick C. Eradication of Barrett's epithelium with multipolar electrocautery. Gastrointest Endosc 1997;45:AB71.
50. Kovacs BJ, Chen YK, Lewis TD, DeGuzman LJ, Thompson KS, Walter MM, Griffin RA. Reversal of Barrett's esophagus with multipolar elektrocoagulation: is acid suppression important? Gastrointest Endosc 1997;45:AB72.
51. Michopoulos S, Bouzakis H, Vougadiotis I, Sotiropoulou M, Tsibouris P, Balta A, Papaspyrou I, Kralios N. Six-month follow-up after Barrett's oesophagus ablation (BOA) with heather probe (Hpb). Endoscopy 1997;29:E19.
52. Dumoulin FL, Terjung B, Neubrand M, Scheurlen C, Fischer HP, Sauerbruch T. Treatment of Barrett's esophagus by endoscopic argon plasma coagulation. Endoscopy 1997;29:751-753.
53. Maass S, Martin WR, Spiethoff A, Riemann JF. Barrett's esophagus with severe dysplasia in argon beam therapy. Z Gastroenterol 1998;36:301-306.
54. Van Laethem JL, Devière J, Peny MO, Delhaye M, Cremer M. Complete eradication of Barrett's mucosa using argon beam coagulation combined with omeprazole. Gastrointest Endosc 1997; 45:AB86.
55. Bohnacker S, Brand B, Porthun M, Thonke F, Seitz U, Binmoeller KF, Soehendra N, V. Schrenck T, Matsui U. Endoscopic therapy for Barrett's esophagus argon plasma coagulation (APC). Endoscopy 1997;29:E10.
56. Porthun M, Brand B, Thonke F, Bohnacker S, Seitz U, Binmoeller KF, V. Schrenck T, Matsui U, Soehendra N. Endoscopic therapy of Barrett's esophagus using argon-plasma-coagulation (APC). Gastroenterology 1998;114:A260.
57. Byrne JP, Armstrong GR, Attwood SEA. Endoscopic argon beam plasma coagulation in the restoration of squamous lining in Barrett's oesophagus. Endoscopy 1997;29:E33.
58. Attwood SEA, Byrne GR, Armstrong GR. A detailed analysis of the pattern of neo-squamous epithelium following endoscopic argon-beam plasma coagulation of Barrett's oesophagus. Gastroenterology 1998;114:A60.
59. Boyer J, Prelipcean M, Crouie A, Burtin P. Le traitment de l'endobrachyoesophage par electrocoagulation par plasma argon et omeprazole. Endoscopy 1998;30:S35.
60. Martin WR, Benz C, Jakobs R, Riemann JF. Argon plasma coagulation (APC) in patients with Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1998;114:A217.

61. Mörk H, Al-Taie O, Kraus M, Kreipe H, Barth T, Jakob F, Scheurlen M. Regeneration of squamous mucosa after argon plasma coagulation (APC) of Barrett's epithelium. Gastroenterology 1998;114:A234.
62. Stüker D, Dopieralski A, Zindel C, Farin G, Grund KE. Argon plasma coagulation (APC) for ablation of Barrett's epithelium: first clinical results in 21 patients. Gastroenterology 1998;114:A296.
63. Berenson MM, Johnson TD, Markowitz NR, Buchi KN, Samowitz WS. Restoration of squamous mucosa after ablation of Barrett's esophageal epithelium. Gastroenterology 1993;104:1686-1691.
64. Barham CP, Jones RL, Biddlestone LR, Hardwick RM, Sheperd NA, Barr H. Photothermal laser ablation of Barrett's oesophagus: endoscopic and histological evidence of squamous re-epithelialisation. Gut 1997;41:281-284.
65. Gossner L, May A, Hahn EG, Ell C. KTP-laser treatment of dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1997;112:A570.
66. Biddlestone LR, Barham CP, Wilkinson SP, Barr H, Sheperd NA. The histopathology of treated Barrett's esophagus: squamous re-epithelialization after acid suppression and laser and photodynamic therapy. Am J Surg Pathol 1998;22:239-245.
67. Brandt LJ, Kauvar DR. Laser-induced transient regression of Barrett's epithelium. Gastrointest Endosc 1992;38:619-622.
68. Brandt LJ. Blansky RL, Kauvar DR. Repeat laser therapy of recurrent Barrett's epithelium: success with anacidity. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;41:267 (letter).
69. Sampliner RE, Hixson LJ, Fennerty MB, Garewal HS. Regression of Barrett's esophagus by laser ablation in an antacid environment. Dig Dis Sci 1993;38:365-368.
70. Luman W, Lessels AM, Palmer KR. Failure of Nd:YAG photocoagulation therapy as treatment for Barrett's oesophagus - a pilot study. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepathol 1996; 8:627-630.
71. Salo JA, Salminen JT, Kiviluoto TA, Nemlander AT Ramo OJ, Farkkila MA, Kivilaakso EO, Mattila SP. Treatment of Barrett's esophagus by endoscopic laser and ablation antireflux surgery. Ann Surg 1998;227:40-44.
72. Krevsky B, Horwitz B, Cohen S, Fisher RS. Long-term effects of acid suppression on Nd:YAG laser treated Barrett's esophagus: ongoing studies. Gastroenterology 1998; 114:A188.
73. Spinelli P, Dal Fante M, Mancici A, Masetti M. Endoscopic photodynamic therapy of early cancer and severe dysplasia of the esophagus. In: Spinelli P, Dal Fante M, Marchesini R (eds). Photodynamic therapy and biomedical lasers. Amsterdam, Elsevier Science Inc., 1992:262-265.
74. Laukka MA, Wang KK. Initial results using low-dose photodynamic therapy in treatment of Barrett's esophagus. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;42:59-63.
75. Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Barrett's esophagus: photodynamic therapy for ablation of dysplasia, reduction of specialized mucosa, and treatment of superficial esophageal cancer. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;42:64-69.
76. Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Photodynamic therapy in Barrett's esophagus: reduction of specialized mucosa, ablation of dysplasia, and treatment of superficial esophageal cancer. Semin Surg Oncol 1995;11:372-376.
77. Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Photodynamic therapy for Barrett's esophagus: clinical update. Am J Gastroenterol 1996;91:1719-1723.
78. Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Photodynamic therapy eliminates dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1997;112:A634.
79. Wang KK, WongKeeSong LM, Nourbakhsh A, Laukka M, Gutta K, Geller A, Balm R.

Controlled trial of low dose photodynamic therapy for Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1997;112:A676.
80. Wang KK, WongKeeSong LM, Nijhawan P, Nourbakhsh A, Balm R. Does non-dysplastic Barrett's epithelium respond better to mucosal ablation? Gastroenterology 1998;114:A700.
81. Ackroyd R, Davis MF, Stephenson TJ, Brown NJ, Stoddard CJ, Reed MWR. Photodynamic therapy for Barrett's oesophagus: a prospective randomised placebo-controlled trial. Endoscopy 1997;29:E17.
82. Ortner M, Zumbusch K, Liebetruth J, Ernst H, Weber J, Wirth J, Wedel S, Lochs H. Photodynamic therapy of Barrett's esophagus after local administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid. Gastroenterology 1997;112:A633.
83. Fleischer DE, Wang GQ, Dawsey SM, Tio TI, Kidwell JA, Zhoe B, Godduhn E. Endoscopic therapy for esophageal dysplasia (ED) and early esophageal cancer (EEC) in Linxian, China. Implications for the United States. Gastrointest Endosc 1997;45:AB68.
84. Bremner RM, Mason RJ, Bremner CG, Kirkman P, Chandrasoma P, Filipi CJ, Peters JH, Hagen JA, DeMeester TR. Ultrasonic epithelial ablation of the lower esophagus without stricture formation. A new technique for Barrett's ablation. Surg Endosc 1998;12:342-346.
85. Savary JF, Grosjean P, Monnier P, Fontolliet C, Wagnieres G, Braichotte D, Van den Bergh H. Photodynamic therapy of early squamous cell carcinomas of the esophagus: a review of 31 cases. Endoscopy 1998;30:258-265.

Chapter 3

Fundamentals of 5-Aminolevulinic Acid-Based Photodynamic Therapy

INTRODUCTION

The observation that normal tissue reacts in a pathological fashion when saturated with porphyrins and exposed to light (porphyrias), has led to the idea to employ this photoreaction in the destruction of pathological tissue.[1,2] This idea was aided by the early descriptions around 1930 of the uptake of porphyrins by tumour cells, and of the preferential uptake of haematoporphyrin by rat sarcoma.[3,4] In the following years, porphyrins and haematoporphyrin derivative (and its more purified form Photofrin®) in particular, were investigated as possible photosensitive agents (photosensitizers).[5-10] Indeed, activation of the photosensitizer by illumination with light of an appropriate wavelength created a photochemical reaction causing photodamage to the tumour. The term photodynamic therapy (PDT) was born and especially the alleged tumour selectivity of photosensitization and the subsequent development of suitable lasers made PDT an area of major investigation since 1970.

PHOTOPHYSICS AND PHOTOCHEMISTRY OF PDT

The foundation of PDT depends on visible light, photosensitizer and oxygen. When photosensitizers absorb light energy (porphyrins absorb light of wavelength around 400 nm and, in addition, the more penetrating light of longer wavelength subsidiary peaks between 500 and 635 nm), orbital electrons are excited and "promoted" to a higher orbital (Figure 3.1).[11]

If such promotion occurs without alteration of the ground-state electron 'spin',

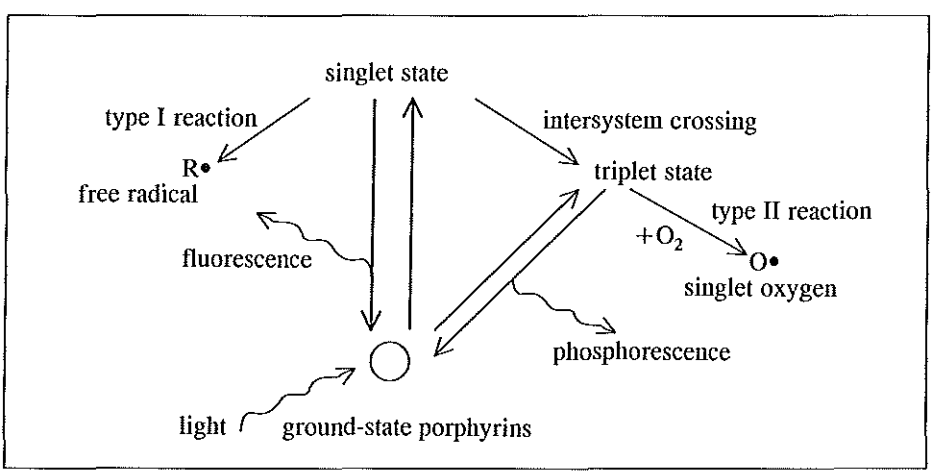


Figure 3.1 Schematic representation of porphyrin energetic transactions. The type II photochemical reaction is thought to be the most important mechanism of photodynamic therapy cytotoxicity.

it is said to be in a singlet excited state. If its spin is reversed so that it is parallel to the ground-state spin, it is said to have achieved a triplet excited state. The latter state is termed metastable, because of its relatively longer half-life than the singlet state, which has an extremely short half-life. Three types of events can occur with porphyrins in excited state (Figure 3.1). First, excited electrons can fall back to the ground state producing fluorescence or phosphorescence. Second, conversion of singlet to triplet state can occur (intersystem crossing). This occurs infrequently because of the instability of the singlet state. Finally, the excited porphyrins can undergo a photoreaction.

Two types of photoreaction can occur. Excited porphyrins in the singlet state can react directly with tissues or molecules (type I reaction) to cause electron transfer and produce radicals. These radicals can react with oxygen to give oxidized products (not only superoxide radicals but also highly reactive hydroxyl radicals). The triplet excited porphyrin state allows transfer of the excitation energy to molecular oxygen (type II reaction) thereby producing the highly reactive singlet oxygen (oxygen radical). This is an extremely powerful oxidizing agent, which acts not only on molecular species within the cell, but also with cellular structures such as membranes.[2,12,13] Probably singlet oxygen is the most important cytotoxic agent responsible for the destruction of tumours.[14] At low oxygen concentrations, type I mechanisms may significantly contribute to the photo-oxidation of membrane components and amino acids.[15] Furthermore, the mechanism of action may change during PDT from a type II to a type I process as a result of PDT-induced changes in the oxygenation within the tumour tissue.[16]

Owing to the short intracellular lifetime of the biochemical active singlet oxygen species, their diffusion range is predicted to be limited to approximately 45 nm in cellular media.[17,18] Because the diameter of human cells ranges from approximately 10 to 100 μm, the site of the primary generation of singlet oxygen determines which subcellular structures may be damaged. Therefore, the subcellular localization, which will be different using exogenously administered or endogenously produced porphyrins, partly determines the effect of PDT.

PHOTOBIOLOGY OF PDT

The necrotic processes which trigger the degradation of normal and malignant cells after PDT seem to be mediated by similar chemical reactions. The major biological targets of singlet oxygen and of most toxicologically relevant radical intermediates are nucleic acids, which are broken down into fragments.[16] However, photosensitizers tend not to localize in the nucleus of the cell. As a consequence, DNA is not directly subjected to PDT-induced photodamage.

It is more likely that the function of proteins and enzymes are strongly impaired by photochemical modifications at active and/or binding sites. Transmembrane ion pumps, sugar and amino acid transport systems are inhibited and enzymes lose their biocatalytic activity.[19] Cellular membranes, including plasma, mitochondrial and nuclear membranes, are severely damaged by oxidation of susceptible, unsatured fatty acid residues and of cholesterol.[20,21] Following PDT, electron micrographs show a disintegration of membranes and physicochemical measurements show a continuing depletion of the intracellular adenosine triphosphate (ATP) pool, indicating a reduced activity of the mitochondria.[22,23] The decrease in intracellular ATP concentration has drastic consequences for all energy-consuming processes and causes a reduced rate of replication and repair. As the driving force for the transport of amino acids into the cell, dysfunction of NA^+/K^+-ATPase leads to a decreased absorption of amino acids.[24]

The breakdown of cellular membranes causes a release of phospholipids, which are readily attacked by phospholipases and degraded to free fatty acids.[25] Of major importance is the release of arachidonic acid which initiates an acute inflammatory reaction. Prostaglandines primarily cause a vasodilatation of terminal arterioles and damage endothelial and smooth muscle cells which coat the inner surface of blood vessels.[26] The gaps created between endothelial cells lead to local oedema by an enhanced efflux of water, macromolecules and blood cells into the tumour tissue.[27] Moreover, thromboxanes promote the aggregation of platelets and trigger the formation of intravasal thrombi.[28] The stasis of blood flow finally creates areas of local hypoxia and initiates necrotic processes by nutrient deprivation.

The acute inflammatory reaction is followed by a delayed inflammatory reaction, characterized by activation of the complement system and subsequent generation of a wide variety of products with chemotactic, inflammatory and cytotoxic properties. Histologically the delayed phase of inflammation begins with the infiltration of neutrophils.[29] Attracted by chemotactic complement factors and by products of damaged tissues, neutrophils pass through gaps in the capillary endothelium. The infiltration of neutrophils is immediately followed by an invasion of leukocytes and macrophages, which act synergistically in a complicated sequence. Thus, the release of a wide variety of pathophysiologically highly reactive products, such as prostaglandines and thromboxanes, together with the activation of the complement system and infiltration of immunologically active blood cells ultimately initiates tumour necrosis.

Although the mechanism of PDT-induced cell death is largely attributable to necrosis, recently an apoptotic mechanism has been implicated also.[30,31] The apoptotic program is a part of the genetic apparatus of the cell, such that certain signals lead to a series of events resulting in DNA and cellular fragmentation. At present, the contribution of apoptosis to PDT-induced damage is not well understood.

Problems with Exogenous Photosensitization

It is becoming more and more clear that porphyrins (Photofrin®) have a low selectivity with regard to uptake and retention by tumour versus normal cells. Other metabolically active tissues such as liver and kidney also accumulate porphyrins, but being remote from light sources, these are relatively safe from the photodestructive effects of therapy. However, normal skin also accumulates porphyrins, and a serious side effect of PDT using Photofrin® is continued light photosensitivity of exposed skin for several weeks or months after treatment.[11] Further drawbacks of Photofrin® are the lack of chemical homogeneity and stability and its unfavourable physicochemical properties. New, so-called second and third generation photosensitizers are therefore under investigation.

In this thesis the third generation photosensitizer 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) is used. The following paragraphs describe the fundamentals of ALA-based PDT.

Introduction to ALA-PDT

As outlined in the previous paragraphs, porphyrins in general are photosensitive agents. A naturally occurring particularly photosensitive form of porphyrin is protoporphyrin IX (PpIX). The iron complex of PpIX is called haem. Haem may bind to different proteins to form key biomolecules such as haemoglobin, myoglobin, cytochromes, catalase, peroxidase and tryptophan pyrrolase. Metabolism of porphyrins is therefore of crucial importance to maintain homeostasis. Almost all types of cells of the human body, with the exception of mature red blood cells, are equipped with a machinery to synthesize haem, and thus PpIX. PpIX has been used for photosensitization by modulating the haem synthetic pathway.

Regulation of Haem Synthesis

The initial step in the haem biosynthetic pathway is the formation of 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) (Figure 3.2).

In mammals and photosynthetic bacteria, ALA is formed from glycine and succinyl-CoA by the enzyme ALA synthase, located at the matrix side of the inner mitochondrial membrane.[32] This is the main regulatory enzyme of the haem synthetic pathway. The next enzyme in the pathway, ALA dehydratase is located in the cytosol and induces the condensation of two molecules of ALA to yield porphobilinogen (PBG).[33] The concerted action of PBG deaminase and

uroporphyrinogen III (co)synthase condense four molecules of PBG and cyclize the tetrapyrrole chain to form uroporphyrinogen III. Both enzymes are located in the cytosol and the action of PBG deaminase is the rate limiting step.[33] Uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase removes four acetic acid carboxyl groups from uroporphyrinogen to form the tetracarboxylic copropophyrinogen III.[33] Coproporphyrinogen III is decarboxylated and oxidized to protoporphyrinogen IX by copropophyrinogen oxidase, which is situated in the intermembrane space of the mitochondria.[34] The final step in the synthesis of PpIX is the oxydation of the tetrapyrrole ring by removal of six hydrogens, catalysed by protoporphyrinogen oxidase. The enzyme is embedded in the inner mitochondrial membrane with its active site on the matrix side of the membrane.[35] It is an oxygen-dependent enzyme with high substrate-specificity.[11] Protoporphyrinogen IX may also spontaneously oxidize to PpIX, but this is less likely to occur in the mitochondria where protoporphyrinogen IX is exposed to a rather anaerobic and reducing environment.[11] The tetrapyrrole structure is now ready for incorporation of iron to form haem, which is catalyzed by ferrochelatase. Ferrochelatase is located in the inner mitochondrial membrane.[33]

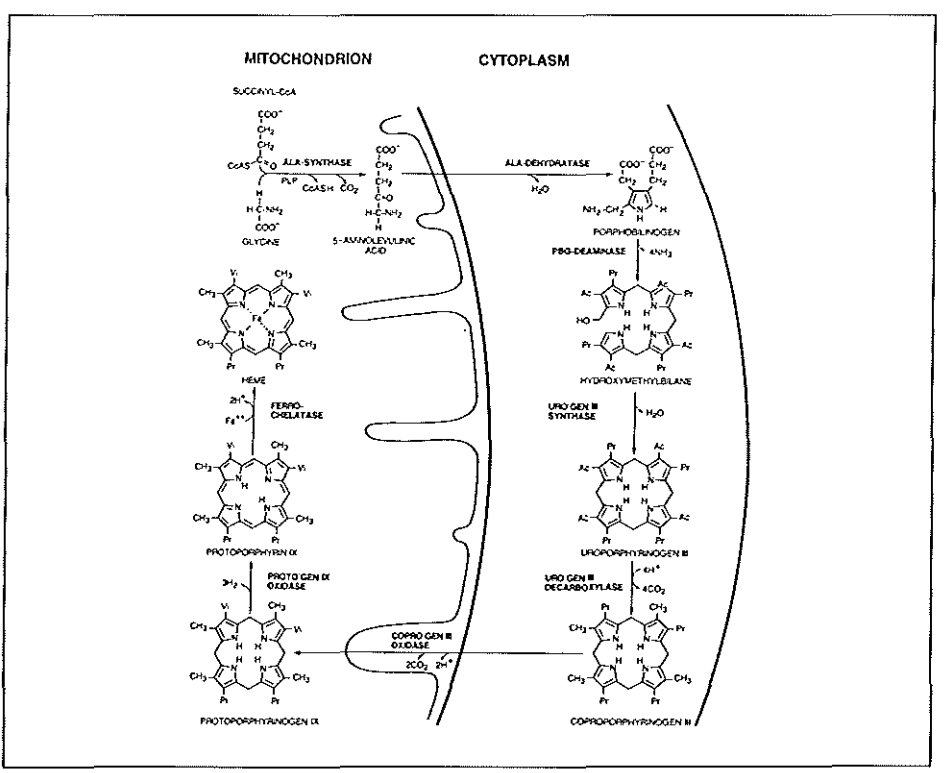


Figure 3.2 Schematic representation of the haem biosynthetic pathway.

PHOTOBIOLOGY OF ALA-PDT

The haem biosynthetic pathway is mainly regulated by the substrate availability and feedback inhibition of ALA synthase. Haem can inhibit this enzyme directly as well as its transcription, translation, and transport of the protein into mitochondria.[36] The administration of exogenous ALA bypasses the rate limiting enzyme ALA synthase and the feedback control, and may thus induce intracellular accumulation of photosensitizing concentrations of PpIX.

In 1987 ALA-based photosensitization of cells *in vitro* was pioneered.[37] In the same year the first *in vivo* animal study on ALA photosensitization was performed.[38] In 1990 ALA has been introduced as a drug for clinical photodynamic therapy (PDT).[39]

In most cell lines treated with ALA the main photosensitizer that accumulates is PpIX, indicating that the enzymes converting uroporphyrinogen III to PpIX are not rate limiting in the pathway.[40-43] Because PpIX is formed in the mitochondria, photosensitivity following ALA administration is probably located in the mitochondria. ALA-PDT mainly exerts its effect through formation of singlet oxygen (type II photoreaction) although other reactive oxygen species may also be involved.[42,44] As mentioned in the second paragraph of the present chapter, the range of action of singlet oxygen is very short.[45] Therefore, the primary sites of action of ALA-PDT may be restricted to the sites of PpIX production and/or accumulation. Owing to the mitochondrial localization of PpIX, mitochondria have been shown to be damaged after ALA-PDT and most likely, they are the most important targets in the cytotoxicity of ALA-PDT.[43,46] Additionally, other compartments are damaged by ALA-PDT. This is indicated by the observed damage to endoplasmatic reticulum, increased level of intracellular free Ca^{2+} and Na^{+} and cellular loss of K^{+}.[42,46,47]

Because photosensitizers that "bound to mitochondria" are especially able to induce apoptosis upon photo-irradiation, ALA-based PDT in particular may be able to inactivate cells *via* apoptosis.[48]

Although vascular damage induced by PDT with exogenous porphyrins plays a crucial role in tumour eradication, the therapeutic effects of ALA-PDT are most likely due to direct cytotoxicity and acute inflammatory reactions with little damage to vascular structures.[33]

ADVANTAGES OF ALA-PDT

As mentioned earlier in this chapter, the main drawbacks of exogenous porphyrin-mediated PDT are low tumour selectivity and prolonged skin photosensitivity.

In contrast, skin photosensitivity with use of ALA lasts only 24 to 48 hours.[33,49,50] Concerning tumour selectivity, the rate of ALA-derived PpIX synthesis has been shown to be higher in neoplastic cells than in untransformed cells.[51,52] Several *in vivo* animal studies have shown semi-selective ALA-induced PpIX accumulation in tumours compared to normal tissue.[50,53-57] The tumour selectivity of ALA-derived PpIX accumulation appears to be related to tumour model used, time, ALA dose and route of administration. In general, the activities of ALA synthase and ferrochelatase were found to be lower in tumour cell lines than in normal cell lines, whereas those of ALA dehydratase and PBG deaminase were higher in malignant cell lines.[33,58-61] Besides in tumours, ALA-induced PpIX seems to accumulate primarily in glands and tissues that line surfaces (epidermis, respiratory and gastrointestinal mucosa, endometrium, urothelium) and only little in the underlying submucosal and muscle layers.[33,49,62-65] Therefore, ALA-PDT seems most suitable for premalignant and malignant lesions of epithelial origin, such as Barrett's oesophagus.

REFERENCES

1 Magnus IA. Cutaneous porphyria. The porphyrias. In: Goldberg A, Moore MR (eds). Clinics in Haematology, Volume 9. Saunders, London, 1980:273-302.

2 Poh-Fitzpatrick MB. Porphyrin sensitized cutaneous photosensitivity - pathogenesis and treatment. In: Disler PB, Moore MR (eds). Porphyria - clinics in dermatology. Lippincott, Philadelphia, 1985:41-82.

3 Kennedy GY. The chemistry and metabolism of some porphyrins and their derivatives, Ph.D. Thesis, Sheffield, England,1933.

4 Policard A. Etude sur les aspects offerts par des tumeurs experimentales examinees a la lumiere de Wood. C R Seances Soc Biol 1924;91:1423-1424.

5 Korbler J. Rote fluoreszenz in Krebsgeschwuren. Strahlentherapie 1931;41:510-518.

6 Bungeler W. Uber den Einfluss photosensibilisierender Substanzen auf die Entstehung von Hautgeschwulsten. Z Krebsforsch 1937;46:130-167.

7 Auler H, Banzer G. Untersuchungen uber die Rolle der Porphyrine bei geschwulstkranken Menschen und Tieren. Zeitschr Krebsforsch 1942;53:65-68.

8 Figge FHJ, Weiland GS, Manganiello LOJ. Cancer detection and therapy. The affinity of neoplastic, embryonic and traumatized tissues for porphyrins and metaloporphyrins. Proc Roy Soc Exp Biol Med1948;68:640-641.

9 Lipson RL, Baldes EJ, Olsen AM. The use of a derivative of hematoporphyrin in tumor detection. J Natl Cancer Inst 1961;26:1-11.

10 Gregorie HB, Horger EO, Ward JL. Haematoporphyrin derivative fluorescence on malignant neoplasms. Ann Surg 1968;167:820-827.

11 Moore MR. Porphyrins and enzymes of the heme biosynthetic pathway. In: Moore MR, McColl KEL, Rimington C, Goldberg A (eds). Disorders of porphyrin metabolism. Plenum medical book company, New York and London, 1987:21-72.

12 Spikes JD. Porphyrin and related compounds as photodynamic sensitizers. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1975;244:496-508.

13 Bodaness RS, Chan PC. Singlet oxygen as a mediator in the hematoporphyrin catalyzed photo-oxidation of NADPH to $NADP^+$ in deuterium oxide. J Biol Chem 1977;252:8554-8560.

14 Weishaupt KR, Gomer CJ, Dougherty TJ. Identification of singlet oxygen as the cytotoxic agent in photo-inactivation of a murine tumor. Cancer Res 1976;36:296-303.

15 Ferraudi G, Arguello GA, Ali H, Van Lier JE. Types I and II sensitized photo-oxidation of amino acids by phtalocyanines: a flash photochemical study. Photochem Photobiol 1988;47:657-660.

16 Gantchev TG, Uromov IJ, Hunting DJ, Van Lier JE. Phototoxicity and intracellular generation of free radicals by tetrasulphonated Al-and Zn-phtalocyanines. Int J Radiat Biol 1994;65:289-298.

17 Baker A, Kanofsky JR. Quenching of singlet oxygen by biomolecules from L1210 leukemia cells. Photochem Photobiol 1992;55:523-528.

18 Moan J, Boye E. Photodynamic effect on DNA and cell survival of human cells sensitized by hematoporphyrin. Photochem Photobiophys 1981;2:301-307.

19 Spikes JD, Straight RC. Biochemistry of photodynamic action. In: Heitz JR and Downum KR (eds). Light-activated pesticides. American Chemical Society, Washington DC, 1987:98-108.

20 Foote CS. Type I and II mechanisms of photodynamic action. In: Heitz JR and Downum KR (eds). Light-activated pesticides. American Chemical Society, Washington DC, 1987:22-38.

21 Korytowski W, Bachowski GJ, Girotti AW. Photoperoxidation of cholesterol in homogeneous solution, isolated membranes and susceptibility to enzymatic detoxification. Photochem

Photobiol 1992;56:1-8.
22 Shulok JR, Klaunig JE, Selman SH, Schafer PJ, Goldblatt PJ. Cellular effects of hematoporphyrin derivative photodynamic therapy on normal and neoplastic rat bladder cells. Am J Pathol 1986;122:277-283.
23 Gibson SL, Checkler TL, Bryant TG, Hilf R. Effects of laser photodynamic therapy on tumor phosphate levels and pH assessed by 31P-NMR spectroscopy. Cancer Biochem Biophys 1989;10:319-327.
24 Penning LC, Tijssen K, Van Steveninck J, Dubbelman TMAR. Hematoporphyrin derivative-induced photodynamic inhibition of NA^+/K^+-ATPase in L929 fibroblasts, Chinese hamster ovary cells and T24 human bladder transitional carcinoma cells. Photochem Photobiol 1994;59:336-341.
25 Ochsner M. Photophysical and photobiological processes in the photodynamic therapy of tumours. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1997;39:1-18.
26 Wieman TJ, Fingar VH. Microvascular effects of photodynamic therapy. Proc SPIE 1989:106:11-27.
27 Fingar VH, Wieman TJ, Wiehle SA, Doak KW. Relationship of vessel constriction, vessel leakage, and release of vasoactive substances in photodynamic therapy. Photochem Photobiol 1991;53(S):100S-101S.
28 Fingar VH, Wieman TJ, Doak KW. The role of thromboxane and prostacyclin release on photodynamic therapy-induced tumor destruction. Cancer Res 1990;50:2599-2603.
29 Sell S. Basic Immunology, Elsevier, London, 1987.
30 Agarwal ML, Clay ME, Harvey EJ, Evans HH, Antunez AR, Oleinick NL. Photodynamic therapy induces rapid cell death by apoptosis in L5178Y mouse lymphoma cells. Cancer Res 1991;51:5993-5996.
31 Webber J, Luo Y, Crilly R, Fromm D, Kessel D. An apoptotic response to photodynamic therapy with endogenous protoporphyrin in vivo. J Photochem Photobiol B 1996;35:209-211.
32 May BK, Bawden MJ. Control of heme biosynthesis in animals. Semin Hematol 1989;26:150-156.
33 Peng Q, Berg K, Moan J, Kongshaug M, Nesland JM. 5-Aminolevulinic acid-based photodynamic therapy: principles and experimental research. Photochem Photobiol 1997;65:235-251.
34 Grandschamp B, Phung N, Nordmann Y. The mitochondrial localization of coproporphyrinogen III oxidase. Biochem J 1978;176:97-102.
35 Ferreira GC, Andrew TL, Karr SW, Dailey HA. Organization of the terminal two enzymes of the heme biosynthetic pathway. Orientation of protoporphyrinogen oxidase and evidence for a membrane complex. J Biol Chem 1988; 34:2481-2485.
36 Rossi E, Attwood PV, Garcia-Webb P, Costin KA. Inhibition of human lymphocyte ferrochelatase activity by hemin. Biochem Biophys Acta 1990;1038:375-381.
37 Malik Z, Lugaci H. Destruction of erythroleukaemic cells by photoactivation of endogenous porphyrins. Br J Cancer 1987;56:589-595.
38 Peng Q, Evensen JF, Rimington C, Moan J. A comparison of different photosensitizing dyes with respect to uptake by C3H-tumors and tissues of mice. Cancer Lett 1987;36:1-10.
39 Kennedy JC, Pottier RH, Pross DC. Photodynamic therapy with endogenous protoporphyrin IX: basic principle and present clinical experience. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1990;6:143-148.
40 Malik Z, Ehrenberg B, Faraggi A. Inactivation of erythrocytic, lymphocytic and myelocytic leukemic cells by photoexcitation of endogenous porphyrins. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1989;4:195-205.
41 Schoenfeld N, Mamet R, Nordenberg Y, Shafran M, Babushkin T, Malik Z. Protoporphyrin

biosynthesis in melanoma B16 cells stimulated by 5-aminolevulinic acid and chemical inducers: characterization of photodynamic inactivation. Int J Cancer 1994;56:106-112.
42 He D, Behar S, Normura N, Sassa S, Lim HW. The effect of ALA and radiation on porphyrin/heme biosynthesis in endothelial cells. Photochem Photobiol 1995;61:656-661.
43 Linuma S, Farshi SS, Ortel B, Hasan T. A mechanistic study of cellular photodestruction with 5-aminolaevulinic acid-induced porphyrin. Br J Cancer 1994;70:21-28.
44 Ward AJ, Matthews EK. Cytotoxic, nuclear, and growth inhibitory effects of photodynamic drugs on pancreatic carcinoma cells. Cancer Lett 1996;102:39-47.
45 Moan J, Berg K. The photodegradation of porphyrins in cells can be used to estimate the lifetime of singlet oxygen. Photochem Photobiol 1991;53:549-553.
46 Uberriegler KP, Banieghbal E, Krammer B. Subcellular damage kinetics within co-cultivated WI38 and VA13-transformed WI38 human fibroblasts following 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX formation. Photochem Photobiol 1995;62:1052-1057.
47 Gederaas OA, Thorstensen K, Romslo I. The effect of brief illumination on intracellular free calcium concentration in cells with 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX synthesis. Scan J Clin Invest 1996;56:583-589.
48 Noodt BB, Berg K, Stokke T, Peng Q, Nesland JM. Apoptosis and necrosis induced with light and 5-aminolevulinic-derived protoporphyrin IX. Br J Cancer 1996;74:22-29.
49 Kennedy JC, Pottier RH. Endogenous protoporphyrin IX, a clinically useful photosensitizer for photodynamic therapy. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1992;14:275-292.
50 Bedwell J, MacRobert AJ, Phillips D, Bown SG. Fluorescence distribution and photodynamic effect of ALA-induced PpIX in the DMH rat colonic tumor model. Br J Cancer 1992; 65:818-824.
51 Walters RT, Gribble TG, Schartz HC. Synthesis of haem in normal and leukemic leucocytes. Nature 1963;197:1213-1214.
52 Navone NM, Polo CF, Frisardi AL, Andrade NE, Battle AM. Heme biosynthesis in human breast cancer - mimetic in vitro studies and some heme enzymic activity levels. Int J Biochem 1990;22:1407-1411.
53 Regula J, Ravi B, Bedwell J, MacRobert AJ, Bown SG. Photodynamic therapy using 5-aminolevulinic acid for experimental pancreatic cancer-prolonged animal survival. Br J Cancer 1994;70:248-254.
54 Abels C, Heil P, Dellian M, Kuhnle GEH, Baumgartner R, Goetz AE. In vivo kinetics and spectra of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced fluorescence in an amelanotic melanoma of the hamster. Br J Cancer 1994;70:826-833.
55 Van Hillegersberg R, Hekking-Weijma JM, Wilson JHP, Edixhoven-Bosdijk A, Kort WJ. Adjuvant intra-operative photodynamic therapy diminished the rate of local recurrence in a rat mammary tumour model. Br J Cancer 1995;71:733-737.
56 Lofgren LA, Ronn AM, Nouri M, Lee CJ, Yoo D, Steinberg BM. Efficacy of intravenous δ-aminolevulinic acid photodynamic therapy on rabbit papillomas. Br J Cancer 1995;72:857-864.
57 Lilge L, Olivo MC, Schatz SW, MaGuire JA, Patterson MS, Wilson BC. The sensitivity of normal brain and intracranially implanted VX2 tumour to interstitial photodynamic therapy. Br J Cancer 1996;73:332-343.
58 Dailey HA, Smith A. Differential interaction of porphyrins used in photoradiation therapy with ferrochelatase. Biochem J 1984;514:309-322.
59 Van Hillegersberg R, Van den Berg JW, Kort WJ, Terpstra OT, Wilson JHP. Selective accumulation of endogenously produced porphyrins in a liver metastasis model in rats. Gastroenterology 1992;103:647-651.
60 El-Sharabasy MMH, El-Wassel AM, Hafez MM, Salim SA. Porphyrin metabolism in some

malignant diseases. Br J Cancer 1992;65:409-412.
61 Kondo M, Hirota N, Takaoka T, Kajiwara M. Heme-biosynthetic enzyme activities and porphyrin accumulation in normal liver and hepatoma cell lines of rats. Cell Biol Toxicol 1993;9:95-105.
62 Loh CS, MacRobert AJ, Regula J, Bown SG. Oral versus intravenous administration of 5-aminolaevulinic acid for photodynamic therapy. Br J Cancer 1993;68:41-51.
63 Loh, CS, Vernon D, MacRobert AJ, Bedwell J, Bown SG, Brown SB. Endogenous porphyrin distribution induced by 5-aminolaevulinic acid in the tissue layers of the gastrointestinal tract. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1993;20:47-54.
64 Kleemann D, MacRobert AJ, Mentzel T, Speigh PM, Bown SG. Photodynamic therapy on the normal rabbit larynx with phtalocyanine and 5-aminolevulinic acid induced protoporphyrin IX photosensitization. Br J Cancer 1996;74:49-58.
65 Yang JZ, Van Vugt DA, Kennedy JC, Reid RL. Intrauterine 5-aminolevulinic acid induces selective fluorescence and photoablation of the rat endometrium. Photochem Photobiol 1993;57:803-807.

Part II

Animal Model

Chapter 4

Animal Model for Barrett's Oesophagus in the Rat and Opossum

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.* *Gastroenterology* (submitted).

INTRODUCTION

Barrett's oesophagus is defined as the presence of metaplastic columnar mucosa with goblet cells in the oesophagus (Chapter 1).[1] The pathogenetic stimulus that causes Barrett's metaplasia is still subject of research. Acid reflux has long been thought to be the only pathogenetic factor. Recently however, it was hypothesized that reflux of alkaline duodenal content might be involved in the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus, also.[1,2] The risk of oesophageal adenocarcinoma in patients with Barrett's oesophagus appears to be about 30- to 50-fold above that in general population, with an estimated incidence of about 1 in 150 patient years.[3-5] Patients with Barrett's oesophagus are treated with antireflux medication or antireflux surgery. However, these therapies have no effect on the Barrett's oesophagus itself and malignant degeneration can still proceed. New forms of endoscopic ablation therapy (*e.g.* photodynamic therapy) intending to ablate the Barrett's epithelium with regeneration of squamous epithelium are under investigation. To evaluate the various endoscopic ablation therapies and to study the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus, an animal model for Barrett's oesophagus is needed. At present, the animal models for Barrett's oesophagus that have been reported describe a small area (less than one millimeter) or small islands of Barrett's epithelium, some even beneath the squamous epithelium, making them useless for evaluation of new forms of therapy for Barrett's oesophagus.[6-12]

Defining Barrett's oesophagus in studies that have performed an oesophagoduodenostomy or oesophagojejunostomy to induce duodenal reflux is difficult as the oesophagus is in continuum with the small intestine. To differentiate between normal duodenal or jejunal mucosa (including goblet cells) and Barrett's mucosa (intestinal metaplasia), especially adjacent to the anastomosis, can be very difficult. Therefore, defining Barrett's oesophagus as the presence of any unequivocal columnar epithelium above the anastomosis remains controversial.

Another difficulty in interpreting the results of rat studies is caused by the difference in the anatomy and histology of the upper gastrointestinal tract compared to man. First, the rat oesophagus is lined by keratinized squamous epithelium whereas the human oesophagus is lined by non-keratinized squamous epithelium. Second, the rat has a squamous forestomach, so that the squamocolumnar junction is located within the stomach. Third, the rat oesophagus lacks submucosal glands that are found in the human oesophagus. This is of particular interest as Barrett's oesophagus is thought to originate from a multipotent undifferentiated stem cell of oesophageal origin, probably located in oesophageal gland ducts, and not from proximal migration of cardiac columnar epithelium, as formerly thought.[6,13-15] Finally, rats do not have a gall-bladder which results in a continuous flow of bile through the common bile duct into the small intestine.

In contrast to the rat, the upper gastrointestinal tract of the opossum, a marsupial, is very similar to man. The opossum therefore, has been used as an animal model for physiological oesophageal studies.[16,17] To date, however, no studies on Barrett's oesophagus have been reported in this species.

The present study aimed to develop a reliable and practical animal model for Barrett's oesophagus. For that purpose, the development of Barrett's epithelium by induction of duodeno-oesophageal reflux was studied both in the rat and in the opossum.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Rats

Twenty-three male inbred Wag/Rij rats (Harlan CPB, Austerlitz, The Netherlands), weighing 200-275 grams were used. The animals had free access to rat chow (AM II, Hope Farms, Woerden, The Netherlands) and tap water acidified to pH 4.0.

Opossums

Twenty-three female gray short-tailed opossums (*Monodelphis domestica*), weighing approximately 90 grams, were used. They were kindly provided by Professor A.P. Payne (University Glasgow, United Kingdom), who obtained the animals from the Southwest Foundation for Biomedical Research, San Antonio, Texas, USA. The animals were housed individually in plastic rat cages containing wooden shavings and nesting material. Animals were fed commercial wet and dry cat food (Rokus meat chunks, De Haan, Nieuwkoop, The Netherlands and Catfood 2572, Hope Farms, Woerden, The Netherlands) and water ad libitum.

Surgical technique

Ether anaesthesia was used for the rats. The opossums were anaesthetized by a combination of the following intramuscular anaesthesia: ketamine (4 mg/animal), xylazine (0.2 mg/animal) and midazolam (0.2 mg/animal). If necessary, additional ketamine (maximal 4 mg/animal) was given. An oesophagojejunostomy according to the model of Levrat was performed through a median laparotomy.[18] The oesophagus was dissected from the stomach and anastomized end to site (interrupted 7/0 prolene sutures) to the jejunum approximately 3 cm distal from the entry of the common bile duct. The abdominal wall of the rats was closed in one layer, the abdominal wall of the opossums in two layers. Additionally, the opossum abdominal wall was tightly packed with plaster until day 5 postoperatively, as these animals would otherwise remove their sutures by gnawing through them. After

surgery the animals received 2 ml glucose 10% subcutaneously and water ad libitum. Chow was provided after 24 hours.

Design of the study

Three rats and three opossums served as unoperated controls. The remaining animals underwent an oesophagojejunostomy with gastric preservation to induce reflux of gastric and duodenal (pancreatic and biliary) juice. Ten rats and 10 opossums were sacrificed at 8 months after surgery and 10 animals of both species at 12 months after surgery.

Handling of specimens

Animals were weight just before sacrifice. The thoracic and abdominal cavities were inspected and the oesophagus, the anastomosis, and the proximal jejunum were excised *en bloc*. The oesophagus was opened longitudinally, the circumference was measured, and the specimen was curled up from distal to proximal (Swiss roll) and fixed in formalin.

Histological examination

Specimens were embedded in paraffin wax, sectioned and stained with haematoxylin and eosin (H&E), periodic acid-Schiff (PAS) and alcian blue. The sections were microscopically evaluated by a histopathologist blinded for the species and the treatment. The oesophagus was examined for hyperkeratosis, squamous hyperplasia, erosions, metaplastic columnar epithelium, dysplasia, benign papillomas, and carcinoma. A specimen was defined as having squamous hyperplasia when there was papillary elongation or basal cell hyperplasia, occasionally resulting in the formation of intramural cysts. Dysplasia was diagnosed according to standard criteria and included dysplasia arising in either glandular or squamous epithelium.[19] Barrett's oesophagus was defined as oesophageal mucosa lined by columnar and goblet cells.

Composition of bile

Bile was collected in five opossums by aspirating bile from the gall bladder after sacrifice. In five rats the common bile duct was cannulated and bile was collected for approximately one hour. Thereafter, rats were sacrificed.

Total bile acids were analysed enzymatically according to Mashige[20]. The quantitation is based on enzymatic dehydroxylation of the 3α-OH group of the steroid moiety which is present on all bile acids.

Individual bile acids concentration in bile samples was then determined gaschromatographically. 23-Nordeoxycholic acid (Steraloids Inc. Wilton, N.H. USA) was added as internal standard to individual bile samples. 10 μl internal

standard (5.3 mmol l^{-1}) was added to 100 μl of rat bile or 25 μl of opossum bile. The bile acids were enzymatically hydrolysed with cholylglycinehydrolase (Sigma Aldrich Chemie, Zwijndrecht, The Netherlands) during 16 hours at 37°C.[21] Thereafter, the bile acids were extracted twice with chloroform and the extract dried under nitrogen. The unconjugated bile acids were then derivatisized to their methylesteracetate derivatives according to Lillington *et al.*[22] Gaschromotography was performed on a HP 5880 equipped with a Split/Splitless injector (Hewlett Packard, Amsterdam, The Netherlands) and a 15 m, 0.22 mm ID fused silica capillary column coated with 0.2 μm CP-Sil19CB (Chrompack, Middelburg, The Netherlands). Gaschromatographic conditions were as follows: carrier gas (Helium) 2 ml min^{-1}; injector and detector temperature 300°C; oventemperature 250°C during 2 minutes and raised to 290°C at 8°C min^{-1}. One μl split injection was done with a split ratio of 30:1.

The ratio glycine:taurine was determined according to Blom *et al.*[23] After enzymatic deconjugation the bile acids were extracted using chloroform. The remaining chloroform in the hydrolysate was removed by aeration with nitrogen gas and 0.2 ml hydrolysate was mixed with 0.2 ml sulfosalicylic acid (6% wt./vol.) and centrifugated for 8 min at 14000*g*. Depending on the bile acid concentration, the supernatant was diluted with water (estimated end bile acid concentration 500 μmol l^{-1}) and mixed with 1 part of sulfosalicylic acid (6% wt./vol.) containing norleucine as internal standard. Glycine and taurine concentrations were determined in the hydrolysate by ion-exchange chromatography on a Biochrom 20 Amino Acid Analyser (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech, Buckinghamshire, United Kingdom).

Statistical analysis

The length of the Barrett's oesophagus and the weight of the animals are expressed as mean ± standard error of the mean (SEM). Comparisons were made using Student's *t*-test. A difference was considered to be significant at *P* values of <0.05.

RESULTS

General observations

Two of the opossums were found dead at the day after surgery, due to opening of the abdominal wound by gnawing through plaster and sutures. Another two animals died at week 5 after surgery due to stenosis of the anastomosis resulting in a dilated oesophagus and weight loss. One opossum was found dead at week 10 due to an abces near the anastomosis.

The 15 remaining animals recovered quickly from surgery and were very active

until sacrifice. They ate and drank normally and did not loose weight (Table 4.1). Seven opossums were sacrificed at 8 months, and eight animals at 1 year after surgery.

In contrast to the opossums, the rats did not thrive well and lost weight following the oesophagojejunostomy. Two animals died of anastomotic stenosis and seven of complications from reflux oesophagitis such as malnutrition and pneumonia.

In the postoperative period, all operated rats lost weight or gained less weight than control animals ($P<0.01$) (Table 4.1). Seven rats were sacrificed at 8 months and four animals at 12 months after surgery.

Table 4.1 Incidence and length of Barrett's oesophagus (BO) and weight of opossums and rats.

groups (n)	BO (n)	length of BO (mm)	weight (grams)
opossums			
controls (3)	0	0	96 ± 4
8 months (7)	0	0	93 ± 4
12 months (8)	2	0.4 ± 0.3	97 ± 5
rats			
controls (3)	0	0	386 ± 21
8 months (7)	6	6.1 ± 1.4	274 ± 46*
12 months (4)	4	16.5 ± 1.6	255 ± 34*

* $P<0.01$ compared to the control group.

Histology

Macroscopically, marginal thickening of the longitudinal white folds could be observed in the distal oesophagus of operated opossums. No other abnormalities were noticed. In operated rats, the distal and middle oesophagus was thickened and dilated. The distal part had a smooth pink aspect, in most cases separated from the white squamous lining of the proximal oesophagus by a zone with an uneven surface with erosions.

Microscopically, in control animals, the differences between the opossum and rat oesophagus were clearly visible (Figures 4.1 and 4.2).

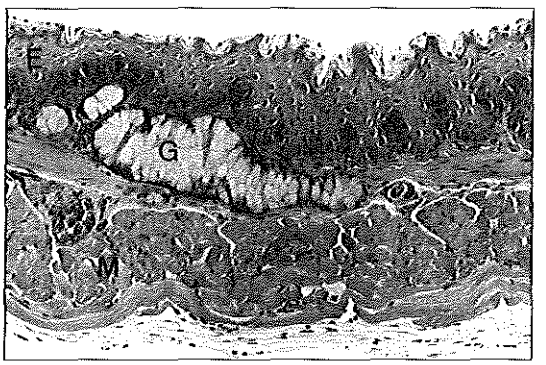


Figure 4.1 Section of the distal oesophagus of a control opossum, lined by non-keratinized squamous epithelium. Oesophageal glands, staining positively with PAS and alcian blue, are visible in the submucosa (x40, H&E staining).

E=epithelium, G=submucosal gland, K=keratin layer, M=muscularis propria, SM=submucosa.

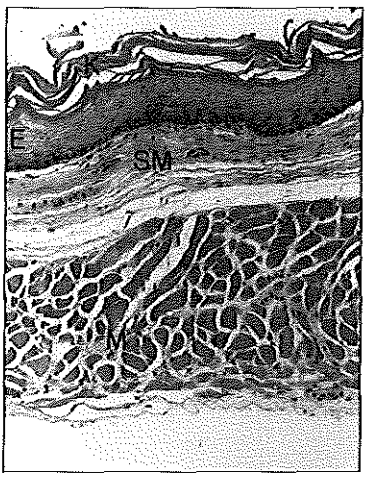


Figure 4.2 Section of the distal oesophagus of a control rat, lined by keratinized squamous epithelium. The rat oesophagus shows no submucosal glands (x40, H&E staining).

The opossum oesophagus is lined by non-keratinized squamous epithelium and has submucosal glands, whereas rats lack these glands and have keratinized squamous epithelium. In control opossums, the epithelial layer was slightly thicker and the papillae more pronounced in the distal oesophagus than in the proximal oesophagus. In operated opossums, the junction between columnar jejunal epithelium and squamous oesophageal epithelium was located exactly at the site of the anastomosis (marked with the sutures) in all seven animals in the 8-months group and in six out of eight animals in the 12-months group (Table 4.1).

One opossum in the latter group showed microscopic foci of specialized intestinal metaplasia of 1 mm and one of 2 mm length (Figure 4.3). The squamous epithelium showed very mild regenerative thickening and was very sparsely infiltrated by neutrophils).

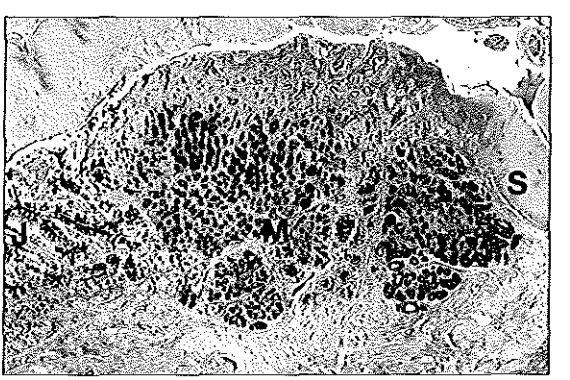


Figure 4.3 Distal opossum oesophagus 1 year after oesophago-jejunostomy. The section shows microscopic foci of specialized intestinal metaplasia (length 1 mm) (x20, PAS staining).
J=jejunum, M=foci of specialized intestinal metaplasia, S=squamous epithelium.

In rats, Barrett's oesophagus was found in the distal oesophagus from the anastomosis to 6.1 ± 1.4 mm (8 months) and 16.5 ± 1.6 mm (12 months) cranial from the sutures (Table 4.1, Figure 4.4).

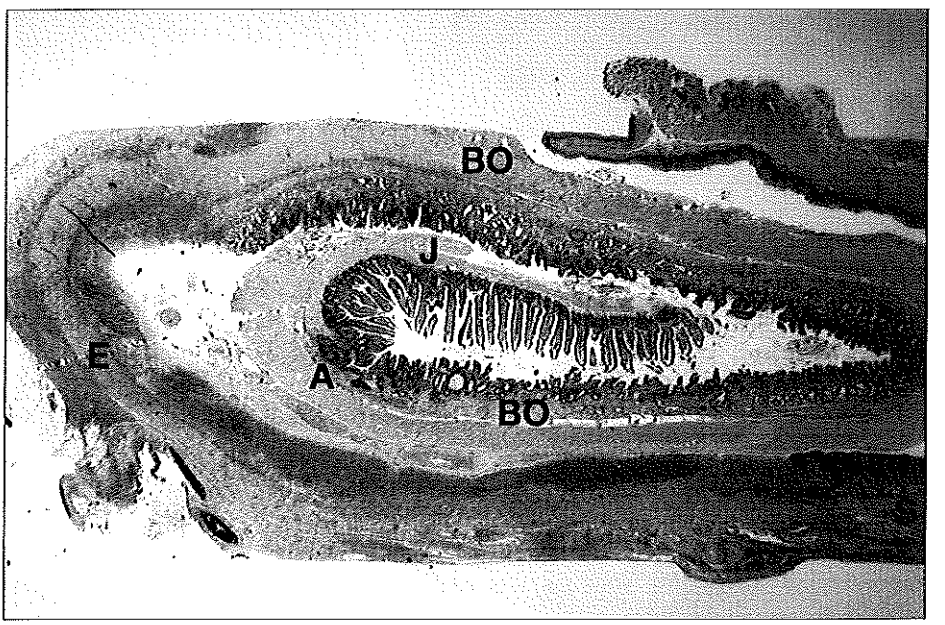


Figure 4.4 Rat oesophagus after 1 year of gastroduodeno-oesophageal reflux, showing macroscopic Barrett's oesophagus of almost 2 cm length. The oesophagus with a small piece of jejunum was opened longitudinally and curled up from distal to proximal (x10, H&E staining). A=site of anastomosis, BO=Barrett's oesophagus, E=erosion, J=jejunum, S=squamous epithelium.

On haematoxylin and eosin staining, Barrett's oesophagus consisted of columnar epithelium with intestinal metaplasia. This glandular epithelium was quite different from the adjacent jejunal epithelium (Figure 4.5). The villi were less pronounced and the mucosa resembled gastric mucosa (with intestinal metaplasia), with glands and foveolae instead of crypts and villi as found in the jejunum.

Also on PAS and alcian blue staining the difference between Barrett's oesophagus and jejunum was clear. No dysplasia was found in the columnar lining. Proximal from the Barrett's oesophagus an area of erosion and inflammation with cellular infiltration and vasodilatation was apparent in all animals. Proximal from this area a rather small zone of hyperplastic squamous epithelium with some hyperkeratosis was found, after which the oesophagus was lined by normal squamous epithelium.

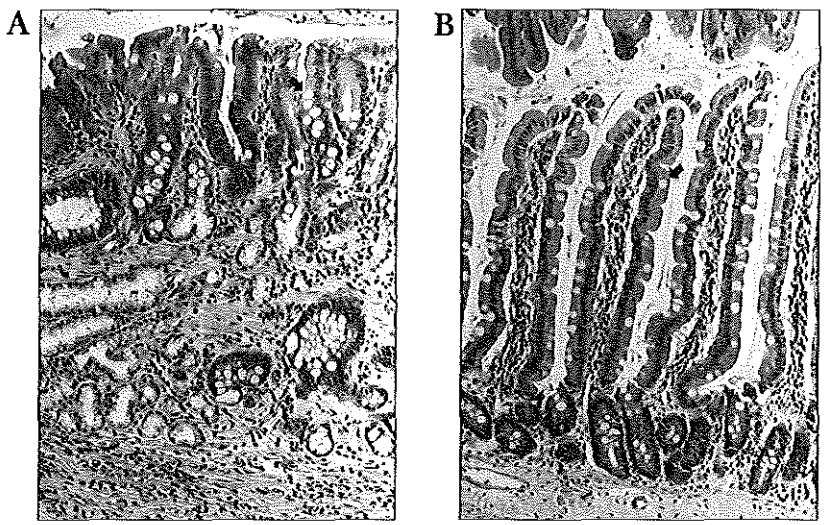


Figure 4.5 Distal rat oesophagus exposed to gastroduodenal reflux during 1 year. Cranial from the sutures of the oesophagojejunal anastomosis, the oesophagus was lined by columnar epithelium with intestinal metaplasia and characteristic goblet cells (arrow) (**A**). This glandular epithelium is quite different from the adjacent jejunal epithelium (**B**). It resembles gastric mucosa, with glands and foveolae instead of crypts and villi as found in the jejunum (x40, H&E staining).

Composition of bile

Total bile acid concentration in bile in the gall bladder of opossums was comparable to the bile acids concentration in human gall bladder bile.[24] Total bile acid concentration in opossums was 4 to 5 times higher than the concentration in bile in the common bile duct in rats (Table 4.2).

Table 4.2 Total bile acid concentration and percentage of individual bile acids in rat bile (collected in the common bile duct) and opossum bile (collected in the gall bladder). Values are expressed as mean ± standard error of the mean (n=5 in both groups). The data on human bile (collected in the gall bladder) are taken from the literature.[24]

	rats	opossums	man
total bile acid concentration (mmol l^{-1})	39±3	166±28	50-200
cholic acid (%)	86±2	42±7	35
chenodeoxycholic acid (%)	10±2	27±4	35
deoxycholic acid (%)	4±2	28±7	24
lithocholic acid (%)	0	4±4	6
glycine:taurine	1:2 to 1:5	1:48 to 1:118	2:1 to 3:1

Opossum bile is best comparable with gall bladder bile and rat bile aspirates with hepatic bile. The chemical composition of opossum bile resembled the human situation whereas rat bile contained more cholic acid (86% compared to 42%) and less chenodeoxycholic and deoxycholic acid (10% and 4% compared to 27% and 28%, respectively).

The ratio glycine:taurine was higher in man (2:1 to 3:1) than in rats (1:2 to 1:5). In opossums the ratio glycine:taurine was very low (1:48 to 1:117) (Table 4.2).

DISCUSSION

From our results it can be concluded that chronic reflux of duodenal juice induces macroscopic Barrett's oesophagus in rats. A variety of stainings demonstrated the similarity of rat Barrett's oesophagus to that found in man, and proved it to be of another entity than migrated jejunal mucosa. The duration of the period of reflux correlated well with the length of the Barrett's oesophagus. Thus, an oesophagojejunostomy in the rat provides a unique, reliable animal model for Barrett's oesophagus.

Great efforts have been made to develop an animal model for oesophageal adenocarcinoma and to define the pathogenetic stimulus of its precursor Barrett's oesophagus.[25] However, both animal and human studies show conflicting results.[1,6-14,26-28] From rat studies, there seems little doubt that duodenogastric reflux is important in the pathogenesis of gastric cancer and a similar picture has emerged with regard to oesophageal adenocarcinoma.[2,8-11,26,27] The issue is more complex with regard to animal models for the development of Barrett's oesophagus. Two studies have demonstrated that columnar re-epithelialization of the dog denuded lower oesophagus occurs in the presence of acid reflux and acid and bile reflux.[6,7] In the absence of reflux or with bile reflux alone the oesophagus regenerated with squamous epithelium. In rat studies, five authors reported the development of columnar metaplasia of the oesophagus.[8-12] In all, Barrett's oesophagus was induced by reflux of duodenal juice into the oesophagus. However, Barrett's oesophagus was induced only in a minority of animals or was confined to a small area or small islands near the anastomosis. These models can be used to study the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus but not for evaluating the effects of endoscopic ablation therapies. For this, an animal model inducing long segments of Barrett's oesophagus in a vast majority of animals is needed.

Two studies have investigated gastro-oesophageal reflux as causal factor of oesophagitis in the opossum. In one study a cardioplasty was performed in five animals.[29] After 10 weeks, however, lower oesophageal sphincter activity returned

to normal and at this time, gastro-oesophageal reflux ceased, and oesophagitis healed. In the other study, the cardia of eight opossums was resected whereafter six animals survived for 31 to 72 weeks.[30] Hyperplasia of the squamous basal cells (called chronic oesophagitis by the authors) was found in these animals.

The difference between the gastrointestinal tract of the opossum and the rat could explain the fact that opossums did not develop macroscopic Barrett's oesophagus in the present study. Like man, the opossum has a gall bladder, that stores and concentrates bile and releases it into the small intestine when food, and fat in particular, is present in the small bowel. Furthermore, the extent of the bile flow and the flow of pancreatic secretions into the duodenum in the opossum and in man depends on the activity of the sphincter of Oddi.[31] The tone of the sphincter of Oddi between meals is high, and pancreaticobiliary reflux consequently will be confined to only several time intervals per day. As mentioned before, the opossums showed no discomfort following oesophagojejunostomy and did not loose weight. The rat in contrast, lacks a gall-bladder and although it has a true sphincter of Oddi, the tonic activity of this sphincter is not very high so that fluid bile and pancreatic juice continuously flow into the duodenum.[32] Following surgery rats but not opossums showed considerable discomfort and lost weight. Furthermore, the *in vivo* production of bile acids in rat liver is 3- to 5-fold higher than that in human liver; the data for opossums are not known.[33] From the present study, reflux of bile acids seems to be the most important factor in inducing Barrett's oesophagus as the absence of a gall bladder, leading to continuous bile reflux, is the main difference between rats and opossums.

Of the components of duodenal juice that may play a role in the pathophysiology of Barrett's oesophagus, bile salts and their bacterial enzymatic degradation products are indeed considered most important because of their possible role in carcinogenesis in the colon. In the present study bacterial degradation of bile acids is likely to occur in the oesophagus as the oesophagus is in continuum with the small bowel after oesophagojeunostomy. Studies have demonstrated that cell toxicity of (un)conjugated bile acids is related to their relative hydrophobicity, and thus to their capacity of passive diffusion.[34-36] In the present study the percentage of the more hydrophobic (cheno)deoxycholic acids was higher in opossums and man than in rats, whereas rat bile contained more hydrophylic cholic acids. Bile acids in gall bladder as well as hepatic bile are normally found conjugated with glycine or taurine. These conjugated forms contribute to an increase in hydrophilic character. However, the pK values of glycine and taurine conjugates differ greatly ($pK_{taurine\ conjugates}$=1.85-1.95, $pK_{glycine\ conjugates}$=3.95-4.84), making taurine conjugates more hydrophilic and less toxic.[37] Consistent with data from others, in the present study opossum bile acids were found to be almost exclusively conjugated with taurine.[38] These findings support the concept that taurine conjugated bile acids

protect against loss of surface epithelium and initiation of subsequent proliferative response induced by hydrophobic bile salts.[39,40]

The conflicting results of duodenal reflux in animal and human studies and the observation that previous gastric surgery, inducing duodenal reflux, does not lead to a higher prevalence of Barrett's oesophagus, has led to the hypothesis that other factors are involved in the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus.[41] Oxygen radicals produced by infiltrating neutrophils and macrophages could be a pathogenetic factor in Barrett's oesophagus and oesophageal carcinomas.[42]Reactive oxygen species are mutagenic and are involved in tumour promotion. In all experimental rats the distal segment of the oesophagus lined by columnar epithelium showed marginal infiltration. Proximal from the Barrett's segment an area of erosion and severe inflammation with extensive infiltration of neutrophils was always seen proximal from which the oesophagus was lined by squamous epithelium. In contrast, the opossum oesophagus showed no signs of erosion and the oesophageal wall was only very sparsely infiltrated by neutrophils.

Barrett's oesophagus is thought to originate from a multipotent undifferentiated stem cell of oesophageal origin, rather than from proximal migration of cardiac columnar epithelium, as formerly thought.[6,13,14,42] The present study confirms that Barrett's oesophagus does not originate from proximal migration of gastric columnar cells. Proximal migration of jejunal cells seems unlikely as several stainings show that the columnar epithelium proximal from the anastomosis can be differentiated easily from the adjacent jejunal mucosa. Furthermore, it can be concluded from the present study that, assuming that Barrett's oesophagus originates from multipotent undifferentiated stem cells, these stem cells are not located in oesophageal glands or oesophageal gland ducts, as the rat lacks these structures. In a situation of prolonged gastroduodenal reflux into the rat oesophagus, some gland-like structures develop within the oesophageal mucosa. These structures resemble the ulcer-associated cell lineage (groups of neat acinar structures within the lamina propria associated with a duct draining to the villus surface) as described by Hanby *et al.*[43] Probably, this cell lineage and Barrett's epithelium originate from stem cells in the basal cell layer of the surface squamous epithelium. The opossum oesophageal glands and gland ducts histologically show no change under the influence of duodenogastro-oesophageal reflux.

In conclusion, this is the first report of an animal model with macroscopic Barrett's oesophagus over a length of 2 cm. This animal model can be used in studies to evaluate the short- and long-term effects of the various endoscopic ablation therapies for Barrett's oesophagus. After one year of duodeno-oesophageal reflux, macroscopic Barrett's oesophagus was induced in rats whereas approximately 25% of opossums developed only microscopic foci of specialized intestinal metaplasia. Barrett's oesophagus in rats does not originate from

oesophageal glands but likely from epithelial stem cells stimulated by contents of duodenal refluxate and, possibly, inflammatory mediators. Thorough investigation of the pattern of various stainings and the long traject of columnar lining of the oesophagus in the present long-term study prove the similarity with human Barrett's oesophagus. It would be of great interest to investigate whether opossums that have undergone an oesophagojejunostomy combined with cholecystectomy and papillotomy will develop macroscopic Barrett's oesophagus. Combined with studies on the effect of the individual components of duodenal reflux material and the role of infiltrating neutrophils, further steps can be made to elucidate the pathogenesis and etiology of Barrett's oesophagus.

REFERENCES

1. Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Siersema PD, De Bruin RWF, Tilanus HW. Barrett's oesophagus: pathophysiology, diagnosis and management. Scand J Gastroenterol 1998;33:449-453.
2. Marshall REK, Anggiansah A, Owen WJ. Bile in the oesophagus: clinical relevance and ambulatory detection. Br J Surg 1997;84:21-28.
3. Cameron AJ, Ott BJ, Payne WS. The incidence of adenocarcinoma in columnar-lined (Barrett's) esophagus. N Engl J Med 1985;313:857-859.
4. Hameeteman W, Tytgat GNJ, Houthoff HJ, Van Tweel JG. Barrett's esophagus: development of dysplasia and adenocarcinoma. Gastroenterology 1989;96:1249-1256.
5. Mencke-Pluymers MB, Hop WC, Dees J, Van Blankestein M, Tilanus HW. Risk factors for the development of an adenocarcinoma in columnar-lined (Barrett's) esophagus. The Rotterdam Esophageal Tumor Study Group. Cancer 1993;72:1155-1158.
6. Gillen P, Keeling P, Byrne PJ, West AB, Hennessy TPJ. Experimental columnar metaplasia in the canine oesophagus. Br J Surg 1988;75:113-115.
7. Bremner CG, Lynch VP, Ellis FH. Barrett's esophagus: congenital or acquired? An experimental study of esophageal mucosal regeneration in the dog. Surgery 1970;68:209-216.
8. Clark GWB, Smyrk TC, Mirvish SS, Anselmino M, Yamashita Y, Hinder RA, DeMeester TR, Birt DF. Effect of gastroduodenal juice and dietary fat on the development of Barrett's esophagus and esophageal neoplasma: an experimental rat model. Ann Surg Oncol 1994;1:252-261.
9. Ireland AP, Peters JH, Smyrk TC, DeMeester TR, Clark GWB, Mirvish SS, Adrian TE. Gastric juice protects against the development of esophageal adenocarcinoma in the rat. Ann Surg 1996;3:358-371.
10. Miwa K, Sahara H, Segawa M, Kinami S, Sato T, Miyazaki I, Hattori T. Reflux of duodenal or gastro-duodenal contents induces esophageal carcinoma in rats. Int J Cancer 1996;67:269-274.
11. Goldstein SR, Yang G, Curtis SK, Rheul KR, Liu BC, Mirvish SS, Newmark HL, Yang CS. Development of esophageal metaplasia and adenocarcinoma in a rat surgical model without the use of a carcinogen. Carcinogenesis 1997;18:2265-2270.
12. Seto Y, Kobori O. Role of reflux oesophagitis and acid in the development of columnar epithelium in the rat oesophagus. Br J Surg 1993;80:467-470.
13. Li H, Walsh TN, O'Dowd G, Gillen P, Byrne PJ, Hennessy TPJ. Mechanism of columnar metaplasia and squamous regeneration in experimental Barrett's esophagus. Surgery 1994;115:176-181.
14. Spechler SJ, Goyal RK. Barrett's esophagus. N Engl J Med 1986;315:362-371.
15. Monnier P, Fontolliet C, Savary M, Ollyo JB. Barrett's oesophagus or columnar epithelium of the lower oesophagus. Baillière's Clin Gastroenterol 1987;1:769-789.
16. Ackerman L, Piros J, De Carle D, Christensen J. A scanning electron microscopic study of esophageal mucosa. In: Proceedings of the workshop on advances in biomedical applications of the scanning electron microscopy, Part V, Scanning electron microscopy. Chicago: Illinois Institute of Technology Research Institute, 1976:247-252.
17. Marklin GF, Krause WJ, Cutts JH. Structure of the esophagus in the adult opossum, Didelphis virginiana. Anat Anz 1979;145:249-261.
18. Levrat M, Lambert R, Kirshbaum G. Esophagitis produced by reflux of duodenal contents in rats. Am J Dig Dis 1962;7:564-573.
19. Ridell RH. The biopsy diagnosis of gastroesophageal reflux disease, "carditis", and Barrett's esophagus, and sequelea of therapy. Am J Surg Pathol 1996;20:S31-S51.

20. Mashige F, Imai K, Osaga T. A simple and sensitive assay of total serum bile acids. Clin Chim Acta 1976;70:79-86.
21. Karlaganis G, Baumgartner G. Determination of bile acids in serum by capillary gas-liquid chromatography. Clin Chim Acta 1979;92:19-26.
22. Lillington JM, Trafford DJH, Makin HLJ. A rapid and simple method for the esterification of fatty acids and steroid carboxylic acids prior to gas-liquid chromatography. Clin Chim Acta 1981;111:91-98.
23. Blom W, Huijmans JGM. Differential diagnosis of (inherited) amino acid metabolism or transport disorders. Amino Acids 1992;2:25-67.
24. Carey MC. In: Arias I, Popper H, Schachter D, Shafritz DA (eds). The liver; biology and pathobiology. New York: Raven Press 1982,429-465.
25. Blot WJ, Devesa SS, Kneller RW, Fraumeni JF. Rising incidence of adenocarcinoma of the esophagus and gastric cardia. JAMA 1991;265:1287-89.
26. Pera M, Bombi JA, Ernst H, Pera C, Mohr U. Influence of esophagojejunostomy on the induction of adenocarcinoma of the distal esophagus in Sprague-Dawley rats by subcutaneous injection of 2,6-dimethylnitrosomorpholine. Cancer Res 1989;49:6803-6808.
27. Attwood SEA, Smyrk TC, DeMeester TR, Mirvish SS, Stein HJ, Hinder RA. Duodenoesophageal reflux and the development of esophageal adenocarcinoma in rats. Surgery 1992;111:503-510.
28. Vaezi MF, Singh S, Richter JE. Role of acid and duodenogastric reflux in esophageal mucosal injury: a review of animal and human studies. Gastroenterology 1995;108:1897-1907.
29. De Carle DJ. Experimental gastroesophageal reflux in the australian brush-tailed possum. Gastroenterology 1975;69:625-629.
30. Schulze-Delrieu K, Mitros FA, Shirazi S. Inflammatory and structural changes in the opossum esophagus after resection of the cardia. Gastroenterology 1982;82:276-283.
31. Becker JM. Physiology of motor function of the sphincter of Oddi. Surg Clin North Am 1993;73:1291-1309.
32. Shorter RG, Bollman JL, Baggenstoss AH. Pressures in the common bile duct of the rat. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 1959;102:682-686.
33. Ellis E, Goodwin B, Abrahamsson A, Liddle C, Mode A, Rudling M, Bjorkhem I, Einarsson C. Bile acid synthesis in primary cultures of rat and human hepatocytes. Hepatology 1998;27:615-620.
34. Moorehead RJ, Campbell GR, Donaldson JD, McKelvey ST. Relationship between duodenal bile acids and colorectal neoplasia. Gut 1987;28:1454-1459.
35. Latta RK, Fiander H, Ross NW, Simpson C, Schneider H. Toxicity of bile acids to colon cancer cell lines. Cancer Lett 1993;16:167-173.
36. Salo JA, Kivilaasko E. Role of bile salts and trypsin in the pathogenesis of experimental alkaline esophagitis. Surgery 1983;93:925-932.
37. Small DM. The physical chemistry of cholanic acids. In: Nair PP, Kritchevsky D (eds). The bile acids chemistry, physiology, and metabolism. Volume I Chemistry. Plenum Press New-York-London 1971:249-355.
38. Haslewood GAD. Bile salts. In: Peters R, Young FG (eds). Methuen's monographs on biochemical subjects. Richard Clay (The Chaucer Press) Ltd., Bungay, Suffolk, Great Britain 1967:1-116.
39. Shekels LL, Beste JE, Ho SB. Tauroursodeoxycholic acid protects in vitro models of human colonic cancer cells from cytotoxic effects of hydrophobic bile acids. J Lab Clin Med 1996;127:57-66.
40. Heuman DM, Pandak WM, Hylemon PB, Vlahcevic ZR. Conjugates of ursodeoxycholate

protect against cytotoxicity of more hydrophobic bile salts: *in vitro* studies in rat hepatocytes and human erythrocytes. Hepatology 1991;14:920-926.

41. Parrilla P, Liron R, Martinez de Haro LF, Ortiz A, Molina J, De Andres B. Gastric surgery does not increase the risk of developing Barrett's esophagus. Am J Gastroenterol 1997;92:32-36.
42. Mirvish SS. Studies on experimental animals involving surgical procedures and/or nitrosamine treatment related to the etiology of esophageal adenocarcinoma. Cancer Letters 1997;117:161-174.
43. Hanby AM, Pera M, Filipe I, Duranceau A, Wright NA, Pera M, Grande L, Poulsom R. Duodenal content reflux esophagitis in the rat. Am J Pathol 1997;151:1819-1824.

Chapter 5

Oesophagojejunostomy Provides a Unique, Reproducible Model for Barrett's Oesophagus

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.* *Journal of Surgical Oncology* (submitted).

INTRODUCTION

In many western countries the incidence of adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus is rising. The majority of these adenocarcinoma arise in a Barrett's oesophagus.[1] Barrett's oesophagus is defined as the presence of metaplastic columnar mucosa with goblet cells in the oesophagus (Chapter 1).[2] The pathogenesis of Barrett's metaplasia and malignant degeneration of this entity are not clearly understood. Acid reflux has long been thought to be the only pathogenetic factor. Patients with Barrett's oesophagus are usually treated with antireflux therapy. Although very effective in the treatment of reflux, antireflux medication and antireflux surgery have no effect on the Barrett's epithelium itself.[3-5]

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) with 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA)-induced sensibilisation may be used to selectively eliminate Barrett's oesophagus.[6] An animal model for Barrett's oesophagus is needed to investigate the pharmacokinetics of ALA-induced photosensitization, to find optimal treatment parameters and evaluate the short- and long-term effects of PDT for Barrett's oesophagus.

Several studies have been published on rat models for the development of adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus.[7-14] Most models used carcinogen (nitrosamines) but recently oesophageal adenocarcinoma were produced in rats undergoing various operations without the use of carcinogen.[12-14] Five authors report the development of columnar metaplasia of the oesophagus.[10,12,14-16] In all, this was induced by reflux of duodenal juice into the oesophagus. In the study of Miwa *et al.*, the majority of rats developed Barrett's oesophagus after a period of 50 weeks of gastroduodeno-oesophageal reflux or duodeno-oesophageal reflux, whereas gastro-oesophageal reflux alone induced Barrett's oesophagus in only 13%.[12] Seto *et al.* reported that acidified water had a synergistic effect on the development of Barrett's oesophagus induced by reflux of duodenal contents.[15] In contrast, Ireland *et al.* found that the presence of gastric juice in refluxed duodenal juice protected against the development of Barrett's oesophagus and adenocarcinoma.[16] Goldstein *et al.* found columnar epithelium in 10 out of 11 rats, 31 weeks after an oesophago-duodenostomy.[14] In the denuded canine oesophagus columnar re-epithelialization occured in the presence of acid reflux and acid and bile reflux, but not with bile reflux alone.[17,18] As the rat oesophagus is lined by keratinized squamous epithelium, denudation in the present study was performed surgically or by locally applicated salicylic acid to bring about keratolysis.

The aim of the present study was to establish an animal model for Barrett's oesophagus and investigate several pathogenetic factors and possible synergistic factors that could result in a faster induction of Barrett's oesophagus.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Rats

Forty-two male inbred Wistar rats (Harlan CPB, Austerlitz, The Netherlands), weighing 200-275 grams were used. The animals had free access to rat chow (AM II, Hope Farms, Woerden, The Netherlands) and tap water acidified to pH 4.0.

Surgical technique

Surgery was performed under ether anaesthesia. Through a median laparotomy an oesophagojejunostomy was performed.[19] The oesophagus was dissected from the stomach and anastomosed end to side (interrupted 7/0 prolene sutures) to the jejunum approximately 5 cm distal from the ligament of Treitz. Additionally, a gastrectomy as described by Santini *et al.* was performed to determine the effect of acidified drinking water.[20] The abdominal wall was closed in one layer (2/0 prolene sutures). After surgery the animals received 2 ml glucose 10% subcutaneously and water ad libitum. Chow was provided after 24 hours.

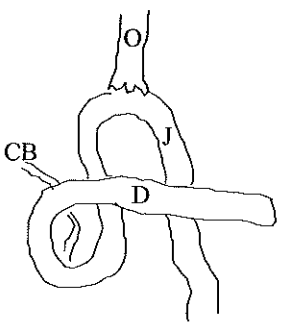
Design of the study

Forty-two rats were randomly allocated to seven groups of six animals each. One group served as control group: the animals were not operated and three of them received N-nitrosomethyl-benzylamine (NMBA) (Ash Stevens Inc., Detroit, USA) and acidified water. The carcinogen was analysed by reverse phase high performance liquid chromatography and found to be >95% pure. NMBA was given by subcutaneous injection at a dose of 0.5 mg kg^{-1}, 3 times per week, for 5 weeks.[11]

In the experimental groups an oesophagojejunostomy with gastrectomy was performed (Table 5.1). In one group this procedure was combined with acidified drinking water to induce duodenal reflux in an acidified environment.[15] Acidification of the drinking water was achieved with HCl to a pH of 1.8. In the other groups the oesophagojejunostomy was combined with NMBA in a scheme as described above, starting at week 2 after surgery, both acidified drinking water and postoperative NMBA, keratinolysis, or denudation of the mucosa. Keratinolysis of the oesophageal lining was performed by application of salicylic acid (Bufa, Uitgeest, The Netherlands) in the distal oesophagus. After 20 minutes the remaining salicylic acid was washed out and the anastomosis was made. Denudation was achieved by surgically stripping the oesophageal mucosa over 2 cm in length for half the circumference before the anastomosis was made.[17,18]

The animals were weighed weekly and sacrificed at week 18 after surgery.

Table 5.1 Design of the study

Groups (n=6)		procedure
1		oesophagojejunostomy
2		+ acidified drinking water
3		+ NMBA
4		+ acidified drinking water + NMBA
5		+ salicylic acid
6		+ mucosal stripping

NMBA=N-nitrosomethyl-benzylamine; CB=commom bile duct; D=duodenum; J=jejunum; O=oesophagus.

Handling of specimens

Just before sacrifice, blood was collected by cardiac puncture to determine white blood cell count, red blood cell count, haemoglobin, and haematocrit. The thoracic and abdominal cavities were inspected and the oesophagus, the anastomosis, and the proximal jejunum were excised *en bloc*. The oesophagus was opened longitudinally, the circumference was measured, and the specimen was curled up from distal to proximal (Swiss roll) and fixed in formalin.

Histological examination

Histological examination was performed by a histopathologist blinded for the treatment. Specimens were embedded in paraffin wax, sectioned and stained with haematoxylin and eosin (H&E), periodic acid-Schiff (PAS), and alcian blue. The oesophagus was examined histologically for squamous hyperplasia, hyperkeratosis, erosions, Barrett's oesophagus, benign papillomas, dysplasia, and carcinoma. Squamous hyperplasia was defined as papillary elongation or basal cell hyperplasia, occasionally resulting in the formation of intramural cysts. A specimen was defined as having Barrett's oesophagus when there was oesophageal mucosa lined by columnar epithelium with intestinal metaplasia and characteristic goblet cells. Dysplasia was diagnosed according to standard criteria and included dysplasia arising in either glandular or squamous epithelium.[21] Carcinomas were classified into three histological groups: pure squamous cell carcinoma, carcinoma with both squamous and mucinous differentiation (adenosquamous carcinoma) and pure adenocarcinoma.

Statistical analysis

The values of the blood indices and oesophageal circumference are expressed as mean ± standard error of the mean (SEM). Comparisons were made using Student's *t*-test. A difference was considered to be significant at *P* values of <0.05.

RESULTS

General observations

Five animals (four in the denudation group) died before the end of the experiment. The cause of dead was an anastomotic stenosis of the denuded oesophagus in four, and unknown in one. The rats in the experimental groups lost weight until week 5 after surgery, thereafter weight increased very slowly. The weight of the control animals increased until the end of the experiment and was significantly higher than in the experimental groups from week 2 to the end of the experiment (Figure 5.1).

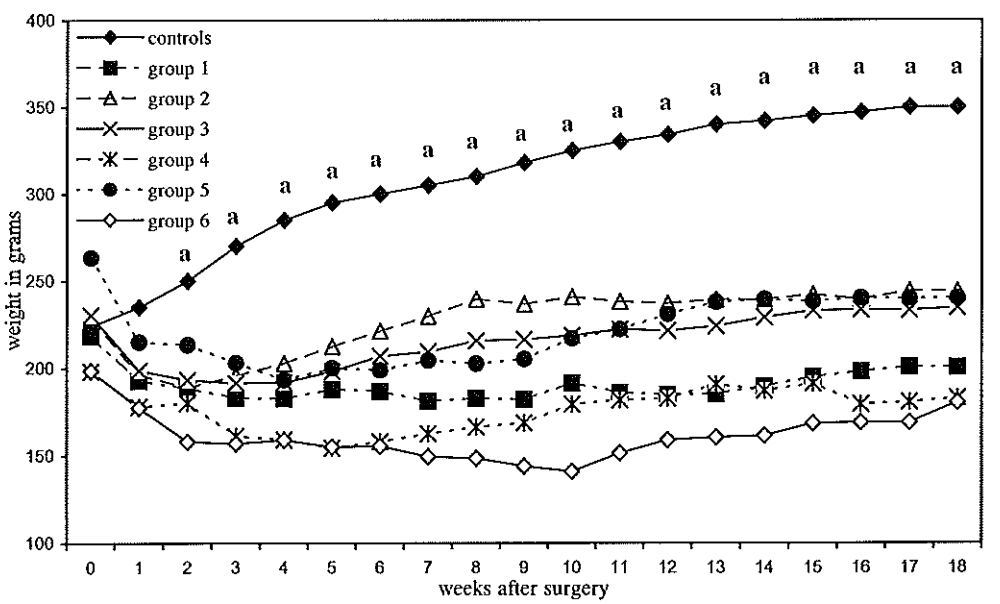


Figure 5.1 Time course of weight changes in control animal and experimental groups. Points represent the mean weight of each group. Control=no oesophagojejunostomy (3 animals with and 3 animals without acidified drinking water and N-nitrosomethyl-benzylamine [NMBA]), group 1=oesophagojejunostomy, 2=oesophagojejunostomy+acidified drinking water, 3=oesophagojejunostomy+NMBA, 4=oesophagojejunostomy+acidified drinking water+NMBA, 5=oesophagojejunostomy+salicylic acid, 6=oesophagojejunostomy+mucosal stripping.
a=$P<0.05$ (control group versus experimental groups).

White blood cell and red blood cell counts at the end of the experiment did not differ significantly between the study groups and the control animals. A trend though was noticed for white blood cell count to be higher and red blood cell count to be lower in the study groups (Table 5.2). Haemoglobin and haematocrit were significantly lower in the study groups compared to the control group ($P<0.001$). The distal oesophagus was significantly dilated and thickened in the operated groups compared to the control group ($P<0.01$) (Table 5.2). There were no obvious macroscopic differences among the six subgroups. The mucosa of the lower oesophagus was grossly irregular and showed various abnormalities in most animals: multiple white plaques, erosions, glandular-like pink areas and in some animals papillomas. No macroscopic tumours were found.

Table 5.2 Blood indices and oesophageal circumference in rats 18 weeks after oesophagojejunostomy.

groups	WBC ($x10^9$ l^{-1})	RBC ($x10^{12}$ l^{-1})	HGB (mmol l^{-1})	HCT l l^{-1}	circumference (mm)
control	7.4 ± 1.8	7.7 ± 0.4	8.2 ± 0.3	0.44 ± 0.01	4.6 ± 0.2
1	10.5 ± 1.1	6.7 ± 0.8	2.8 ± 0.3 *	0.21 ± 0.02 *	8.7 ± 0.8 *
2	13.6 ± 2.1	6.1 ± 0.9	2.8 ± 0.3 *	0.21 ± 0.02 *	10.0 ± 0.9 *
3	12.4 ± 1.8	5.8 ± 0.9	2.6 ± 0.3 *	0.20 ± 0.02 *	10.5 ± 0.6 *
4	13.0 ± 2.3	5.7 ± 0.6	3.0 ± 0.5 *	0.19 ± 0.02 *	9.0 ± 0.5 *
5	15.6 ± 5.2	5.8 ± 1.0	2.7 ± 0.3 *	0.20 ± 0.02 *	11.3 ± 1.3 *
6	4.5 ± 2.0	7.7 ± 0.7	3.9 ± 0.7 *	0.27 ± 0.05 *	17.5 ± 7.5 *

WBC=white blood cell count; RBC=red blood cell count; HGB=haemoglobin; HCT=haematocrit, * $P<0.001$ (control group versus experimental groups). Control=no oesophagojejunostomy (3 animals with and 3 animals without acidified drinking water and N-nitrosomethylbenzylamine [NMBA]), group 1=oesophagojejunostomy, 2=oesophagojejunostomy+acidified drinking water, 3=oesophagojejunostomy+NMBA, 4=oesophagojejunostomy+acidified drinking water+NMBA, 5=oesophagojejunostomy+salicylic acid, 6=oesophagojejunostomy +mucosal stripping.

Histological changes

The oesophageal mucosa of control animals, including those that had received acidified water and NMBA, showed no abnormalities. The mucosal changes in the distal oesophagus of all experimental animals were confirmed histologically to be those of severe reflux oesophagitis. There was no difference in type or severity of histological signs of oesophagitis among the experimental groups (Table 5.3).

Columnar lining above the anastomosis in the H&E sections was found in 50% to 100% of the animals in each group, confined to a small area of 1 to 9 mm with

Table 5.3 Number of animals with histological changes after the various regimens.

Groups (n)	hyper-keratosis	squamous hyperplasia	erosion	BO	dysplasia	papilloma	carcinoma
control (6)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1 (6)	6	6	6	5	6	0	0
2 (6)	6	5	5	4	5	0	0
3 (6)	6	6	6	6	6	3	5 (4 scc, 1 asc)
4 (5)	5	5	4	5	5	0	4 (3 scc, 1 asc)
5 (6)	6	6	5	6	5	0	0
6 (2)	1	1	1	1	1	0	0

BO=Barrett's oesophagus; scc=squamous cell carcinoma; asc=adenosquamous carcinoma. Groups: control=no oesophagojejunostomy (3 animals with and 3 animals without acidified drinking water and N-nitrosomethyl-benzylamine [NMBA]); 1=oesophagojejunostomy; 2=oesophagojejunostomy+acidified drinking water; 3=oesophagojejunostomy+NMBA; 4=oesophagojejunostomy+acidified drinking water+NMBA; 5=oesophagojejunostomy+salicylic acid; 6=oesophagojejunostomy+mucosal stripping.

a mean of 2 mm (Figure 5.2). The columnar epithelium showed intestinal metaplasia with PAS positive goblet cells but no dysplasia. In animals with duodenal reflux alone or combined with NMBA, 11 out of 12 animals showed columnar lining of the distal oesophagus, in animals with additionally acidified drinking water Barrett's oesophagus was noticed in 9 out of 11. In all animals with keratinolysis glandular epithelium was found. In animals with duodenal reflux and NMBA in four out of six animals, and in the group with reflux, NMBA and acidified water in three out of five animals a squamous cell carcinoma was found, histologically characterized by infiltrating, atypical, squamous epithelial cells (Figure 5.3).

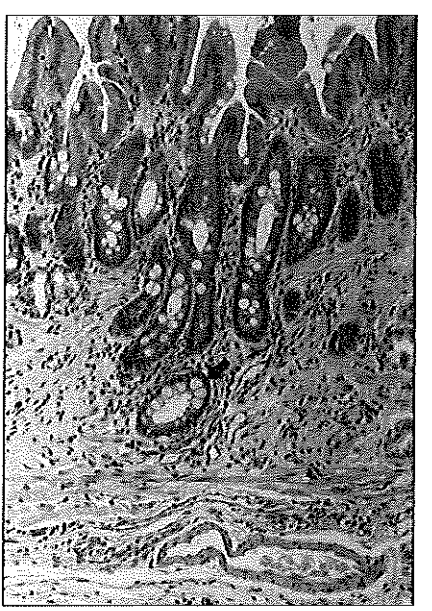


Figure 5.2 Distal rat oesophagus exposed to duodenal reflux during 18 weeks. The oesophagus was lined by columnar epithelium with intestinal metaplasia and characteristic goblet cells (arrow) cranial from the sutures of the oesophagojejunal anastomosis over a length of 1 to 9 mm (x40, H&E staining).

Additional stainings with anti-smooth muscle actin showed that some carcinomas penetrated the muscularis mucosae and invaded the submucosa. In both groups, one animal had developed adenosquamous carcinoma, with foci of mucous epithelial cells with abundant cytoplasma or atypical glandular formation, staining positively with alcian blue and PAS (Figure 5.4). No pure adenocarcinomas were found. In animals receiving NMBA without an oesophagojejunostomy no abnormalities, especially no carcinomas, were found.

Figure 5.3 Oesophageal squamous cell carcinoma histologically characterized by infiltrating, atypical, squamous epithelial cells after 18 weeks of duodeno-oesophageal reflux in combination with carcinogen (N-nitrosomethyl-benzylamine). The section stained negatively with PAS and alcian blue (x40, H&E staining).

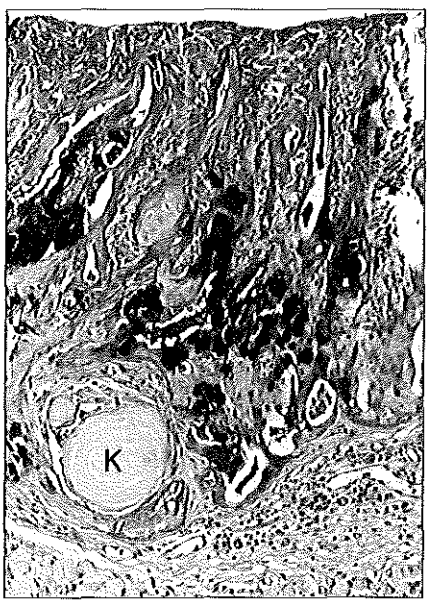


Figure 5.4 Adenosquamous carcinoma in a rat 18 weeks after an oesophagojejunostomy combined with N-nitrosomethylbenzylamine. Histology showed foci of keratinization (K) and foci of mucous epithelial cells (arrow) staining positively with PAS and alcian blue (x40, PAS staining).

DISCUSSION

From the present study it can be concluded that reflux of duodenal contents alone induces Barrett's oesophagus in rats. In combination with a carcinogen, duodeno-oesophageal reflux induces oesophageal carcinoma. Neither acidification of the drinking water, nor the administration of a carcinogen, a combination of both, keratinolysis or denudation hastened the induction of Barrett's oesophagus.

Great efforts have been made to define the pathogenetic stimulus of Barrett's oesophagus.[22] Usually, Barrett's oesophagus is found in patients who have a marked degree of acid gastro-oesophageal reflux, considerably exceeding that seen in controls or in patients with oesophagitis without columnar metaplasia. Therefore, acid reflux has long been thought to be the only pathogenetic factor.[2,23] Two studies in dogs and one in rats confirm a pathogenetic role for acid reflux.[15,17,18] In other animal studies reflux of gastric contents alone does not induce Barrett's oesophagus or even protects against the development of oesophageal adenocarcinoma.[7,8,10,13,16] In the present study administering acidified water had no effect on the epithelium in the control group and no influence on the induction of Barrett's oesophagus by duodenal reflux and no co-carcinogenic effect on the development of oesophageal carcinoma by NMBA and duodenal reflux.

The results of animal studies, the fact that oesophagitis is seen in patients who have undergone total gastrectomy and in those with achlorhydria, and the observation that the increase of oesophageal adenocarcinoma parallels the introduction of H-2 blockers and proton pump inhibitors has led to the concept of alkaline (bile) duodenal reflux as causal factor of Barrett's oesophagus.[24-26] In man, this hypothesis has been evaluated in several studies. An analysis of frequency and duration of reflux and reflux material in patients with Barrett's oesophagus, gastro-oesophageal reflux disease without Barrett's oesophagus, and controls shows conflicting results, partly due to inaccurate detection methods.[24,27] The results of studies that employ oesophageal pH monitoring to investigate duodenogastro-oesophageal reflux should be interpreted with caution as the presence and amount of duodenal juice and the pH of the refluxate is not clearly correlated.[24] Studies that determine bile acids, trypsin or bilirubine in the oesophagus or in aspirated refluxate probably give more reliable information on duodenal reflux. Three studies have reported that bile acid concentrations are probably not toxic, or did not find a difference in quantity of bile reflux between patients with Barrett's oesophagus and reflux patients without Barrett's oesophagus or between patients with Barrett's oesophagus and controls.[28-30] Others, however, have reported increased bile reflux in the oesophagus in patients with Barrett's oesophagus compared to controls or oesophagitis patients without Barrett's oesophagus.[31-36] Additionally, in three studies a greater bile reflux was detected in patients with complicated Barrett's oesophagus compared to subjects with non-complicated Barrett's oesophagus.[27,33,37] From the results of the present study it appears that reflux of duodenal contents alone induces Barrett's oesophagus and exerts a co-carcinogenic effect on the rats oesophagus. The presence of duodenal refluxate (bile and/or pancreas) was crucial as NMBA alone did not cause any oesophageal lesions.

Only one animal study has investigated the influence of biliary and pancreatic reflux on the induction of oesophageal carcinoma.[38] In combination with the

administration of a carcinogen, pancreatic or pancreatic and biliary reflux induced carcinoma of the oesophagus in 13% and 33% of rats, while the carcinogen in combination with bile reflux alone did not induce carcinomas. It was concluded that pancreatic secretions are crucial in inducing oesophageal carcinoma and that biliary reflux appears to exert a co-carcinogenic effect.[38] Furthermore, it has been suggested that the depth of mucosal injury determines either squamous or columnar re-epithelialization.[39] Deep injury, including damage to both surface mucosa and gland ducts, will be repaired by columnar epithelium alone. This deep injury can be caused by enzymes with proteo- and lipolytic activity like gastric and pancreatic lipase. In the present study neither superficial injury (keratolysis) nor deep injury (denudation) hastened the induction of Barrett's oesophagus. Furthermore, it appeared that one week of duodenal reflux alone already induced deep injury to the oesophageal mucosa. Histology at that time point showed erosion, ulceration and inflammation with cellular infiltration and vasodilatation.

In conclusion, an oesophagojejunostomy in rats provides a unique, reproducible model for the induction of Barrett's oesophagus. The presented animal model can be used to investigate the possibilities of photodynamic therapy (PDT) for Barrett's oesophagus by studying the pharmacokinetics of the photosensitizer, find optimal treatment parameters and evaluate the short- and long-term effects of PDT for Barrett's oesophagus.[40] Furthermore, it gives us the opportunity to investigate whether PDT-treated Barrett's oesophagus regenerates with squamous epithelium when there still is duodeno-oesophageal reflux. In other words: must PDT treatment be followed or even preceded by antireflux surgery? For this, rats with reflux-induced Barrett's oesophagus as described in the present study will have to undergo oesophageal PDT with or without previous Roux-en-Y procedure to discontinue duodeno-oesophageal reflux.

REFERENCES

1. Cameron AJ, Ott BJ, Payne WS. The incidence of adenocarcinoma in columnar-lined (Barrett's) esophagus. N Engl J Med 1985;313:857-859.
2. Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Siersema PD, De Bruin RWF, Tilanus HW. Barrett's oesophagus: pathophysiology, diagnosis and management. Scand J Gastroenterol 1998;33:449-453.
3. Sampliner RE, Garewal HS, Fennerty MB, Aickin M. Lack of impact on extent of Barrett's esophagus in 67 patients. Dig Dis Sci 1990;35:93-96.
4. Sagar PM, Ackroyd R, Hosie KB, Patterson JE, Stoddard CJ, Kingsnorth AN. Regression and progression of Barrett's oesophagus after antireflux surgery. Br J Surg 1995;82:806-810.
5. Ortiz A, Martinez de Haro LF, Parilla P, Morales G, Molina J, Bermero J, Liron R, Aguilar J. Conservative treatment versus antireflux surgery in Barrett's oesophagus: Long-term results of a prospective study. Br J Surg 1996;83:274-278.
6. Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Siersema PD, De Bruin RWF, Tilanus HW. Endoscopic ablation therapy for Barrett's esophagus with high-grade dysplasia: a review. Am J Gastroenterol 1999;94:1153-1160.
7. Pera M, Bombi JA, Ernst H, Pera C, Mohr U. Influence of esophagojejunostomy on the induction of adenocarcinoma of the distal esophagus in Sprague-Dawley rats by subcutaneous injection of 2,6-dimethylnitrosomorpholine. Cancer Res 1989;49:6803-6808.
8. Attwood SEA, Smyrk TC, DeMeester TR, Mirvish SS, Stein HJ, Hinder RA. Duodenoesophageal reflux and the development of esophageal adenocarcinoma in rats. Surgery 1992;111:503-510.
9. Mirvish SS, Huang Q, Chen SC, Birt DF, Clark GW, Hinder RA, Smyrk TC, DeMeester TR. Metabolism of carcinogenic nitrosamines in the rat and human esophagus and induction of esophageal adenocarcinoma in rats. Endoscopy 1993;25:627-631.
10. Clark GWB, Smyrk TC, Mirvish SS, Anselmino M, Yamashita Y, Hinder RA, DeMeester TR, Birt DF. Effect of gastroduodenal juice and dietary fat on the development of Barrett's esophagus and esophageal neoplasma: an experimental rat model. Ann Surg Oncol 1994;1:252-261.
11. Siglin JC, Khare L, Stoner GD. Evaluation of dose and treatment duration on the esophageal tumorigenicity of *N*-nitrosomethylbenzylamine in rats. Carcinogenesis 1995;16:259-265.
12. Miwa K, Segawa M, Takano Y, Matsumoto H, Sahara H, Yagi M, Miyazaki I, Hattori T. Induction of oesophageal and forestomach carcinomas in rats by reflux of duodenal contents. Br J Cancer 1994;70:185-189.
13. Miwa K, Sahara H, Segawa M, Kinami S, Sato T, Miyazaki I, Hattori T. Reflux of duodenal or gastro-duodenal contents induces esophageal carcinoma in rats. Int J Cancer 1996;67:269-274.
14. Goldstein SR, Yang G, Curtis SK, Reuhl KL, Liu BC, Mirvish SS, Newmark HL, Yang CS. Development of esophageal metaplasia and adenocarcinoma in a rat surgical model without the use of a carcinogen. Carcinogenesis 1997;18:2265-2270.
15. Seto Y, Kobori O. Role of reflux oesophagitis and acid in the development of columnar epithelium in the rat oesophagus. Br J Surg 1993;80:467-470.
16. Ireland AP, Peters JH, Smyrk TC, DeMeester TR, Clark GW, Mirvish SS, Adrian TE. Gastric juice protects against the development of esophageal adenocarcinoma in the rat. Ann Surg 1996;3:358-371.
17. Bremner CG, Lynch VP, Ellis FH. Barrett's esophagus: congenital or acquired? An experimental study of esophageal mucosal regeneration in the dog. Surgery 1970;68:209-216.
18. Gillen P, Keeling P, Byrne PJ, West AB, Hennessy TPJ. Experimental columnar metaplasia

in the canine oesophagus. Br J Surg 1988;75:113-115.
19. Levrat M, Lambert R, Kirshbaum G. Esophagitis produced by reflux of duodenal contents in rats. Am J Dig Dis 1962;7:564-573.
20. Santini A, Morsiani E, Baccarini M. Jejunal transposition after total or partial gastrectomy - an experimental model in the rat. In: Handbook of microsurgery, Volume II. Olszewski WL (ed). CRC press, Inc. Boca Raton, Florida 1984:437-451.
21. Ridell RH. The biopsy diagnosis of gastroesophageal reflux disease, "carditis", and Barrett's esophagus, and sequelea of therapy. Am J Surg Pathol 1996;20:S31-S51.
22. Blot WJ, Devesa SS, Kneller RW, Fraumeni JF. Rising incidence of adenocarcinoma of the esophagus and gastric cardia. JAMA 1991;265:1287-1289.
23. Spechler SJ, Goyal RK. Barrett's esophagus. N Engl J Med 1986;315:362-371.
24. Marshall REK, Anggiansah A, Owen WJ. Bile in the oesophagus: clinical relevance and ambulatory detection. Br J Surg 1997;84:21-28.
25. Helsingen N. Oesophagitis following total gastrectomy. Acta Chirurgica Scandinavica 1959;118:190-201.
26. Orlanda RC, Bozymski EM. Heartburn in pernicious anemia - a consequence of bile reflux. N Engl J Med 1973;289:522-523.
27. Vaezi MF, Singh S, Richter JE. Role of acid and duodenogastric reflux in esophageal mucosal injury: a review of animal and human studies. Gastroenterology 1995;108:1897-1907.
28. Gotley DC, Morgan AP, Ball D, Owen RW, Cooper MJ. Composition of gastro-oesophageal refluxate. Gut 1991;32:1093-1099.
29. Li V, Bost R, Caravel JP, Fournet J, Holstein J. Barrett's esophagus, gastroesophageal acid reflux and duodenogastric reflux during the digestive and prostprandial period. Gastroenterol Clin Biol 1992;16:978-983.
30. Champion G, Richter JE, Vaezi MF, Singh S, Alexander R. Duodenogastroesophageal reflux: relationship to pH and importance in Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1994;107:747-754.
31. Warning JP, Legrand J, Chinchian A, Sanowski RA. Duodenogastric reflux in patients with Barrett's esophagus. Dig Dis Sci 1990;35:759-762.
32. Iftikhar SY, Ledingham S, Steele RJ, Evans DF, Lendrum K, Atkinson M, Hardcastle JD. Bile reflux in columnar-lined oesophagus. Ann R Coll Surg Engl 1993;75:411-416.
33. Stein HJ, Feussner H, Kauer W, DeMeester TR, Siewert JR. Alkaline gastroesophageal reflux: assessment by ambulatory esophageal aspiration and pH monitoring. Am J Surg 1994;167:163-168.
34. Caldwell MT, Lawlor P, Byrne PJ, Walsh TN, Hennessy TP. Ambulatory oesophageal bile reflux monitoring in Barrett's oesophagus. Br J Surg 1995;82:657-660.
35. Kauer WK, Peters JH, DeMeester TR, Ireland AP, Bremner CG, Hagen JA. Mixed reflux of gastric and duodenal juices is more harmful to the esophagus than gastric juice alone. Ann Surg 1995;222;525-531.
36. Nehra D, Howell P, Pye JK, Beynon J. Assessment of combined bile acid and pH profiles using an automatic sampling device in gastro-oesophageal reflux disease. Br J Surg 1998;85:134-137.
37. Gillen P, Keeling P, Byrne PJ, Healy M, O'Moore RR, Hennessy TP. Implications of duodenogastric reflux in the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus. Br J Surg 1988;75:540-543.
38. Pera M, Trastek VF, Carpenter HA, Fernandez PL, Cardesa A, Mohr U, Pairolerio PC. Influence of pancreatic and biliary reflux on the development of esophageal adenocarcinoma. Ann Thorac Surg 1993;55:1386-1393.
39. Li H, Walsh TN, O'Dowd G, Gillen P, Byrne PJ, Hennessy TP. Mechanism of columnar

metaplasia and squamous regeneration in experimental Barrett's esophagus. Surgery 1994;115:176-181.

40. Van den Boogert J, Houtsmuller AB, De Rooij FWM, De Bruin RWF, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Kinetics, localization, and mechanism of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrin accumulation in normal and Barrett's-like rat esophagus. Lasers Surg Med 1999;24:3-13.

Chapter 6

Gastric Perforation in Rats after Oesophagojejunostomy

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.* *Laboratory Animal Science* 1999;38:49-52.

INTRODUCTION

Barrett's oesophagus is a premalignant lesion of the oesophagus defined as the presence of columnar epithelium with intestinal metaplasia in the oesophagus, probably caused by longstanding (duodeno)gastro-oesophageal reflux (Chapter 1). To study the development of Barrett's oesophagus in rats, animal models were used to induce duodeno-oesophageal reflux. Chapters 4 and 5 describe such models. Before these animal models could be applied a small number of pilot studies has been carried out. In one of these studies many animals became ill and some died. This chapter describes this particular pilot study and discusses the encountered problem. The experimental protocol was approved by "The Committee on Animal Research" of the Erasmus University Rotterdam. Forty inbred male WAG/Rij rats (Harlan CPB, Austerlitz, The Netherlands), weighing approximately 225 grams, were studied. Animals were bred under specific-pathogen-free conditions and were kept under conventional conditions from 8 weeks after birth. The animals were kept two in a cage on wooden bedding in a climate-controlled room (12 hours light/dark cycle) and had libitum access to rat chow (AM II, Hope Farms, Woerden, The Netherlands) and tap water. All animal handling was carried out by experienced biotechnicians according to the latest developments in husbandry, nutrition and animal housing. Before use, the animals acclimated for at least one week. In all experiments anaesthesia was maintained throughout the operative procedure by placing a glass beaker containing cotton-wool soaked in ether over their nostrils. All animals underwent an oesophagojejunostomy with gastric preservation according to the Levrat model, which induced jejuno-oesophageal reflux.[1] Median laparotomy was performed, the oesophagus was dissected 2 mm above its entry in the stomach, the stomach was closed and the oesophagus was anastomosed end-to-side (7/0 silk, B Braun, Melsungen, Germany) to the jejunum, approximately 5 cm distal to where the transverse colon crosses the small intestine. The abdomen was closed in one layer (2/0 silk, B Braun, Melsungen, Germany). After surgery, rats received 2 ml of glucose 10% subcutaneously and water ad libitum. Chow was provided after 24 h. Despite some weight loss, the first 4 weeks after surgery, rats did well. From day 26 until day 39 after surgery, many rats became ill and, if untreated, died within 2 days.

PATHOLOGIC FEATURES

Necroscopy was performed on the diseased animals, at which the cause of death was clearly evident: gastric perforation on the greater curvature, followed by peritonitis (Figure 6.1).

Gastrectomy was performed in the remaining animals; some, however, already suffered from gastric perforation and peritonitis and had to be euthanised.

The site of perforation in the presented animals was sharply limited to the squamous epithelium at the region of transition, where the forestomach joins the glandular epithelium, and was located exclusively on the great curvature. Macroscopically, the stomach further did not contain any gross abnormalities. Besides oesophagitis, other lesions could not be observed. In animals in which the stomach had not been perforated, the stomach was filled with a clear yellowish fluid but was not abnormally distended. Gastric content was analysed for the presence of bacteria, and the pH was measured. Besides *Escherichia coli* in some animals, other bacteria could not be isolated by culture. The pH of the liquid gastric content ranged from 4.5 to 7.0. The stomach was excised, opened and fixed in formalin.

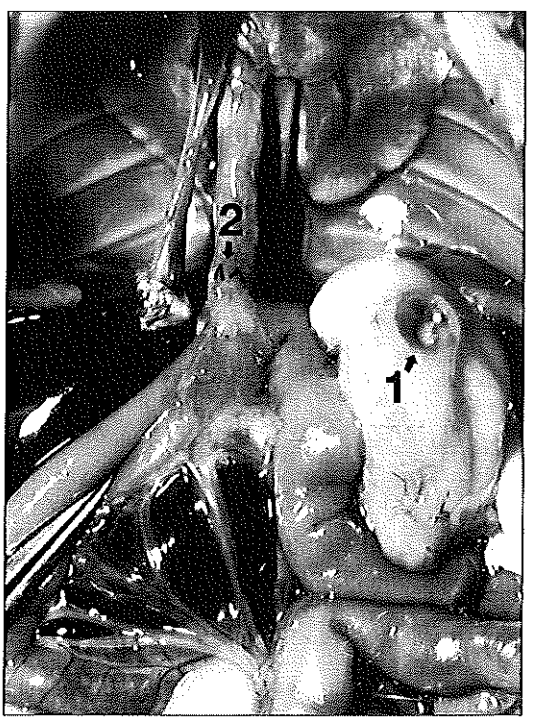


Figure 6.1 Photograph of the open rat abdomen. Arrow 1 points to the gastric perforation in the forestomach next to its junction with the glandular mucosa, central at the great curvature. Arrow 2 indicates the site of the oesophagojejunal anastomosis, 5 weeks after end-to-side oesophagojejunostomy.

Sections were stained with haematoxylin and eosin (H&E), periodic acid-Schiff, Alcian blue, Gram, Giemsa (modified for *Helicobacter* sp.) and Grocott stains. Macroscopically, changes in the glandular mucosa were not observed, the forestomach contained hyperplastic lesions, and ulceration was apparent on the greater curvature.

Histological examination of the distal half of the stomach revealed no abnormalities (Figure 6.2). Microscopically, the proximal half of the stomach had hyperkeratosis, hyperplasia of the squamous epithelium, papillomas, inflammatory reaction, haemorrhage, and ulceration (Figures 6.2 and 6.3).

In the basal cell layer of the squamous epithelium, the cell nuclei were prominent but not hyperchromatic; beneath the muscularis mucosae, the connective

tissue was frequently oedematous and contained leucocytes (especially eosinophils). Bacteria or fungi could not be identified on the gastric surface or in the gastric wall.

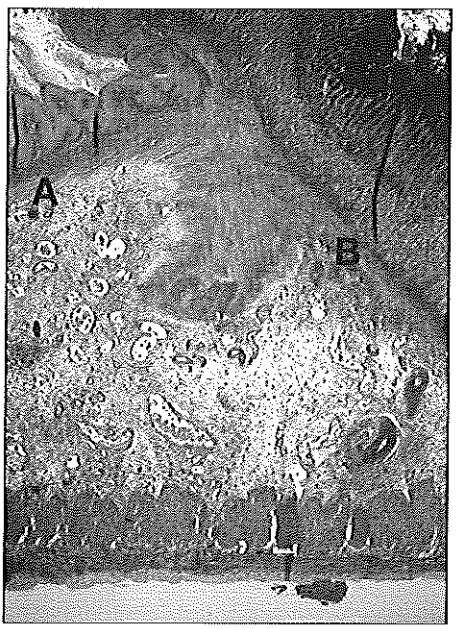


Figure 6.2 Photomicrograph of a section of the squamo-columnar junction of the rat stomach 5 weeks after oesophagojejunostomy. The forestomach (A) is lined by squamous epithelium, and the glandular stomach (B) is lined by columnar epithelium. Hyperplasia, inflammation, and ulceration were found in the forestomach. The glandular stomach did not contain any abnormalities (x10, H&E stain).

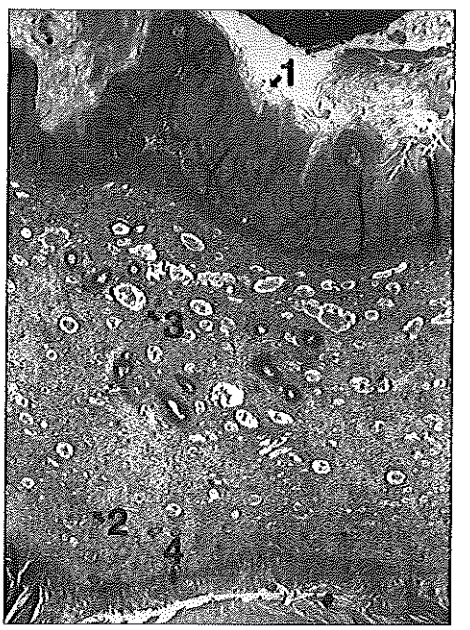


Figure 6.3 Photomicrograph of a section near the site of perforation in the forestomach, showing hyperkeratosis, and hyperplasia of the squamous epithelium (arrow 1), oedema and inflammation mainly consisting of eosinophylic granulocytes (arrow 2), haemorrhage (arrow 3), and necrosis of the muscularis propria (arrow 4). Bacteria or fungi could not be identified (x40, H&E stain).

QUESTION

What are the various causes of gastric perforation in rats? Combining our findings, what is the most plausible cause in the presented rats?

DIAGNOSIS AND DISCUSSION

The differential diagnosis of the gastric ulcers described, includes spontaneously developing ulcers and iatrogenic ulcers.

Evaluation of laboratory mice and rats indicated that infections with

Helicobacter bilis and *H. muridarum* are widespread but that infections are usually subclinical.[2] However, under experimental circumstances (*e.g.*, ischemic stomach, pre-existing ulcer, mucosal disruption) *H. pylori* and *Gastrospirillum suis* have an ulcerogenic action.[3,4] In the aforementioned rats, the stomach was filled with an odourless clear fluid and, if present, peritonitis had the aspect of a sterile infection. Bacteriologic and histologic examinations confirmed this observation. Besides some non-pathogenic *E.coli*, other bacteria could not be isolated by culture and spiral bacterial organisms were not found on H&E, Gram, or modified Giemsa staining. Furthermore, *Helicobacter* and *Gastrospirillum* infections cause inflammation of the glandular stomach. In rats, the proximal half of the stomach, called the forestomach or non-glandular portion, is lined by stratified epithelium continuous with that lining the oesophagus; along its distal edge it forms a ridge at the junction with the glandular stomach, which is divided, like the human stomach, into fundic and antral areas. Unlike *Helicobacter* sp., *Lactobacillus* and *Bacillus* spp. may adhere to keratinized epithelium of the forestomach.[5] In pigs mono-infected with these species and fed a carbohydrate-enriched liquid diet, ulcers of the forestomach developed.[5] In contrast, piglets fed the same diet and inoculated with *Gastrospirillum* sp. did not develop forestomach ulcers. In the study reported here, no *Lactobacillus* or *Bacillus* (both Gram-positive) species could be identified by use of Gram staining.

The striking finding of the present work was limitation of the gastric perforations to the squamous epithelium and, in particular, the involvement of the epithelial fold immediately adjacent to the glandular stomach. To our knowledge, only one other report of the course of *Candida albicans* colonization and infection of the alimentary tract of rats treated with antibiotics described lesions limited to this precise location.[6] The authors suggest that localization of infection at the squamo-columnar junction may conceivably be related to the susceptibility of cornified epithelium in general, increased thickness of the cornified epithelium at this point, or interruption of the smooth mucosal contour with pooling of juices that contain neutral cardiac gland secretions. In the present study, Grocott staining did not reveal fungal invasion.

Experimentally induced gastric ulcers may be grouped under several general headings: resulting from a deficient blood supply to the gastric mucosa; caused by the action of bacteria; resulting from the action of toxic agents; caused by the action of digestive juices, and resulting from trophic and glandular disturbances.[7]

Deficient blood supply could be the result of surgery, because the oesophagus had to be dissected from the stomach; care, however, was taken not to damage the left gastric artery. Careful histologic examination did not reveal any signs of

ischaemia (*e.g.* thrombi, loss of epithelial cells on top of the mucosa). The long interval between surgery and gastric perforation does also not favour an ischaemic cause.

Also, perforation could be the result of infection, especially in rats after oesophagojejunostomy in which the stomach is transformed into a blind loop that predisposes the animal to bacterial overgrowth. Additionally, the antibacterial action of the normally low pH in the stomach was undone by the procedure because dissection of the vagus nerves led to inhibition of acid secretion. This resulted in high intraluminal pH of 4.5 to 7.0, whereas normal pH in rats that did not undergo surgery was significantly lower, between 1.5 and 2.5 ($P<0.01$). A pH >4 is no longer bactericidal. Although in man, *Helicobacter pylori* often is involved in gastric ulceration, as stated above *Helicobacter* sp. were not detected in the animals of this study.

In humans, the second most common cause of gastric ulceration is the use of drugs, more specifically, the use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. In rats, acetylsalicylic acid, indomethacin, and ethanol are often used to induce gastric ulceration. In the rats of the present study drugs were not used.

In addition, action of digestive juices could lead to gastric ulceration. The damaging effects of bile on the stomach are widely discussed, but little understood. Moreover, results of animal studies are not unanimous. Implantation of the lower or upper bile duct into the glandular part of the stomach (influx of bile with or without pancreatic juice) induced gastric erosions and ulcers in the glandular part of the stomach.[8] Combination of these procedures with total vagotomy did not increase the incidence of gastric lesions.[9] Others reported forestomach lesions and non-glandular carcinoma after duodenogastric reflux, resembling those found in the oesophagus after longstanding duodeno- or jejuno-oesophageal reflux.[10] In the present study no duodenogastric reflux inducing procedure was performed. Due to vagotomy and possibly some additional jejunal reflux, pH of the gastric content was significantly higher than that in control rats.

Finally, trophic and glandular disturbances could lead to ulceration and eventually perforation. After total bilateral vagotomy in rats, gastric secretory and motor functions were severely impaired, leading to a state of fixed complete closure of the cardia and contraction of the pylorus.[11] Within several days after total vagotomy, many animals died with a distended stomach containing large masses of food that were also present in the oesophagus and oral cavity. In contrast, other studies could not find any lesions of the rat stomach after vagotomy.[8] Vagal stimulation induces high gastric glandular ulcer incidence in rats.[12] Stress ulcers, principally located in the glandular stomach, can be formed in rats by immobilization, cold, or water restraint stress.[13] The presence of luminal acid and ischaemia, probably caused by vagal-mediated increased gastric motility, are

necessary for the induction of stress ulcer. Another "stress" ulcer may be induced by use of a Shay procedure (ligation of the pylorus when the stomach is empty).[14] After 7 to 8 h, non-glandular ulcers are formed due to high intraluminal pressure, which led to local circulatory disturbance. Ligation for a longer period resulted in gastric perforation. A certain degree of acidity ($pH < 1.5$) was indispensable for ulcer formation because ligation in combination with vagotomy did not cause ulcers, although the same high intraluminal pressure was reached. Absence of additional stressors and performed dissection of the vagus nerves make a stress ulcer in the presented rats unlikely.

Although other studies in which an oesophagojejunostomy with gastric preservation was performed according to the Levrat model did not describe gastric perforation, Dr. Levrat himself found that, in all his animals (sacrificed at day 30 after oesophagojejunostomy), hyperplastic and ulcerative lesions of the forestomach developed and resembled those found in the oesophagus.[1] In their book, Lambert and Levrat describe a perforated ulcer in the by-passed forestomach on the greater curvature in 10 of 91 rats after oesophagojejunostomy.[15] They hypothesized that acid secretion was responsible for this action.[1] They further pointed out that the gastric consequences of withdrawal of food are particularly strange. When fasting is total, after 6 to 10 days, widespread lesions of the forestomach, including hyperplasia, ulceration and pseudo-papilloma formation, appear.[15,16] The glandular part of the stomach has only minimal lesions. Morris *et al.* investigated the effect of various dietary deficiencies in formation of gastric lesions in rats.[16] In a high percentage, lesions of the forestomach, leaving the glandular stomach more or less undamaged, were observed. Fasting and partial inanition were found to be very effective and more important in inducing papillomas of the forestomach than was the individual deficiency of protein, carbohydrate, or fat. The presence of small amounts of food and a high frequency of intermittent feeding prevented formation of non-glandular papillomas.

In conclusion, crucial in the present study might have been withdrawal of food away from the bypassed stomach. The pathogenesis remains unclear, but gastric acid was not the causal factor. Besides anacidity, vagotomy leads to a motor-impaired stomach unable to evacuate its alkaline contents (neutral cardiac gland secretions with probably some refluxed jejunal contents) leading to pooling at the junction between non-glandular and glandular stomach. The most important lesson from the present observation is that the gastric consequences of withdrawal of food should never be forgotten when experiments (for example on the ulcer-inducing or anti-ulcer effect of agents) are carried out on the rat stomach.

REFERENCES

1. Levrat M, Lambert R, Kirshbaum G. Esophagitis produced by reflux of duodenal contents in rats. Am J Dig Dis 1962;7:564-573.
2. Riley LK, Franklin CL, Hook RR, Besch-Willifird C. Identification of murine Helicobacters by PCR and restriction enzyme analyses. J Clin Immunol 1996;34:942-946.
3. Ross JS, Bui HX, Del Rosario A, Sonbati H, George M, Lee CY. Helicobacter pylori: its role in the pathogenesis of peptic ulcer disease in a new animal model. Am J Pathol 1992;141:721-727.
4. Mendes EN, Queiroz DMM, Coimbra RS, Moura SR, Barbosa AJA, Rocha GA. Experimental infection of Wistar rats with Gastrospirillum suis. J Med Microbiol 1996;44:105-109.
5. Krakowka S, Eaton KA, Rings DM, Argenzio RA. Production of gastroesophageal erosions and ulcers (GEU) in gnotobiotic swine monoinfected with fermentative commensal bacteria and fed high-carbohydrate diet. Vet Pathol 1998;35:274-282.
6. McCann JC. Experimental peptic ulcer. Arch Surg 1929;19:600-659.
7. DeMaria A, Buckley H, Von Lichtenberg F. Gastrointestinal candidiasis in rats treated with antibiotics, cortisone, and azathioprine. Infect Immun 1976;13:1761-1770.
8. Kirk RM. Experimental gastric ulcers in the rat: separate and combined effects of vagotomy and bile-duct implantation into the stomach. Br J Surg 1970;57:521-524.
9. Kamanishi M, Oohara T, Chiu MC, Aoki F, Yamaguchi H, Shimoyama S. Severe gastric mucosal changes following vagotomy with duodenogastric reflux. J Clin Gastroenterol 1992;4 (suppl 1):S15-S21.
10. Miwa K, Segawa M, Takano Y, Matsumoto H, Sahara H, Yagi M, Miyazaki I, Hattori T. Induction of oesophageal and forestomach carcinomas in rats by reflux of duodenal contents. Br J Cancer 1994;70:185-189.
11. Shay H, Komarov SA, Gruenstein M. Effects of vagotomy in the rat. Arch Surg 1947;59:210-226.
12. Cho CH, Ogle CW, Dai S. Acute gastric ulcer formation in response to electrical vagal stimulation in rats. Eur J Pharmacol 1976;35:215-219.
13. Nakagawa K, Okada A, Kawashima Y. Acute gastric mucosal lesions - a new experimental model and effect of parenteral nutrition. J Parenter Enter Nutr 1985;9:571-582.
14. Larmi TKI. Pathogenesis and healing of experimental ulcer in Shay rats. Bull Soc Int Chirurgie 1972;3:158-168.
15. Lambert R, Julien B, Nyhus LM. 1965. Part VI and VII. In: Lambert R, Julien B, Nyhus LM (eds). Surgery of the digestive system in the rat. C. C. Thomas Publisher, Springfield, Illnois, USA:211-385.
16. Morris HP, Lippincott SW. Production of gastric lesions in rats by fasting, partial inanition, and deficiency of certain dietary constituents. J Nat Cancer Inst 1941-42;2:459-477.

Part III

Pharmacokinetics of 5-Aminolevulinic Acid

CHAPTER 7

PHARMACOKINETICS OF 5-AMINOLEVULINIC ACID-INDUCED PORPHYRIN PRODUCTION IN RATS

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.*
Journal of Photochemistry and Photobiology B Biology 1998;44:29-38.

INTRODUCTION

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) has developed during the past two decades into a treatment modality for several types of malignancies. PDT usually involves systemic administration of a photosensitizer to accumulate in the tumour. Subsequent illumination with light of a specific wavelength, absorbed by the photosensitizer, results in a photochemical reaction that destroys the tumour (Chapter 3). The photosensitizer at present most often used is porfimer sodium (Photofrin®), a mixture of various porphyrins. Prolonged cutaneous photosensitization to sunlight for at least four to six weeks is the major side effect of Photofrin®-based PDT.[1] In addition, depending on tumour type and anatomical location, Photofrin® has poor tumour selectivity.[2] In recent years, 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) has been advocated as a photosensitizing agent.[3] ALA induces endogenous production of porphyrins. ALA is a naturally occurring intermediary in the haem biosynthetic pathway, which is metabolized at tissue level to the photo-active compound, protoporphyrin IX (PpIX) (Chapter 3). In most tissues the formation of ALA is rate limiting in the synthesis of PpIX and haem and ALA formation is regulated via a feedback control mechanism dependent on the concentration of free haem.[4] Exogenous ALA bypasses both the rate-limiting step and the feedback control, thereby inducing intracellular accumulation of PpIX.[5] ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation is found more tumour selective than Photofrin® with skin photosensitivity for less than 24 hours.

The pharmacokinetics of ALA are poorly understood.[6] It has been suggested that several mechanisms result in ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation in tissue: (1) intracellular PpIX synthesis as documented in *in vitro* studies; (2) uptake of PpIX produced in the liver after either absorption in the gastrointestinal tract, or direct entrance into the systemic circulation; and (3) uptake of PpIX from production elsewhere. There is some evidence for an enterohepatic circulation of PpIX in humans.[7] Other studies have shown that a large proportion of ALA is excreted unchanged in the urine and faeces within a few hours after administration and is metabolized, as can be concluded from labelling studies including the detection of labelled CO_2, in breath.[8] ALA is poorly, if at all, reabsorbed by the tubules of the kidney and is eliminated by renal filtration only.[8]

Previous studies show that ALA-induced PpIX accumulation occurs primarily in (pre)malignant tissues, tissues that line surfaces (for example, mucosa) or glands with ducts that drain onto such surfaces (for example, sebaceous glands, salivary glands).[9-12] However, major tissues of mesodermal origin (muscle, connective tissue, cartilage) do not accumulate PpIX *in vivo*. Different results are reported from *in vitro* studies: ALA administration to fibroblasts and macrophages may lead to substantial accumulation of porphyrins.[13]

Before ALA can be used routinely for PDT, it is necessary to study the pharmacokinetics of ALA after various routes of administration.[11,14] This could lead to more efficient treatment regimens with optimal timing of illumination and fewer side effects. In a rat model we therefore analysed the ALA and porphyrin concentrations in various organs after either oral or intravenous administration of ALA. Porphyrin localization within tissues was determined using laser scanning microscopy. Liver and renal function tests were performed to determine toxicity. From analysis of the sequence of events that take place after ALA administration, we investigated whether, in addition to *in situ* PpIX synthesis, an enterohepatic circulation contributes to PpIX accumulation and whether there is storage of the prodrug ALA in relation to the re-appearance of fluorescence found after bleaching. Maximum and total ALA concentration were analysed for their predictive value of selective porphyrin accumulation.

Materials and Methods

Animals

Forty-eight male WAG/Rij rats (Harlan CPB, Austerlitz, The Netherlands), weighing approximately 200 grams each were used. ALA was obtained from Sigma Chemical Company (Zwijndrecht, The Netherlands) and had a purity of 98%. 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA was dissolved in phosphate-buffered saline (pH 7.0). The solution was used immediately, either by intravenous injection (i.v.) into the penis vein under ether anaesthesia (21 rats) or by oral gavage (p.o.) without anaesthesia (21 rats). The rats were placed in a metabolic cage in the dark. At each time point (1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12 or 24 h after administration of ALA) three rats in both groups were killed by aortic punction under ether anaesthesia in subdued light. Six rats served as a control group; they received phosphate-buffered saline either i.v. under ether anaesthesia (n=3) or p.o. (n=3) and were sacrificed as mentioned above after 4 h. Blood was centrifugated at 4°C; erythrocytes and plasma were frozen separately at -80°C. Fifteen tissues were removed: bladder, 4 cm of the distal colon (cleaned with saline), heart, brain, 2 cm^2 shaven abdominal skin, 6 cm jejunum just distal to the ligament of Treitz (cleaned with saline), two liver lobes, left lung, disc of the middle part of the stomach (cleaned with saline), spleen, left kidney, oesophagus, 1 cm^2 abdominal wall muscle, intra-abdominal fat, and right and left ischiatic nerve. The tissues were immediately put on ice, kept in the dark and frozen at -80°C as soon as possible. Urine and duodenal aspirates were also stored at -80°C. Additionally, from three control rats and the rats sacrificed at 3 h after oral ALA administration, a small piece of every tissue was snap frozen and stored at -80°C for fluorescence microscopy.

Materials

The following reagents were purchased from Porphyrin Products, Logan, Utah, USA: PpIX, disodium salt and zinc PpIX. Tris HCl was purchased from Boehringer Mannheim (Mannheim, Germany); other chemicals were purchased from Merck, (Darmstadt, Germany).

Liver enzymes and renal function tests

Serum levels of alanine aminotransferase (ALAT) and aspartase aminotransferase (ASAT) were determined photometrically in 50 μl serum using routine methods based on the reference method of the International Federation of Clinical Chemistry (Granutest 25, Merck, Darmstadt, Germany).[15] Urea and creatinine were determined using standard laboratory equipment. Urea was determined using the GIDH method, and creatinine using the Jaffé method without proteination (multi-test analyser systems, Merck, Darmstadt, Germany).[16]

Measurement of protein content

Protein in tissues was measured according to Lowry *et al.*[17] Tissues were thawed, cut into small pieces, suspended in sterile water (1:10 wt./vol.) and homogenized in a tissue grinder. To 20 μl of this homogenate 1.0 ml alkaline copper-citrate reagent was added. After 10 min Folin reagent was added, and minimally 1 h thereafter extinction was measured spectrophotometrically (Shimadzu UV-1202, s'Hertogenbosch, The Netherlands) at 725 nm.

Determination of ALA and porphobolinogen in plasma and tissue

ALA was extracted from plasma and tissue samples with a mixture of dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and methanol (MeOH) (30:70 vol./vol.). Tissue homogenates were prepared at 4°C in subdued light by homogenizing rat tissue at 10-20% wt./vol. water using a Potter Elvehjem homogenizer. 120 μl homogenized tissue or plasma was then mixed with 480 μl DMSO/MeOH, and centrifugated for 4 min at 16000*g*. The supernatant was diluted three times with NaCl (150 mmol l^{-1}) and was then used for enzymatic ALA detection. The ALA concentration in supernatant from tissue homogenates or plasma was quantified using a fluorimetric enzyme assay. The assay is based on the conversion of ALA into uroporphyrinogen I using an enzyme mixture of aminolevulinic acid dehydratase and porphobilinogen deaminase prepared from human red blood cells in part according to a procedure described by De Rooij *et al.*[18] 200 μl ALA standard solution (0.12 nmol ml^{-1}), plasma or diluted tissue homogenate was mixed with 50 μl of the enzyme mixture (150 units porphobilinogen deaminase, 1000 units aminolevulinic acid dehydratase, 1 unit = 1 pmol uroporphyrinogen I per hour/37°C) in TrisHCl buffer (0.25 mol l^{-1}; pH 8.0, dithiothreitol 2.5 mmol l^{-1} and $MgCl_2$ 20 mmol l^{-1}) or with 50 μl of

TrisHCl buffer for blank detection. The samples were incubated over night (16 h) at 37°C and the reaction was stopped by addition of 750 μl stop buffer (one part TrisHCl (50 mmol l^{-1}) and two parts trichloroacetic acid (1.5 mol l^{-1}). Then subsequently the samples were placed on an ultraviolet light source (350 nm Woods light) to convert porphyrinogens into porphyrins and centrifugated for 30 min at 1500*g*. The porphyrin concentration in the supernatant was determined in a Perkin Elmer fluorimeter (LS 5B) using a red-sensitive photomultiplier. The ALA standard line was used to calculate the original ALA concentration in tissue concentration (nmol per mg protein).

Determination of ALA, porphobilinogen and porphyrins in urine

Porphobilinogen and ALA were separated from urine by ion-exchange chromatography using a column and procedure according to the instructions of the manufacturer (BioRad Laboratories, ALA Test Instruction Manual, 1967). This method is based on the procedure of Mauzrall and Granick.[19] In summary: first 0.5 ml of urine was loaded on a mixed-bed ion-exchange column. Interfering substances were then removed by washing the column (three times with 10 ml of water). ALA is then eluted by loading the column with 3.5 ml of sodium acetate and porphobilinogen is subsequently eluted by loading the column with 4 ml of acetic acid. Both the ALA fraction and the porphobilinogen fraction are then converted into a red compound by adding Ehrling's reagents. The product is then quantified using a spectrophotometer (553 nm). Porphyrins in urine were separated and quantified in a high-performance liquid-chromatography procedure according to Lim and coworkers using a reversed-phase column and a fluorescence detector (LC Analist system with LS40 detector, Perkin Elmer, Nieuwerkerk a/d IJssel, The Netherlands). This procedure results in complete separation of porphyrin isomers.[20]

Porphyrin analysis

The analysis was carried out according to Chisolm and Brown with the following modifications: the tissues were suspended in sterile water (1:10 wt./vol.) and homogenized in a tissue grinder.[21] To 100 μl of this homogenate the following were added: 700 μl HCL 2 mmol l^{-1}, and 800 μl ethyl-acetate/glacial acetic acid (3:1). After 10 min centrifugation at 1800*g* the ethyl-acetate phase with some protein is removed, and after a second centrifugation for 5 min at 1800*g*, the HCL phase is measured in a LS 5B fluorescence spectrometer using a red-sensitive photomultiplier (Perkin Elmer, Nieuwerkerk a/d IJssel, The Netherlands) at an excitation wavelength of 410 nm and an emission wavelength of 650 nm. Although porphyrins are commonly determined by emission at 601 nm, under the conditions described, PpIX has also a specific emission at 650 nm, which is about 80% of the emission at 601 nm and can be easily detected using a red-sensitive photomultiplier.

In our experience, bile acids in duodenal aspirates, and to a lesser extent other tissues, contain fluorophores with high emission at lower wavelength, which give rise to interference in porphyrin quantitation at 601 nm. Emission at 650 nm in a direct extraction assay as described above was found to be proportional to PpIX quantification, determined by a limited number of high-performance liquid-chromatography porphyrin separations. Porphyrin standards were analysed separately for their actual concentration using ultraviolet spectroscopy and the molar extinction coefficient (ϵ_{407} = 0.275 l mol^{-1} cm^{-1}). Recovery of porphyrins was checked by adding standard PpIX to the samples. A recovery between 90 and 100% was achieved.

Fluorescence microscopy

Tissue blocks were mounted on OCT medium (Tissue-Tek, Elkhart, USA), cut into sections of 10 μm thick (four sections per sample) using a cryostat microtome (Kryostat 1720, Leica, Rijswijk, The Netherlands) and stored at -80°C, only being allowed to thaw just prior to fluorescence microscopy. For the analysis of porphyrin localization a laser scanning microscope (Zeiss, Oberkochen, Germany) was used. Preparations were imaged using a helium/neon laser (633 nm) for fluorescence excitation. The emitted light was detected by a photomultiplier after passing a 665 nm long-pass filter. After fluorescence microscopy, sections were fixed in formalin and stained with haematoxylin and eosin for comparative histological analysis using conventional light-microscopy study.

Statistical analysis

The values of the liver enzymes and renal function tests are expressed as mean $\pm$ standard error of the mean (SEM). Statistical analysis of these tests was done with the Student's *t*-test. Peak ALA and porphyrin concentrations in tissues after oral and intravenous ALA administration were compared using the Student's *t*-test. Comparison of the total amount of porphyrins in tissues after oral and intravenous ALA administration was performed by an area under the curve analysis. *P* values less than 0.05 were considered significant. A linear regression model was used to analyse the relation in each tissue between maximum ALA concentration, total amount of ALA, maximum porphyrin concentration and total concentration of porphyrins.

RESULTS

All animals survived until sacrifice and none showed signs of discomfort.

Liver enzymes and renal function tests

The values of ALAT and ASAT of the i.v. control rats (4 h after phosphate-buffered saline administration) were higher than those of the p.o. control rats (114.6±23.2 versus 58.5±9.4 IU l^{-1} and 126.8±17.5 versus 83±10.2 IU l^{-1}) (Table 7.1).

Table 7.1 Liver enzymes and renal function tests after ALA administration.

Hours after	ALAT (IU l^{-1})		ASAT (IU l^{-1})		Creatinine (mmol ml^{-1})		Urea (μmol ml^{-1})	
ALA	po	iv	po	iv	po	iv	po	iv
0*	58.5±9.4	114.6±23.2	83.3±10.2	126.8±17.5	36.7±1.2	36.7±1.8	5.7±0.5	5.9±0.4
1	55.8±0.8	125.5±18.2	95.3±3.1	150.7±13.0	89.7±0.9	67.0±2.5	7.0±0.2	6.7±0.2
2	55.0±6.6	104.6±20.5	84.6±13.7	154.3±16.3	62.0±4.0	43.7±0.7	6.9±0.0	6.5±0.3
3	62.0±6.6	143.9±21.2	91.2±10.8	174.5±35.8	50.3±2.3	38.7±0.7	6.6±0.4	5.7±0.1
4	62.8±2.9	118.6±8.9	114.7±10.7	148.7±11.0	44.0±0.6	38.7±2.2	6.0±0.2	5.4±0.4
6	58.7±1.7	148.9±31.1	111.9±13.7	163.3±6.5	39.3±2.3	34.0±1.0	4.7±0.1	4.2±0.2
12	38.1±0.2	72.3±16.1	96.1±7.4	118.6±20.6	39.7±2.9	41.3±3.5	5.1±0.2	5.4±0.3
24	42.9±10.3	59.0±2.4	93.6±3.9	108.2±9.4	39.5±3.5	39.3±2.3	5.4±0.7	5.0±0.2

Mean±standard error of the mean of liver enzymes and renal function tests (alanine aminotransferase (ALAT), aspartase aminotransferase (ASAT), creatinine, urea) after administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) orally (po) or intravenously (iv). Each value represents the mean of three rats.
* The values at 0 h are obtained from rats, 4 h after receiving phosphate-buffered saline po or iv.

In the p.o. group, serum ALAT and ASAT did not change after administration of ALA. In the i.v. group, liver functions returned to normal 12 h after ALA administration. Creatinine and urea of the p.o. and i.v. control rats did not differ (36.7±1.2 versus 36.7±1.8 μmol l^{-1} and 5.7±0.5 versus 5.9±0.4 mmol l^{-1}, 4 h after p.o. and i.v. phosphate-buffered saline administration, respectively). In the p.o. group creatinine was elevated until 4 h after ALA administration ($P<0.007$), urea was not changed. In the i.v. group creatinine was transiently elevated 1 h after ALA administration ($P<0.001$); urea was not changed.

ALA distribution

ALA peak concentration was higher after p.o. than after i.v. ALA administration in parts of the gastrointestinal tract (stomach ($P=0.004$), duodenal aspirate ($P=0.007$), jejunum ($P<0.001$) and kidney ($P=0.02$) and less pronounced (not significantly) in liver and plasma (Figure 7.1).

In the p.o. group, ALA concentration in oesophagus, colon, spleen, bladder, heart, lung, muscle, fat, skin, brain and nerve were similar to the i.v. group. A rapid rate of reduction led to undetectable concentration of ALA in the i.v. group

already at 3 h after administration in oesophagus, stomach, colon, liver, heart, lung, muscle, fat, skin and nerve. In duodenal aspirate, jejunum, spleen, kidney and bladder, ALA concentration was no longer detectable at 6 h after ALA administration. In brain ALA concentration only rose marginally. ALA concentration reached undetectable levels somewhat later in the p.o. group compared to the i.v. group in stomach, duodenal aspirate, jejunum, liver, kidney and bladder. In plasma, ALA concentration was higher in the p.o. than in the i.v. group already at 1 h after administration ($P<0.001$). Plasma ALA levels in both groups declined sharply with a half-life of approximately 50 min. In urine ALA was found already 1 h after administration, both in the p.o. and i.v. group. Peak concentration was found at 2 h and only small amounts of ALA were found in urine after 4 h.

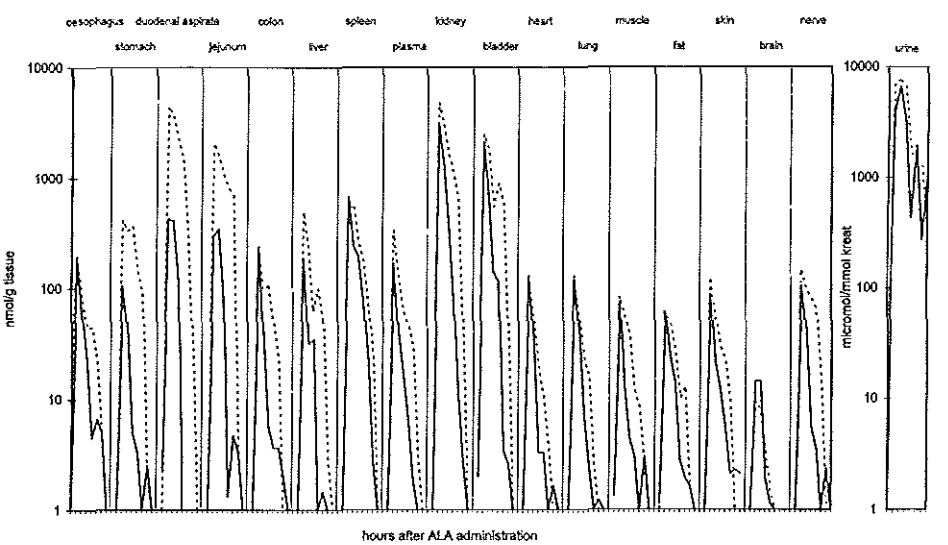


Figure 7.1 Tissue distribution of 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) in various tissues measured at 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12 and 24 h (tick marks on x-axis) after administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA p.o. (dashed line) or i.v. (solid line). Each point represents ALA concentration obtained from three different rats. ALA concentrations are plotted on a logarithmic y-axis.

Porphyrin distribution

Concentrations are given in nmol per gram wet tissue because for PDT absolute porphyrin concentrations are important (Figure 7.2). A representation of values per mg protein obscured the results as there is a large variance in protein content between different tissues. Peak concentration of porphyrins in all tissues was

similar after p.o. or i.v. ALA administration ($P > 0.05$). The amount of porphyrins was highest in duodenal aspirate, followed by jejunum, liver and kidney (> 10 nmol per gram tissue). Porphyrins accumulated less in oesophagus, stomach, colon, spleen, bladder, heart, lung and nerve (2-10 nmol g^{-1}), and only slightly in plasma, muscle, fat, skin and brain (< 2 nmol g^{-1}). The patterns of all tissues except kidney show a rapid rise following ALA administration. Peak levels are found between 2 and 4 h after ALA administration in the p.o. group and between 1 and 3 h in the i.v. group. Twelve hours after administration of ALA, porphyrin concentration in all tissues except kidney returned to background levels. In the kidney a relatively high basal concentration of porphyrins was found (5.2 ± 0.4 nmol g^{-1}) and the concentration climbed throughout the observed period, being approximately 2.5 times as high at 24 h compared to the basal concentration. The highest concentration of porphyrins in plasma was found at 2 h after the i.v. ALA dose and at 3 h after the p.o. ALA dose. The plasma concentration declined to levels close to baseline after 12 h. In urine the first porphyrins above baseline level could be detected after 4 h. At 24 h after ALA administration porphyrin concentrations in urine returned to normal.

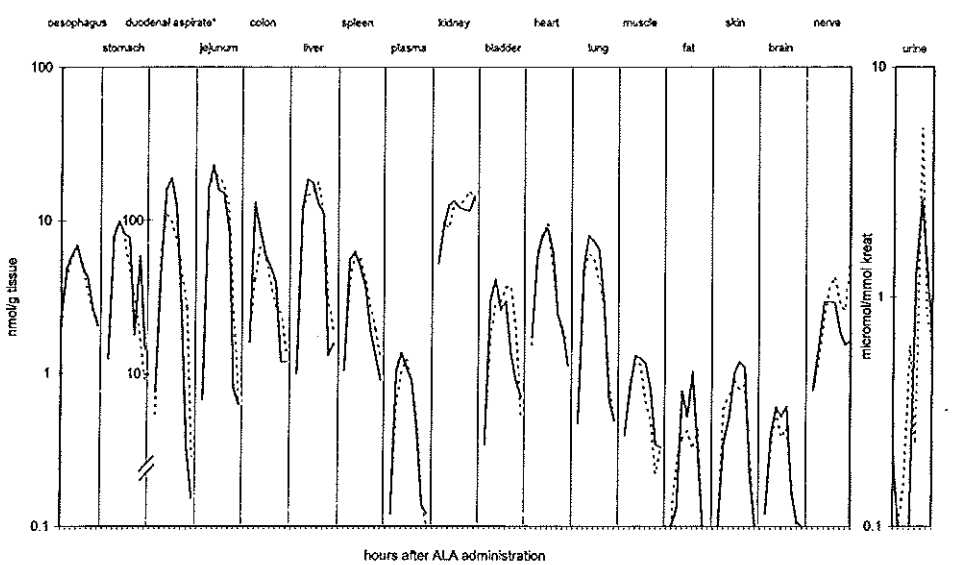


Figure 7.2 Time-dependent accumulation of porphyrins in various tissues following p.o. (dashed line) and i.v. (solid line) administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA). Porphyrin concentrations were measured at 8 time-points: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12 and 24 h (tick marks on x-axis) after ALA administration. Each point represents mean values of three rats. Porphyrin concentrations are plotted on a logarithmic scale.

Fluorescence microscopy

In laser scanning images of various tissues, 3 h after oral ALA administration, fluorescence due to porphyrin accumulation was most pronounced in epithelial lining of the tongue, oesophagus, jejunum, colon, bladder, prostatic glands and pancreatic duct, the ocular conjunctiva and ciliary body of the eye (Figure 7.3). In the submucosa and muscular layers fluorescence was at background levels. In liver diffuse fluorescence was located in the lobules, while the central veins showed no fluorescence. In kidney, fluorescence was located in the tubules and was at background levels in the glomeruli. Fluorescence images of control rats showed no fluorescence, besides autofluorescence of the luminal surface of the keratin layer of the tongue and oesophagus and autofluorescence in the colonic lumen.

Total ALA biodistribution

To study ALA biodistribution after intravenous and oral administration, we combined ALA, the intermediate porphobilinogen, and porphyrin concentrations for each tissue at each time point to get the total amount of ALA. The formation of porphobilinogen requires two molecules of ALA and that of porphyrins eight molecules, so that the porphobilinogen and porphyrin concentrations were multiplied by two and eight respectively. Thereafter, the amount of total ALA per organ or per total volume (blood, duodenal aspirate and urine) was determined. Because ALA in the urine is not used for porphyrin synthesis, the cumulative amount of ALA in urine was subtracted from the amount of all tissues together at each time point. After that, the amount of total ALA in each tissue was divided by the total amount of ALA in the body, giving a stable pattern during the first 4 h (Table 7.2).

Predictive value of ALA concentration

After determing the area under the curve of ALA and porphyrin concentrations in each tissue, no correlation (correlation coefficient <0.5) was found between maximum porphyrin concentration and maximum or total ALA concentration. A correlation coefficient of 0.87 was found between total amounts of accumulated porphyrins (area under the curve) and maximum or total ALA concentration respectively.

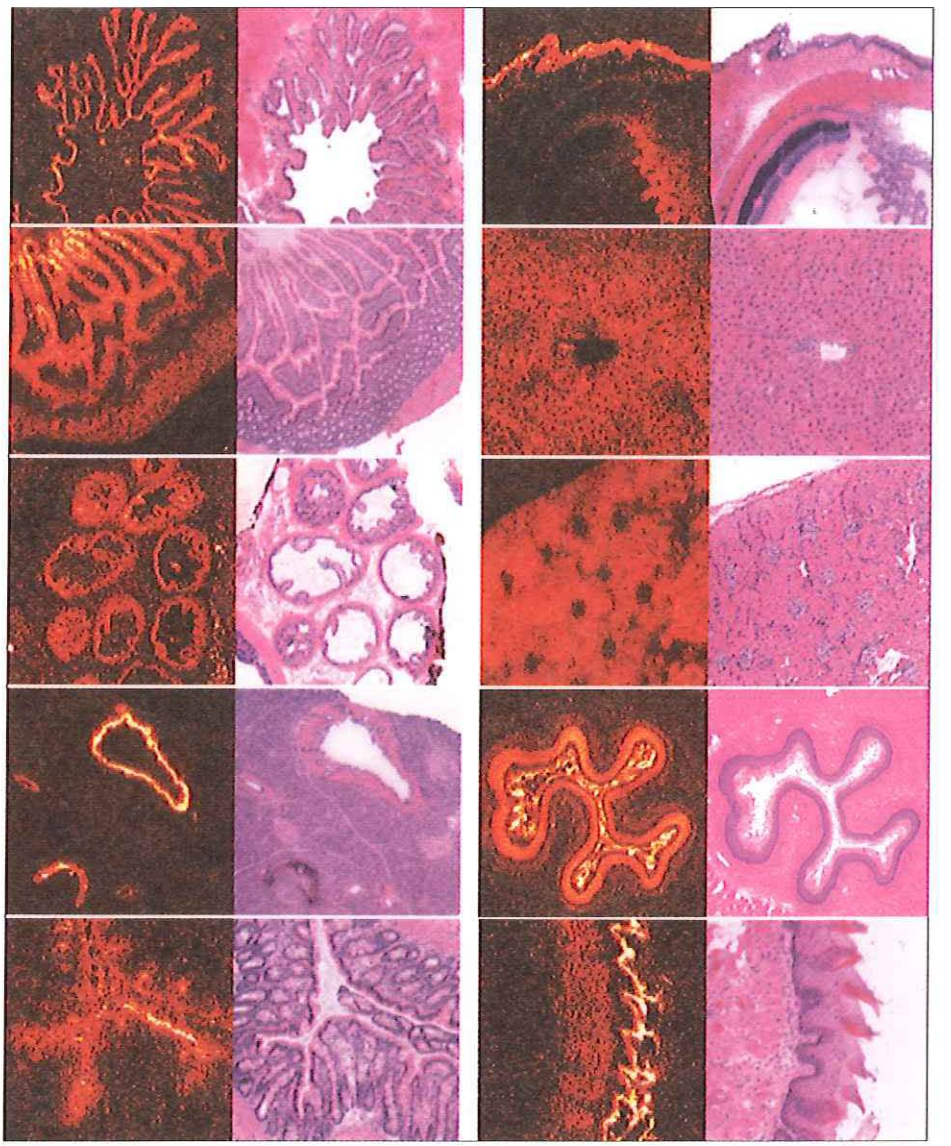


Figure 7.3 Laser scanning microscopic images of frozen sections (10 μm) of various tissues, 3 h after oral administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} 5-aminolevulinic acid, together with the corresponding haematoxylin & eosin sections. Fluorescence in this set-up is produced by porphyrins. Only autofluorescence of the luminal surface of the keratin layer of the tongue and oesophagus and autofluorescence of the colonic lumen were also present in images of control rats. Fluorescence intensity must not be extrapolated to porphyrin concentration as the optical absorption properties of tissues vary widely.
Left in descending order: bladder, jejunum, prostate, pancreas, colon.
Right in descending order: eye, liver, kidney, oesophagus, tongue.

Table 7.2 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) biodistribution. Total ALA (ALA or converted into porphobilinogen or pophyrins) in each tissue as percentage of total ALA in the body.

Tissue	percentage of total ALA after p.o. ALA administration	percentage of total ALA after i.v. ALA administration
oesophagus	<1	<1
stomach	1	1
duodenal aspirate	7	5
small bowel	17	7
colon	1	1
liver	45	55
spleen	1	1
blood	4	4
kidney	14	13
bladder	1	1
heart	<1	<1
lung	<1	1
muscle	3	3
fat	2	3
skin	4	4
brain	<0.1	<0.1
nerve	<0.1	<0.1

Discussion

The interest for ALA-PDT as a cancer treatment has increased rapidly during the past few years due to comparatively high tumour selectivity and short-lasting skin photosensitivity. Until now, ALA has been administered without any detailed information about its pharmacokinetics. This animal study was designed to determine systematically the time course of ALA biodistribution and subsequent accumulation of porphyrins after oral and intravenous ALA administration in the normal body. A tumour model was not used, as ALA-PDT is most suitable for carcinoma in situ or premalignant lesions. Many premalignant lesions, such as Barrett's oesophagus, are composed of metaplastic epithelium, which, besides their metaplastic appearance, are normal rather than cancer-like tissues. Besides that, the literature shows that different tumours behave quite differently with regard to porphyrin accumulation after administration of ALA. For optimal PDT, data from each specific tumour or premalignant tissue are needed.

ALA concentration was highest in kidney, bladder and urine and, after p.o. ALA administration, also in jejunum. Porphyrins accumulated mainly in duodenal aspirate, jejunum, liver and kidney and were an order of magnitude lower in plasma, muscle, fat, skin and brain.

The elevated ALAT and ASAT levels of the i.v. control rats can be explained by the use of ether anaesthesia in this group.[22] Thus, in the i.v. group, the effect of ALA administration on liver function was mixed with the effect of ether anaesthesia. Twelve hours after ALA (and ether) administration liver functions returned to normal. If i.v. ALA administration had an effect on liver function, it was only short lasting. In the p.o. group no anaesthesia was used and ALA did not cause elevation of ALAT or ASAT. Renal function tests were unchanged by ether, and ALA only caused mild transient elevation of creatinine after both p.o. and i.v. administration.

Figure 7.1 shows that the concentration of ALA in some tissues was higher after p.o. than after i.v. ALA administration; in stomach, duodenal aspirate and jejunum this pattern exceeded 6 h. This suggests that after oral ALA administration, some ALA is absorbed in the stomach (probably passively due to its neutral charge at low pH), but most ALA is absorbed in the small intestine. The lower ALA peak concentrations in liver, plasma and kidney in the i.v. group compared the p.o. group are probably due to delayed absorption from the gastrointestinal tract and the timing of the sampling. It is still not clear whether ALA is able to pass the blood-brain barrier.[23] In our study, ALA concentration in brain only rose slightly; porphyrin concentrations however, were indeed elevated after ALA administration. Because porphyrins cannot pass an intact blood-brain barrier, the porphyrin accumulation in this study suggests that small amounts of ALA do pass the barrier.[23] An enterohepatic circulation of ALA possibly occurs, because ALA was found in duodenal aspirate after i.v. ALA administration and the peak ALA concentration in jejunum was reached later than in other tissues. Most tissues converted all ALA into porphyrins. In kidney, only a small part of ALA was converted into porphyrins; a large proportion was excreted unchanged in urine. In liver, besides conversion into haem, porphyrins (and a small amount of ALA) were excreted via the bile.

Despite differences in ALA concentration in some tissues after oral and intravenous ALA administration, there was no difference in the porphyrin concentration in the organs we studied (Figure 7.2). Both peak porphyrin concentrations and total accumulation were similar between the two routes of administration, suggesting that the amount of ALA given was above that needed to give a maximum rate of porphyrin synthesis.

The time course of ALA and porphyrin concentration changes in tissues provides evidence for *in situ* synthesis of porphyrins rather than uptake of PpIX

from the systemic circulation. Furthermore, it seems unlikely that the liver is the main supplier of PpIX, because peak porphyrin concentration in the liver did not appear before that in other tissues and PpIX concentration in jejunum showed the same pattern as was found in other tissues (Figure 7.2).

For PDT it is important to know which tissues are photosensitized at what time. No studies comparing porphyrin concentration and photosensitization after ALA are available. Most studies have used fluorescence techniques to determine porphyrin concentration in arbitrary gray units.[10,24,25] The optical absorption properties of tissues vary widely so that the fluorescence levels between different tissues cannot be compared. Other studies have evaluated the PDT effects after various doses or routes of ALA administration but did not determine porphyrin concentration at a tissue level.[9,26] Comparison of two reports from a single group suggests that 2.2 μgr PpIX per gram tissue (3.6 nmol g^{-1}) can already cause necrosis in normal rat colonic mucosa on exposure to light.[10,27] Another study has reported delayed tumour growth after irradiation of a tumour in rats with an amount of 4 μg porphyrins per gram tumour (6.6 nmol g^{-1}).[14] In our study these "photosensitive" concentrations were reached in all tissues except in muscle, fat, skin and brain.

Quantitative data of PpIX concentrations in different tissues after ALA administration are only available from three other studies.[14,28,29] The first found that rat liver and intestine contained the highest levels of PpIX (approximately 6.3 nmol per gram tissue), followed by aorta (4.3 nmol g^{-1}) and oesophagus (2.1 nmol g^{-1}), 3 h after 300 mg kg^{-1} ALA i.v.[14] Serum, muscle and skin hardly contained any porphyrins (approximately 0.5 nmol per gram tissue). Although we found higher concentrations of porphyrins, the order of ranking is comparable. In humans, after oral administration of 60 mg kg^{-1} ALA, peak PpIX concentration in liver (10.1 nmol per gram tissue) was also found to be higher than in skin, muscle or omentum ($\leq$1 nmol g^{-1}).[28] In the third study in two rabbits, surprisingly, the highest concentration of PpIX was found in plasma (454.20 μg g^{-1}= 748.76 nmol ml^{-1}) compared to only 11.4 μg g^{-1} in liver (18.8 nmol g^{-1} liver), 3 h after 100 mg kg^{-1} i.v. ALA administration.[29] In our study PpIX concentration in plasma reached a maximum of only 1.35 nmol ml^{-1}, compared to 16.5 nmol g^{-1} in liver. This is consistent with the results reported in a human study showing a maximum PpIX concentration in plasma of 1.22 nmol ml^{-1}, 7 h after oral administration of 40 mg kg^{-1} ALA.[30] In red blood cells we found a maximum PpIX concentration of 11 nmol ml^{-1} red blood cells, 1 h after ALA administration (data not shown).

Besides quantification, porphyrin localization is also important. Fluorescence microscopy confirmed that fat and muscle contained low concentrations of porphyrins, while epithelial linings showed strong fluorescence. This combination makes ALA-PDT highly suitable for treatment of epithelial lesions such as premalignant and malignant skin and bladder lesions and Barrett's oesophagus.

Maximal porphyrin concentration was found in most tissues after 2 to 3 h (Figure 7.2), with porphyrin concentrations close to baseline levels at 12 h after ALA administration. The only exception is the kidney. There is supply of ALA to the kidney from 1 to 24 h, as ALA is also excreted in the urine during that time. Probably porphyrin synthesis in the kidney is at maximum rate at least during the first 24 h after ALA administration.

With regard to tumours, literature on porphyrin concentrations in rat tumours is sparse. Hua *et al.* found a maximum porphyrin concentration of 6.9 nmol per gram R3230AC mammary adenocarcinoma (3 h after 300 mg kg^{-1} ALA i.v.) and 8.2 nmol per gram NMU mammary adenocarcinoma (4 h after 300 mg kg^{-1} ALA i.v.).[14] In a previous study of our group a maximum ALA-induced porphyrin concentration in mammary tumour BN472 of only 2.0 nmol g^{-1} after 2 mg ml^{-1} ALA in drinking water for 9 days was reported.[31] Loh *et al.* described a maximum porphyrin concentration of 11.7 nmol g^{-1} in chemically induced duodenal tumours, 4.5 h after 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA i.v.[27] These data show that there is a wide variance in tumour porphyrin concentration after administration of ALA.

Further studies of ALA-induced porphyrin production in different tumours *in situ* are needed before the dosing scheme which provides an optimal ratio between tumour and surrounding tissue can be determined. On the basis of the described data in this study, various tissues can now be excluded from contributing to photosensitization.

After photobleaching, re-appearance of fluorescence has been reported, what can be used to induce more pronounced PDT effect by fractionating the illumination.[32,33] Three hours after ALA administration, some ALA was still present in duodenal aspirate, jejunum, spleen, kidney and bladder and after p.o. ALA administration additionally in the stomach. Duodenal contents, small intestine and kidney could play a role as ALA depot (Figure 7.1), or small amounts of ALA present in each tissue could be the source of new porphyrins after an initial light dose.

It seems not unlikely that various tissues have a different demand for haem synthesis related to their function and therefore a different quantity of haem-synthesizing enzymes. Tissues with a short cell doubling time or high rate of metabolism have been suggested to be more likely to accumulate porphyrins after ALA; however, *in vitro* studies do not fully support this.[34] Due to the bypass of the feedback regulation, cells in most tissues are not capable of converting all the ALA entering the cell into haem. Iron stores probably will be insufficient, resulting in accumulation of PpIX. Another explanation for selective porphyrin accumulation is a difference in activity of specific enzymes of haem biosynthesis. Porphobilinogen deaminase has been reported to be higher and ferrochelatase lower in tissues that accumulate more PpIX.[35,36] However, a simple relationship between the

activity of these enzymes and porphyrin concentration in different tissues seems unlikely.[14] Another explanation is that the uptake of ALA is greater or its efflux lower in tissues that accumulate high concentrations of porphyrins. To approach this, we evaluated the correlation between maximum or total ALA concentration and maximum or total porphyrin concentration in each tissue. In contrast to peak porphyrin concentration, total porphyrin accumulation (area under the curve) correlated well with maximum and total ALA concentration in the tissues. A difference in rate of porphyrin synthesis rather than a difference in ALA uptake between tissues might therefore be responsible for selective ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation. In time most tissues are capable of converting porphyrins into haem as might be concluded from our results.

In conclusion: this study describes the biodistribution of ALA and subsequent porphyrin accumulation in different tissues. Administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA resulted in accumulation of photosensitive concentrations of porphyrins, 1 to 6 h after ALA administration, in all tissues except muscle, fat, skin and brain. No difference in porphyrin concentrations was found between systemic and oral ALA administration. Knowledge of the time-concentration relationship should be helpful in selecting dosages, routes of administration and timing of ALA-PDT.

REFERENCES

1. Dougherty TJ, Cooper MT, Mang TS. Cutaneous phototoxic occurrences in patients receiving Photophrin. Lasers Surg Med 1990;10:485-488.
2. Tralau CJ, Barr H, MacRobert AJ, Bown SG. Relative merits of porphyrins and pthalocyanine sensitization for photodynamic therapy. In: Kessel D (ed). Photodynamic therapy of neoplastic disease. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1990:263-275.
3. Van Hillegersberg R, Van den Berg JWO, Kort WJ, Terpstra OT, Wilson JHP. Selective accumulation of endogenously produced porphyrins in a liver metastasis model in rats. Gastroenterology 1992;103:647-651.
4. Moore MR. Porphyrins and enzymes of the heme biosynthetic pathway. In: Moore MR, McColl KE, Rimmington C, Goldberg A (eds). Disorders of porphyrin metabolism. New York: Plenum, 1987:21-72.
5. Van Hillegersberg R, Kort WJ, Wilson JHP. Current status of photodynamic therapy in oncology. Drugs 1994;48:510-527.
6. Peng Q, Warloe T, Berg K, Moan J, Kongshaug M, Giercksky KE, Nesland, JM. 5-Aminolevulinic acid-based photodynamic therapy: clinical research and future challenges. Cancer 1997;79:2282-2308.
7. Ibrahim GW, Watson CJ. Enterohepatic circulation and conversion of protoporphyrin to bile pigment in man. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 1969;127:890-895.
8. Berlin NI, Neuberger A, Scott JJ. The metabolism of δ-aminolaevulinic acid. Normal pathways studied with the aid of 15N and 14C. Biochem 1956;64:80-100.
9. Chang SC, Buonaccorsi G, MacRobert AJ, Bown SG. 5-Aminolevulinic acid-induced protoporhyrin IX fluorescence and photodynamic effects in the rat bladder: an in vivo study comparing oral and intravesical ALA administration. Lasers Surg Med 1997;20:254-264.
10. Bedwell J, MacRobert AJ, Phillips D, Bown SG. Fluorescence distribution and photodynamic effect of ALA-induced PpIX in the DMH rat colonic tumour model. Br J Cancer 1992;65:818-824.
11. Kennedy JC, Pottier RH. Endogenous protoporphyrin IX, a clinically useful photosensitizer for photodynamic therapy. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1992;14:275-292.
12. Divaris DXG, Kennedy JC, Pottier RH. Phototoxic damage to sebaceous glands and hair follicles of mice after systemic administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid correlates with localized protoporphyrin IX fluorescence. Am J Pathol 1990;136:891-897.
13. Malik Z, Lugaci H. Destruction of erythroleukemic cells by photoactivation of endogenous porphyrins. Br J Cancer 1987;56:589-595.
14. Hua Z, Gibson SL, Foster TH, Hilf R. Effectiveness of δ-aminolevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin as a photosensitizer for photodynamic therapy in vivo. Cancer Res 1995;55: 1723-1731.
15. Bergmeyer HU, Horder M, Rej R. International Federation of Clinical Chemistry method for aspartate aminotransferase (L-aspartate: 2-oxoglutarate aminotransferase, EC 2.6.1.1). J Clin Chem Clin Biochem 1986;24:497-510.
16. Soldin SJ, Wan BS, Cherian AG. The measurement of creatinine: a comparison between the Beckman Creatinine Analyzer II and the Selective Analyzer GSA IID. Clin Biochem 1981;14: 165-168.
17. Lowry OH, Rosebrough NJ, Farr AL, Randall RJ. Protein measurement with the Folin phenol reagent. J Biol Chem 1951;193:265-275.
18. De Rooij FWM, Hamer CM, Wilson JHP. Purification of porphobilinogen deaminase from human erythrocytes by fast protein liquid chromatography. Clin Chim Acta 1987;162:61-68.
19. Mauzerall D, Granick S. The occurrence and determination of 5-aminolevulinic acid and

porphobilinogen in urine. J Biol Chem 1956;219;435-446.
20. Lim CK, Peters TJ. Urine and faecal porphyrin profiles by reversed-phase high performance liquid chromatography in the porphyrias. Clin Chem Acta 1984;139:55-63.
21. Chisolm J, Brown DH. Micro-scale photofluoremetric determination of "free erythrocyte porphyrin" (protoporphyrin IX). Clin Chem 1975;21:1669-1682.
22. Kalman SH, Bengtsson M, Martensson J. Liver function and halothane-diethyl-ether azeotrope anaesthesia. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 1995;39:34-38.
23. Hebeda K. ALA-induced porphyrin fluorescence in 9L and C6 brain tumors and in normal rat brain. In: Hebeda K. (Thesis) Photodynamic therapy of brain tumors, Amsterdam, 1995:111-131.
24. Abels C, Heil P, Dellian M, Kuhnle GEH, Baumgartner R, Goetz AE. In vivo kinetics and spectra of 5-aminolaevulinic acid-induced fluorescence in an amelanotic melanoma of the hamster. Br J Cancer 1994;70:826-833.
25. Sroka R, Beyer W, Gossner L, Sassy T, Stocker S, Baumgartner R. Pharmacokinetics of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrins in tumour-bearing mice. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1996;34:13-19.
26. Loh CS, MacRobert AJ, Bedwell J, Regula J, Krasner N, Bown SG. Oral versus intravenous administration of 5-aminolaevulinic acid for photodynamic therapy. Br J Cancer 1993; 68:41-51.
27. Loh CS, Vernon D, MacRobert AJ, Bedwell J, Bown SG, Brown SB. Endogenous porphyrin distribution induced by 5-aminolaevulinic acid in the tissue layers of the gastrointestinal tract. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1993;20:47-54.
28. Webber J, Kessel D, Fromm D. Side effects and photosensitization of human tissues after aminolevulinic acid. J Surg Res 1997;68:31-37.
29. Lofgren LA, Ronn AM, Lee CJ, Yoo D, Steinberg BM. Efficacy of intravenous δ-aminolaevulinic acid photodynamic therapy on rabbit papillomas. Br J Cancer 1995;72:857-864.
30. Rick K, Stepp H, Kriegmair M, Huber RM, Jacob K, Baumgartner R. Pharmacokinetics of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX in skin and blood. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1997;40:313-319.
31. Van Hillegersberg R, Hekking-Weijma JM, Wilson JH, Edixhoven-Bosdijk A, Kort WJ. Adjuvant intraoperative photodynamic therapy diminishes the rate of local recurrence in a rat mammary tumour model. Br J Cancer 1995;71:733-737.
32. Messmann H, Mlkvy P, Buonaccorsi G, Davies CL, MacRobert AJ, Bown SG. Enhancement of photodynamic therapy with 5-aminolaevulinic acid-induced porphyrin photosensitisation in normal rat colon by threshold and light fractionation studies. Br J Cancer 1995; 72:589-594.
33. Van der Veen N, Van Leengoed HLLM, Star WM. In vivo fluorescence kinetics and photodynamic therapy using 5-aminolaevulinic acid-induced porphyrin: increased damage after multiple irradiations. Br J Cancer 1994;70:867-872.
34. Fukuda H, Batlle AMC, Riley PA. Kinetics of porphyrin accumulation in cultured epithelial cells exposed to ALA. Int J Biochem 1993;25:1407-1410.
35. Siersema PD, Wilson JHP, Edixhoven-Bosdijk A, De Rooij FWM, Tilanus HW. Increased porphobilinogen deaminase activity in pre- and malignant tissue of the esophagus. Gastrointest Oncol 1995;41:A537.
36. Rasetti L, Rubino GF, Drago W. Ferrochelatase, ALA-dehydrase and ALA-synthase activity in human tumour tissue. Panminerva Medica 1967;8:132-135.

Chapter 8

Kinetics, Localization and Mechanism of 5-Aminolevulinic Acid-Induced Endogenous Photosensitization of Rat Normal and Barrett's Oesophagus

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.* *Lasers in Surgery and Medicine* 1999;24:3-13.

INTRODUCTION

Since 1970 the incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma is rising both in Europe and in the United States, at a rate greater than that of any other malignancy.[1] Barrett's epithelial metaplasia is a premalignant condition, probably arising from (duodeno)gastro-oesophageal reflux, causing a 30- to 50-fold greater risk of developing oesophageal adenocarcinoma (Chapter 1).[2] Antireflux medication such as proton-pump inhibitors, H-2 receptor blockers, or possibly antireflux surgery are the current treatment options. Although reflux complaints disappear in almost 100% of treated cases, no effect on Barrett's epithelium itself has been shown, and malignant degeneration towards adenocarcinoma can still proceed.[3] Thus, most studies have advised using endoscopic surveillance for patients with Barrett's oesophagus. New forms of therapy are under investigation to completely eliminate Barrett's epithelium. Laser therapy is one of these new modalities. Local intraluminal laser coagulation, which causes thermal destruction and ablation of the lesion in combination with antireflux therapy, may lead to regeneration with squamous epithelium (Chapter 2).[4] A disadvantage is the relative uncontrolled damage through the entire wall, which often leads to strictures and perforations. Regeneration with both squamous and columnar epithelium has also been described.[5]

In photodynamic therapy (PDT), laser light is used to activate a photosensitizing drug previously administered to accumulate in (pre)malignant tissues. This results in a photochemical reaction, with the generation of singlet oxygen causing cell death (Chapter 3). The best known clinical photosensitizers are haematoporphyrin derivate (HpD) and its more purified form, Photofrin®. Although clinical studies have shown some effectiveness in the treatment of Barrett's oesophagus and superficial oesophageal cancer, they have three main drawbacks.[6,7] They cause prolonged skin sensitivity to light, thus requiring avoidance of sunlight, and offer limited tumour selectivity.[8-10] Moreover, strictures requiring dilatations are a frequent complication when using HpD or Photofrin®.[6,7] A new method of photosensitization is the administration of the natural porphyrin precursor 5-amino-levulinic acid (ALA).[11] The synthesis of ALA is rate limiting in the haem-synthetic pathway.[12] The administration of exogenous ALA bypasses both the rate-limiting step and the feedback control in the haem biosynthesis, and leads to accumulation of protoporphyrin IX (PpIX) in certain types of cells and tissues (Chapter 7).[13] ALA-PDT could therefore be a suitable therapy for Barrett's oesophagus. Although some clinical case reports have described promising results, remaining islands of columnar epithelium after therapy have been found in several studies.[14-17] These therapy-resistant cells may be eliminated by adjusting the ALA-PDT treatment.

The present study was carried out to determine the optimal timing of ALA administration with respect to subsequent therapeutic illumination. In a first experiment, the kinetics and localization of ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation in the rat normal oesophagus were studied. To understand the mechanism of porphyrin accumulation, ALA and iron concentrations and activity of porphobilinogen deaminase and ferrochelatase were determined in the different layers of the oesophagus. In the second experiment, with laser scanning microscopy, localization and relative concentration of ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation in Barrett's and adjacent normal oesophagus was studied in an animal model (Chapters 4 and 5).

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animals and materials

The experimental protocol was approved by "The Committee on Animal Research" of the Erasmus University Rotterdam. Ninety-two male adult Wag/Rij rats (Harlan CPB, Austerlitz, The Netherlands), weighing 180-200 g were used for the experiments. They had free access to rat chow and tap water. ALA was obtained from Sigma Chemical Company (Zwijndrecht, The Netherlands) with a purity of 98%. The following reagents were purchased from Porphyrin Products (Logan, Utah, USA): PpIX, disodium salt, and zinc PpIX. Tris-HCl was purchased from Boehringer (Mannheim, Germany), and other chemicals were purchased from Merck (Darmstadt, Germany).

Experimental design

Forty-eight animals were randomly assigned to two study groups of 21 animals each and one control group of six animals. In the study groups, the animals were administered 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA dissolved in phosphate-buffered saline either by intravenous injection (i.v.) into the penile vein under ether anaesthesia (n=21), or by oral gavage (p.o., n=21). Control animals received phosphate-buffered saline either i.v. (n=3) or p.o. (n=3). In the study groups, after administration of ALA, the animals were placed in subdued light. They were sacrificed at 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12 or 24 h after administration in groups of three. Control animals were sacrificed at 4 h. In subdued light, a small piece of the distal oesophagus was excised and immediately snap frozen and stored at -80°C for fluorescence microscopic study. The rest of the oesophagus was then resected and opened longitudinally. The mucosa was surgically separated from the underlying muscularis. The separated tissues were frozen immediately and stored at -80°C until chemical extraction.

Twenty additional untreated rats were used to determine ferrochelatase and porphobilinogen deaminase activity (n=10) and iron concentration (n=10) in both oesophageal mucosa and underlying muscular layer.

Barrett's oesophagus

Twenty-four animals underwent an oesophagojejunostomy with total gastrectomy according to the model of Levrat *et al.* to induce duodeno-oesophageal reflux and subsequent Barrett's columnar epithelium (Chapters 4 and 5).[18,19] A median laparotomy was performed, and the oesophagus was dissected 2 mm above its entry in the stomach. The stomach was resected and the duodenum closed. Thereafter, the oesophagus was anastomosed end-to-side to the jejunum, approximately 5 cm distal to the Treitz ligament. After 18 weeks of induced duodenal reflux, 21 rats received 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA intravenously. Rats were sacrificed at 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8 or 12 h after ALA administration (n=3/ time point). Three controls received phosphate-buffered saline i.v. and were sacrificed 3 h later. The oesophagus was dissected and cut into seven 5-mm pieces; the most distal piece was approximately 2 mm proximal to the anastomosis. The samples were immediately snap frozen and stored at -80°C for fluorescence microscopic study.

Determination of ALA concentration

ALA was extracted from tissue samples with a mixture of dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and methanol (MeOH; 30/70 vol./vol.) and quantified by using a fluorimetric enzyme assay, as described in the previous chapter.[20,21] In brief, tissue homogenates were mixed with 480 μl DMSO/MeOH and centrifugated; 200 μl of ALA standard solution (0.1-2 nmol ml^{-1}) or diluted tissue homogenates were mixed with 50 μl of an enzyme mixture of porphobilinogen deaminase and ALA deaminase in Tris-HCl buffer or with 50 μl of Tris-HCl buffer for blank detection. The samples were incubated over night, and the reaction was stopped by addition of 750 μl stop buffer (one part Tris-HCl and two parts trichloroacetic acid). The samples were then placed on a ultraviolet light source (350 nm Woods light) to convert porphyrinogens into porphyrins and centrifugated. The porphyrin concentration in the supernatant was determined in a Perkin Elmer fluorimeter (LS 5B, Nieuwerkerk aan den IJssel, The Netherlands) by using a red-sensitive photomultiplier. The ALA standard line was used to calculate the original ALA concentration in tissue concentration (nmol per mg protein).

Porphyrin analysis

The analysis was carried out according to Chisolm and Brown with some modifications (Chapter 7).[20,22] To tissue homogenates, HCL and ethyl-acetate/glacial acid were added. After centrifugation, the ethyl-acetate phase with

some protein was removed, and after a second centrifugation the HCL phase was measured in a fluorescence spectrometer LS 5B using a red-sensitive photomultiplier (Perkin Elmer), at an excitation wavelength of 410 nm and an emission wavelength of 650 nm. Emission at 650 nm in a direct extraction assay as described above was found to be proportional (≥90%) to PpIX quantification as determined by a limited number of high performance liquid chromatography porphyrin separations. Porphyrin standards were analysed separately for their actual concentration using ultraviolet spectroscopy and the molar extinction coefficient ($\epsilon_{407} = 0.275$ l mol^{-1} cm^{-1}). Recovery of porphyrins was checked by adding standard PpIX to the samples. A recovery between 90 and 100% was achieved.
Protein was measured using the method of Lowry *et al.*[23]

Fluorescence microscopy

The method has been discussed in detail in the previous chapter.[20] In brief, in subdued light, tissue blocks were cut into sections of 10 μm thick (four sections per sample) and stored at -80°C. Just prior to fluorescence microscopy, the sections were thawed. Preparations were imaged by using a helium/neon laser (633 nm) for fluorescence excitation. After passing a 665 nm longpass filter, the emitted light was detected by a photomultiplier. All images were recorded in one session to avoid errors due to daily differences in microscope settings. The digital images were analysed with the Kontron KS-400 image analysis program (Kontron Electronik, München, Germany). The respective areas of interest were outlined manually or determined by interactive thresholding. After that, the mean fluorescence (integrated fluorescence/surface area) in each area was automatically calculated. After fluorescence microscopy, sections were fixed in formalin and stained with haematoxylin and eosin (H&E) for comparative histological analysis.

Determination of porphobilinogen deaminase and ferrochelatase activity

The samples were homogenized in sterile water (1:10 wt./wt.) using a Potter Elvehjem homogenizer. Porphobilinogen deaminase was measured as described previously by Wilson *et al.* after an initial incubation at 55°C for 60 min and cooling to room temperature to destroy the activity of uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase and to prevent further metabolism of uroporphyrinogen.[24] Ferrochelatase was measured by a modification of the method of Li *et al.*[25] 50 μl of the homogenate was added to 100 μl 0.25 mol l^{-1} TrisHCl buffer, pH 8.2, containing 8 g l^{-1} Triton X-100 and 1.75 mmol l^{-1} palmitic acid. 50 μl of a 250-μmol l^{-1} solution of PpIX in KOH 0.01 mol l^{-1} were added, and the reaction was started by the addition of 50 μl of a 200-μmol l^{-1} solution of zinc acetate in water. The mixture was incubated at 37°C for 60 min, and the reaction was stopped by the addition of 1 ml of DMSO/MeOH (30:70). After subsequent centrifugation in an Eppendorf

centrifuge for 5 min at 1800*g*, 100 μl of supernatant was injected on a Perkin Elmer high performance liquid chromatography with a reversed-phase Chrompack RP18 column, with acetone/methanol/water/formic acid (560:240: 200:2) 1 ml min^{-1} as mobile phase. Zinc PpIX was detected by a Perkin Elmer LS40 fluorometer, with an excitation wavelength of 415 nm and an emission wavelength of 580 nm. Results were expressed as nmol per mg protein.

Determination of iron concentration

The concentration of iron was measured spectrophotometrically by using a modification of the method described by Lauber, with a wavelength of 562 nm.[26]

Statistical analysis

The values are expressed as means $\pm$ standard error of the mean (SEM). Comparisons were made using the Student's *t*-test. Total accumulation of porphyrins after oral and intravenous ALA administration was calculated using an area under the curve analysis. A value of $P<0.05$ was considered significant.

RESULTS

ALA distribution

Maximum ALA concentration in mucosa and muscularis was reached at 1 h after p.o. and i.v. ALA administration. In the p.o. group, peak ALA concentration was higher in mucosal tissue than in muscularis (2.08 ± 0.24 versus 1.11 ± 0.18 nmol per mg protein, $P=0.03$); in the i.v. group this was not statistically significantly different (1.46 ± 0.22 versus 1.26 ± 0.30 nmol per mg protein, $P=0.06$; Figure 8.1). There was no difference in maximum ALA concentration in both mucosa and muscularis after p.o. or i.v. administration. After 1 h, in both groups and tissue layers, ALA concentration declined sharply, with a half-life of approximately 1 h, and was at background levels at 4 h after ALA administration.

Porphyrin distribution

Basal porphyrin concentration was higher in the mucosa, compared to the muscularis of the squamous-lined oesophagus ($P=0.049$; Figure 8.1). Peak porphyrin levels, reached at 3 h after ALA administration, were higher in mucosa (90.1 ± 10.0 pmol per mg protein in the p.o. group and 86.8 ± 12.8 pmol per mg protein in the i.v. group) than in muscularis (26.7 ± 3.1 and 32.6 ± 3.4 pmol per mg protein; $P=0.003$ in the p.o. group and $P=0.015$ in the i.v. group). A maximal mucosa:muscularis ratio of approximately 3.5 was found at 2 h after ALA administration in both groups. Total accumulation of porphyrins (area under the

curve) was also higher in the mucosa than in the muscularis and was equal in the p.o. and i.v. groups. At 6, 12 and 24 h after receiving ALA, porphyrin levels had returned to those levels found in control animals.

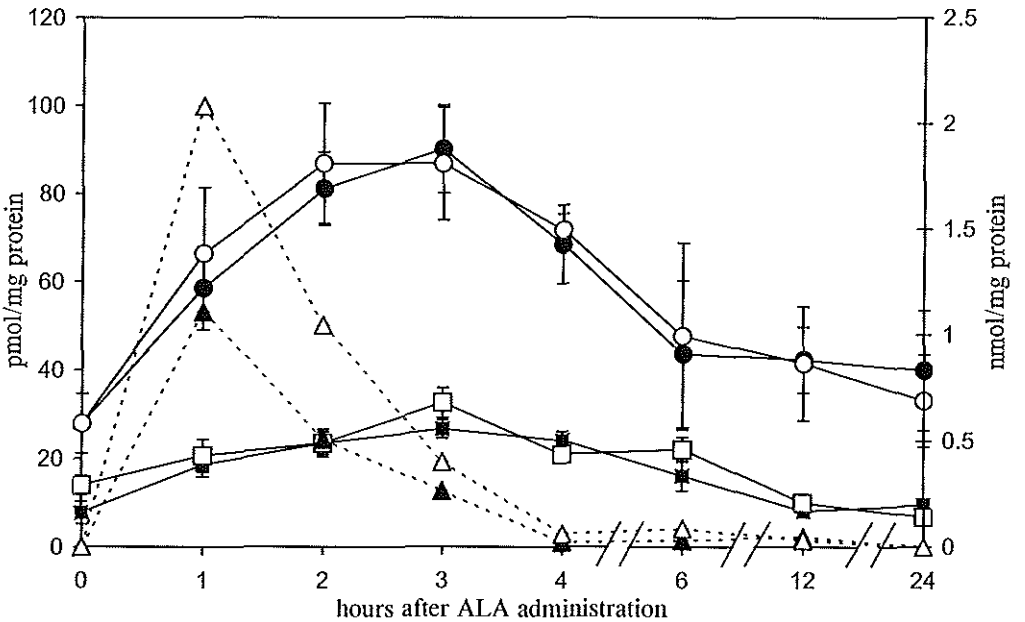


Figure 8.1 Extracted porphyrin levels (solid lines, left y-axis) and tissue 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) concentration (dashed lines, right y-axis) after administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA. Each point indicates the mean level of 3 rats ± standard error of the mean. The ALA and porphyrin levels of control rats are given at 0 h. ○, mucosa, intravenous ALA; ●, mucosa, oral gavage ALA; □, muscularis, intravenous ALA; ■, muscularis, oral gavage ALA; Δ, ALA concentration in oesophageal mucosa; ▲, ALA concentration in oesophageal muscularis.

Fluorescence imaging

Areas with strong autofluorescence were found in control animals (Figure 8.3). Comparison with the H&E stainings showed that this fluorescence was restricted to the luminal surface of the oesophageal mucosa with nests of food (*e.g.*, chlorophyll and bacteria). In all sections, these autofluorescent areas were present.

After administration of ALA, a strong, broad, homogeneous fluorescence of the basal cell layer of the squamous epithelium was found (Figure 8.4). Weak fluorescence was apparent in the muscularis mucosae. The keratin layer, lamina propria of the mucosa, the submucosa and the muscularis showed fluorescence near background level. The fluorescence intensity of the various oesophageal layers after analysis of the digital images is shown in Figure 8.2. Fluorescence level of the basal cell layer increased rapidly, reaching a maximum at 3 h after ALA administration. Thereafter, fluorescence decreased to background levels at 24 h.

Fluorescence of the muscularis mucosae showed the same pattern at lower intensity levels. The fluorescence level of the other oesophageal layers was barely above background levels. The maximal fluorescence ratio between the squamous basal cell layer and muscularis mucosae was 3 (3 h after ALA administration). This ratio was 7 between the squamous basal cell layer and submucosa or muscularis (also 3 h after ALA). The results of the p.o. and i.v. groups did not differ significantly.

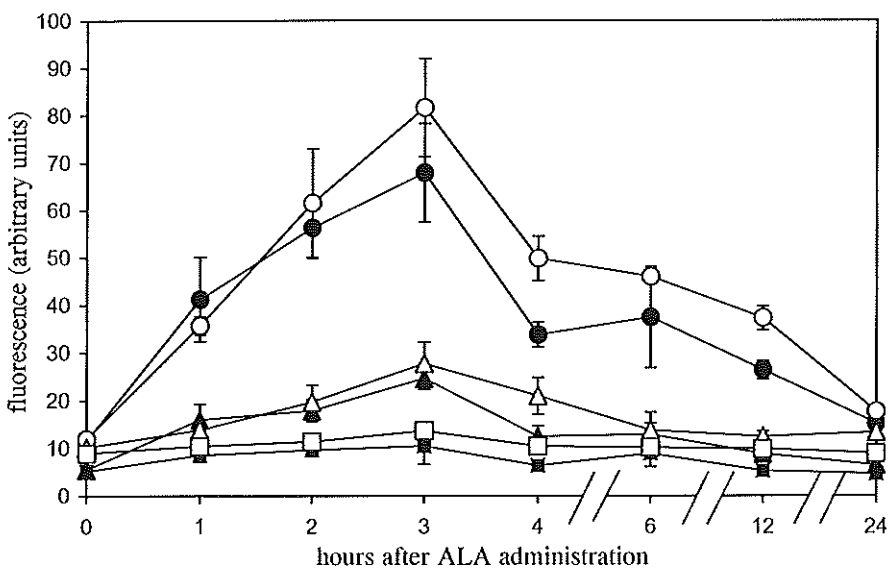


Figure 8.2 Grey-scale values of fluorescence ± standard error of the mean (SEM) in tissue layers of the normal oesophagus as a function of time after 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) administration. Each point indicates the mean level of three rats ± SEM. The levels of control rats are given at 0 h. ○, mucosal basal cell layer, intravenous ALA; ●, mucosal basal cell layer, oral gavage ALA; Δ, muscularis mucosae, intravenous ALA; ▲, muscularis mucosae, oral gavage ALA; □, rest of the oesophageal wall (lamina propria, submucosa, muscularis), intravenous ALA; ■, rest of the oesophageal wall (lamina propria, submucosa, muscularis), oral gavage ALA.

Porphobilinogen deaminase and ferrochelatase activity

Porphobilinogen deaminase activity in the mucosa was almost threefold higher than in the muscularis (78.29±10.8 versus 30.72±7.5 pmol h^{-1} of uroporphyrin per mg protein, $P<0.001$; Table 8.1). The ferrochelatase activity in oesophageal mucosa and muscularis did not differ significantly (0.68±0.08 versus 0.63±0.09 nmol h^{-1} of zinc PpIX per mg protein, $P=0.16$).

Iron concentration

The amount of iron in mucosa (1.40±0.13 μmol per g dry weight) was lower than in muscularis (2.15±0.12 μmol per g dry weight, $P<0.001$; Table 8.1).

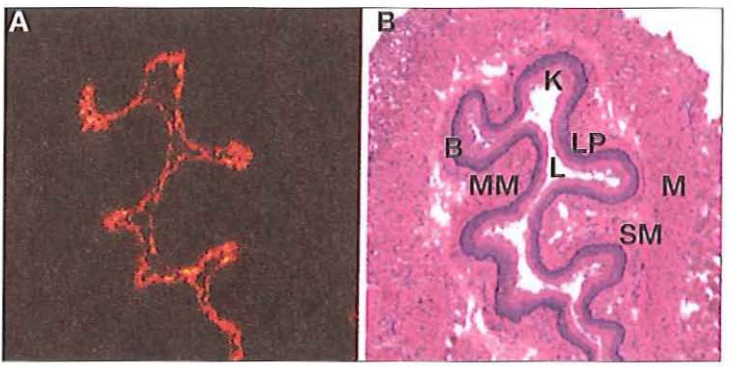


Figure 8.3 A: Laser scanning microscopic image of a frozen section (10μm) of a normal rat oesophagus 4 h after receiving intravenous phosphate-buffered saline. **B:** Light microscopic image of the same section after staining with haematoxylin and eosin. B, mucosal basal cell layer; K, keratin layer; L, lumen; LP, lamina propria; M, muscularis; MM, muscularis mucosae; SM, submucosa.

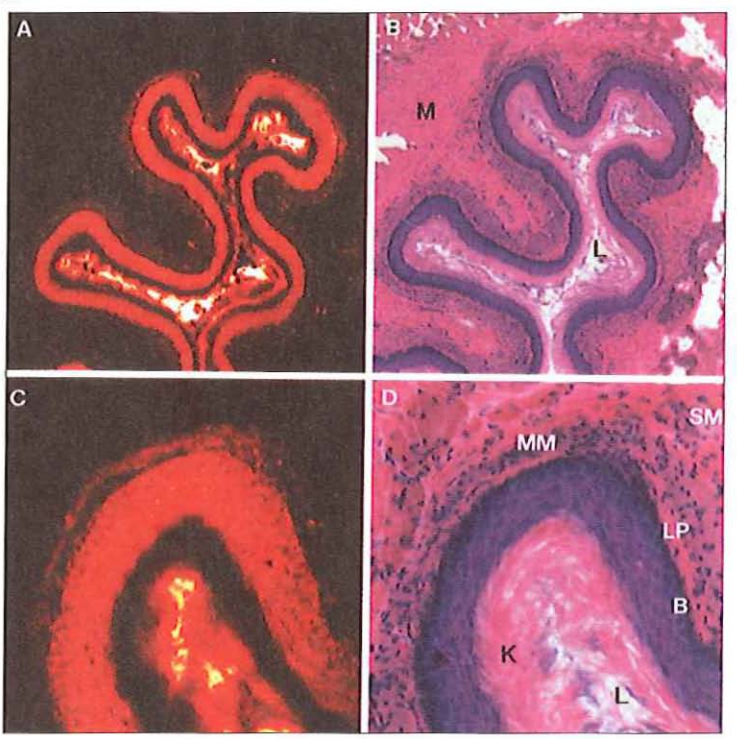


Figure 8.4 Fluorescence image (**A**) of a frozen section (10μm) of a normal rat oesophagus, 3 h after intravenous administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid (200 mg kg^{-1}), together with corresponding section stained with haematoxylin and eosin (**B**). Fluorescence image (**C**) and corresponding haematoxylin and eosin section (**D**) of the same section at higher magnification. B, mucosal basal cell layer; K, keratin layer; L, lumen; LP, lamina propria; M, muscularis; MM, muscularis mucosae; SM, submucosa.

Table 8.1 Porphobilinogen deaminase (PBGD), ferrochelatase activity, and iron concentration in oesophageal mucosa and muscularis*.

	Mucosa	Muscularis	*P*
PBGD (pmol h^{-1} of uroporphyrin per mg protein	78.29±10.77	30.72±7.47	$P<0.001$
Ferrochelatase (nmol h^{-1} of zinc PpIX per mg protein)	0.68±0.08	0.63±0.09	$P=0.16$
Iron (μmol per g dry tissue)	1.40±0.13	2.15±0.12	$P<0.001$

*Values are expressed as mean±standard error of the mean; n=10 for all groups.
PpIX=protoporphyrin IX.

Barrett's oesophagus

Eighteen weeks after oesophagojejunostomy, several histological abnormalities were observed: regenerative thickening, basal cell hyperplasia, keratin cysts, and Barrett's columnar metaplasia (Chapters 4 and 5). The Barrett's mucosa in the rat had the same histological aspect as found in man. It consisted of gastric epithelium with glands and foveolae rather than crypts and villi characteristic of jejunal mucosa. In most animals, the columnar oesophageal epithelium was not in continuum with the jejunal epithelium, but it was separated at the site of the anastomosis (marked by the sutures) by a small area lined by squamous epithelium.

Fluorescence imaging in Barrett's oesophagus

Eighteen of the 21 animals showed Barrett's oesophagus in the distal segment. In these sections, fluorescence was also restricted to the epithelium of the mucosa but had a heterogeneous aspect (Figures 8.5 and 8.6). Some areas showed strong fluorescence, others, especially some deep glands, showed considerably less, and some even no detectable fluorescence. The stromal tissue between the glands showed fluorescence near background level.

Fluorescence intensity did not depend only on the time of illumination after ALA administration but also on the histologic appearance of the columnar mucosa and the quantity of glands in particular. Highest mean fluorescence was found at 3 h after ALA administration, but the values within each animal and between animals sacrificed at the same time after ALA administration, differed considerably. Within each animal, we compared the grey values of the columnar mucosa with that of the adjacent squamous epithelium (with regenerative thickening and basal cell hyperplasia, up to 20 cell layers thick, also showing homogeneous fluorescence restricted to the epithelial layer) and the squamous epithelium in the proximal sections (3 to 5 rows of cells lining the surface).

For determination of the grey value of the columnar mucosa, all mucosal glands were included, at some places extending up to the muscularis mucosae and up to 50 rows thick with, besides epithelial cells, stromal cells. At none of the studied time points after ALA administration was the fluorescence of the Barrett's epithelium higher than that of the normal mucosa.

DISCUSSION

This study shows that, in the rat oesophagus, ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation occurs selectively in mucosa, whether squamous or Barrett's, compared to the muscularis. No selectivity of PpIX accumulation in Barrett's epithelium in favour of adjacent squamous epithelium was detected. Maximal porphyrin concentration was found at 3 h after ALA administration. A possible explanation for the selective accumulation of porphyrins is a higher ratio of porphobilinogen deaminase:ferrochelatase in the mucosa compared to the muscularis and a relatively low iron concentration.

ALA-PDT treatment for Barrett's oesophagus is, in theory, based on selective ALA-induced porphyrin production in Barrett's mucosa and a much lower production in surrounding normal mucosa.[17,27] Within each animal, we determined fluorescence in both Barrett's and adjacent squamous epithelium at several hours after ALA administration. With respect to its premalignancy, because treatment of Barrett's oesophagus requires elimination of all the columnar mucosa, we determined the grey value of the Barrett's mucosa including the deepest glands and not just of the columnar cells at the surface. No selectivity in porphyrin fluorescence of Barrett's versus adjacent normal squamous mucosa was found. Furthermore, the heterogeneity of fluorescence in Barrett's epithelium may explain why ALA-PDT for Barrett's oesophagus in clinical case reports is not always successful and may lead to pseudoregression.[16,17]

In the normal oesophageal mucosa and muscularis, we quantified porphyrin concentration with the extraction method. Although surgical excision of the mucosa is not at cellular accuracy, the standard errors of the mean were relatively small. The results obtained from the quantitative chemical extraction method and laser scanning microscopy were supplementary and show that, in normal oesophageal mucosa, a considerable amount of porphyrins accumulates. Besides the precise localizing properties, the laser scanning microscopy also provided information on (relative) porphyrin concentrations. Pilot studies (unpublished data) and results of others have indicated that the porphyrin concentration in the normal rat oesophagus after administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA is high enough to induce excessive photodynamic damage.[28]

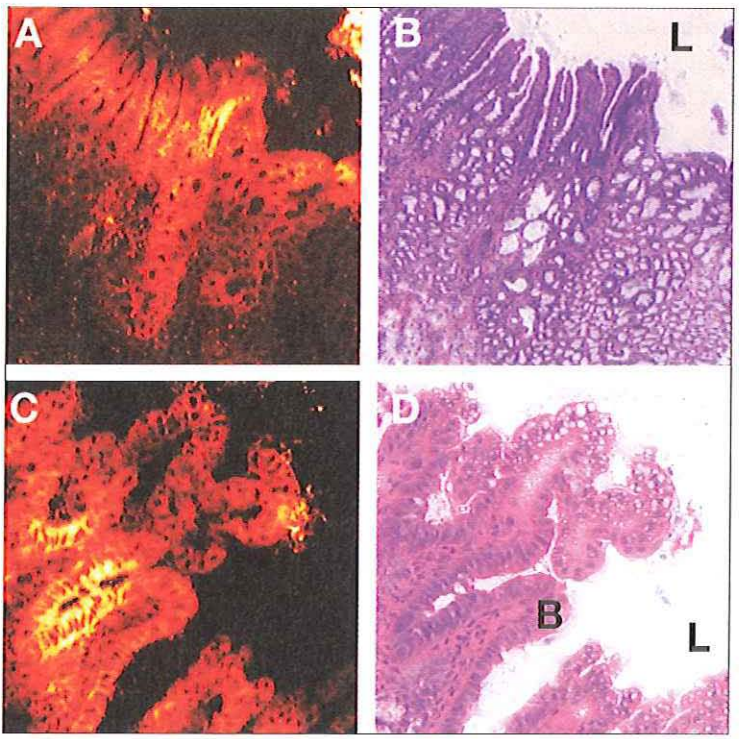


Figure 8.5 Fluorescence image (**A**) and a subsequent light microscopic image after staining with haematoxylin and eosin (**B**), of a rat oesophagus 3 h after intravenous administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid and 18 weeks after an oesophagojejunostomy, showing columnar epithelium. **C,D:** The same section at higher magnification. B, Barrett's epithelium; L, lumen.

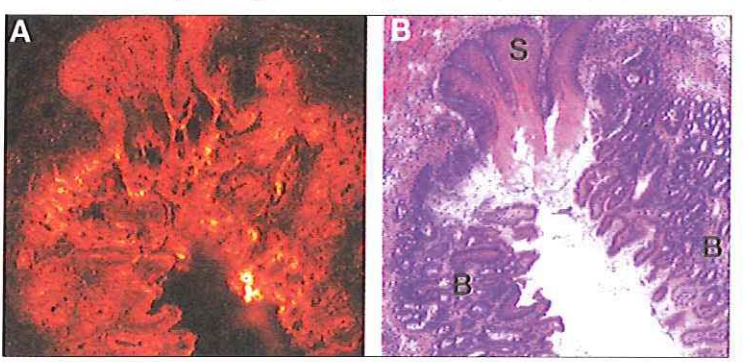


Figure 8.6 Fluorescence image (**A**) and a subsequent light microscopic image after staining with haematoxylin and eosin (**B**), of a rat oesophagus 3 h after intravenous administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid and 18 weeks after an oesophagojejunostomy. Both squamous epithelium (S) and Barrett's mucosa (B) are shown. Fluorescence of Barrett's mucosa was more heterogeneous, but fluorescence intensity did not differ between squamous and Barrett's epithelium. Fluorescence in the underlaying submucosa and muscularis was lower compared to the mucosa.

A possible mechanism for selective ALA-induced porphyrin production is that ALA uptake is higher in tissues that accumulate porphyrins.[28,29] Indeed, ALA concentration in mucosa was higher than in muscularis (significance was reached only in the p.o. group, $P=0.03$). No difference in ALA concentration in either mucosa or muscularis was seen between p.o. and i.v. routes of ALA administration. Until detailed information of cellular mechanisms of ALA uptake and efflux is obtained, the reason for ALA to accumulate selectively in specific tissue layers remains unknown.

Another reason for selective porphyrin accumulation in mucosa might be a difference in activity of the porphyrin-forming enzyme porphobilinogen deaminase and the porphyrin-converting enzyme ferrochelatase between mucosa and muscularis.[11,30,31] We found no difference in ferrochelatase activity in the mucosa versus the muscularis. However, the porphobilinogen deaminase activity was almost threefold higher in the mucosa than in the muscularis. The ratio porphobilinogen deaminase:ferrochelatase was higher and thus more advantageous for porphyrin accumulation in mucosa (1.15) than in muscularis (0.49, $P<0.001$). Previous investigations have shown that a difference in iron concentration could be an explanation for selective porphyrin accumulation in certain cells and that iron chelators could enhance ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation.[32,33] Iron is needed for formation of haem from PpIX. A relatively low iron concentration could be a limiting factor for the formation of haem when high levels of ALA are present, which may result in accumulation of PpIX. Iron concentration in the mucosa was significantly lower than in muscularis ($P<0.001$). Whether this relatively low concentration is indeed restricting for haem formation is not clear. Low iron concentration is essential for bacteriostatic and bactericidal properties in blood, lymph, and exudates.[34] For the same reason, iron concentration in epithelial lining, being the first barrier to micro-organisms, may be low. However, no other information about iron concentration in epithelial surfaces is available. Iron determination in more tissues and comparison with the level of porphyrin accumulation in these tissues is needed to further understand the role of iron.

Finally, a reason for selectivity of ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation may be a shorter cell-doubling time of tissues that accumulate high porphyrin concentrations.[32] A higher cell turnover implies a higher metabolic activity, especially a higher requirement for haem, an important component in vital respiratory pigment, and therefore a higher production of porphyrins. Although the high fluorescence of the epithelial basal cell layer could be explained by the high turnover of these cells, the fluorescence of the muscularis mucosae cannot. However, a marked similarity between the fluorescence images and corresponding haematoxylin and eosin-stained sections was noticed: strong porphyrin fluorescence was associated with intense haematoxylin staining, not only of nuclei, but also of

the cytoplasm. Further research is needed to determine the relevance of this observation.

In conclusion, ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation occurs selectively in the normal and Barrett's epithelial mucosa compared to the muscularis. Therefore, ALA-induced endogenous photosensitization seems highly suitable for PDT treatment of Barrett's oesophagus. Further clinical studies must be done to determine whether ALA-PDT radically eliminates Barrett's epithelium or whether some columnar cells remain because not all cells show porphyrin fluorescence. Probably destruction of all columnar cells requires a second course of ALA-PDT. Moreover, the normal squamous epithelium adjacent to the Barrett's epithelium accumulates porphyrins in a concentration comparable to Barrett's oesophagus. Therefore, the place of the illumination during treatment is crucial and will determine the semi-selectivity of ALA-PDT for Barrett's oesophagus. Furthermore, oral ALA administration results in the same kinetic pattern of porphyrins as intravenous administration in the rat oesophagus. Maximal porphyrin concentration in the mucosa was found at 3 h; thus, the most efficient PDT effect will be achieved with illumination at 3 h after ALA administration. However, most selective epithelial damage probably will be attained with treatment at 2 h after administration because then the ratio of porphyrin concentration between mucosa and muscularis is maximal.

REFERENCES

1. Blot WJ, Devesa SS, Kneller, Fraumeni JF. Rising incidence of adenocarcinoma of the esophagus and gastric cardia. JAMA 1991;265:1287-1289.
2. Cameron AJ, Ott BJ, Payne WS. The incidence of adenocarcinoma in columnar-lined (Barrett's) esophagus. N Engl J Med 1985;313:857-859.
3. Sampliner RE, Garewal HS, Fennerty MB, Aickin M. Lack of impact of therapy on extent of Barrett's esophagus in 67 patients. Dig Dis Sci 1990;35:93-96.
4. Sampliner RE, Hixson LJ, Fennerty B, Garewal HS. Regression of Barrett's esophagus by laser ablation in an anacid environment. Dig Dis Sci 1993;38:365-368.
5. Berenson MM, Johnson TD, Markowitz NR, Buchi KN, Samowitz WS. Restoration of squamous mucosa after ablation of Barrett's esophageal epithelium. Gastroenterology 1993;104:1686-1691.
6. Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Photodynamic therapy eliminates dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1997;112:A634.
7. Wang KK, Wong Kee Song LM, Nourbakhsh A, Balm R. Can consistent tissue necrosis be achieved during photodynamic therapy for high-grade dysplasia or cancer whithin Barrett's esophagus? Gastroenterology 1997;112:A676.
8. Dougherty TJ, Cooper MT, Mang TS. Cutaneous phototoxic occurrences in patients receiving Photophrin. Lasers Surg Med 1990;10:485-488.
9. Gomer GJ, Dougherty TJ. Determination of [^{3}H]- and [^{14}C]-hematoporphyrin derivative in malignant and normal tissue. Cancer Res 1979;39:146-151.
10. Tralau CJ, Barr H, MacRobert AJ, Bown SG. Relative merits of porphyrins and phtalocyanine sensitization for photodynamic therapy. In: Kessel D (ed). Photodynamic therapy of neoplastic disease. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1990:263-275.
11. Van Hillegersberg R, Van den Berg JWO, Kort WJ, Terpstra OT, Wilson JHP. 5-Aminolevulinic acid-induced endogenous photosensitization. Gastroenterology 1992;103:647-651.
12. Van Hillegersberg R, Kort WJ, Wilson JHP. Current status of photodynamic therapy in oncology. Drugs 1994;48:510-527.
13. Kennedy JC, Pottier RH. Endogenous protoporphyrin IX, a clinically useful photosensitizer for photodynamic therapy. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1992;14:275-292.
14. Lauka MA, Wang KK. Initial results using low-dose photodynamic therapy in the treatment of Barrett's esophagus. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;42:59-63.
15. Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Barrett's esophagus: photodynamic therapy for ablation of dysplasia, reduction of specialized mucosa, and treatment of superficial esophageal cancer. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;42:64-69.
16. Gossner L, Sroka R, May A, Rick K, Hahn EG, Ell C. Photodynamic ablation of severe dysplasia and mucosal cancer in Barrett's esophagus using 5-ALA. Gastrointest Endosc 1997;45:AB69.
17. Barr H, Shepherd NA, Dix A, Roberts DJH, Tan WC, Krasner N. Eradication of high-grade dysplasia in columnar-lined (Barrett's) oesophagus by photodynamic therapy with endogenously generated protoporphyrin IX. Lancet 1996;348:584-585.
18. Levrat M, Lambert R, Kirshbaum G. Esophagitis produced by reflux of duodenal contents in rats. Am J Dig Dis 1962;7:564-573.
19. Miwa K, Sahara H, Segawa M, Kinami S, Sato T, Miyazaki I, Hattori T. Reflux of duodenal or gastro-duodenal contents induces esophageal carcinoma in rats. Int J Cancer 1996; 67:269-274.
20. Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, de Rooij FWM, De Bruin RWF, Edixhoven-

Bosdijk A, Houtsmuller AB, Siersema PD, Wilson JHP, Tilanus HW. 5-Aminolaevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX accumulation in tissues: pharmacokinetics after oral or intravenous administration. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1998;44:29-38.
21. De Rooij FWM, Hamer CM, Wilson JHP. Purification of porphobilinogen deaminase from human erythrocytes by fast protein liquid chromatography. Clin Chim Acta 1987;162: 61-68.
22. Chisolm J, Brown DH. Micro-scale photofluoremetric determination of "free erythrocyte porphyrin" (protoporphyrin IX). Clin Chem 1975;21:1669-1682.
23. Lowry OH, Rosebrough NJ, Farr AL, Randall RJ. Protein measurement with the Folin phenol reagent. J Biol Chem 1951;193:265-275.
24. Wilson JHP, De Rooij FWM, Te Velde K. Acute intermittent porphyria in the Netherlands: heterogeneity of the enzyme porphobilinogen deaminase. Neth J Med 1986;29:393-399.
25. Li F, Lim CK, Peters TJ. An HPLC assay for rat liver ferrochelatase activity. Biomed Chromatogr 1987;2:164-168.
26. Lauber K. Determination of serum iron; a comparison of two methods: Teepol/dithionite/ bathophenan-throlin versus guanidine/ascorbic acid/Ferrozine. J Clin Chem Clin Biochem 1980;18:147-148.
27. Ackroyd R, Roberts DJH, Vernon DI, Brown NJ, Reed MWR. Photodynamic therapy for Barrett's oesophagus: a dosimetric pilot study. Br J Surg 1996;83:1637.
28. Mäkinen K, Grönlund-Pakkanen S, Tiirikainen M, Nuutinen P, Kuusisto A, Alhava E. Protoporphyrin-IX distribution and photodynamic effect in rat oesophagus after amino-laevulinic acid administration. Scand J Gastroenterol 1997;32:633-637.
29. Peng Q, Warloe T, Berg K, Moan J, Kongshaug M, Giercksky KE, Nesland JM. 5-Aminolevulinic acid-based photodynamic therapy. Clinical research and future challenges. Cancer 1997;79:2282-2308.
30. Rasseti L, Rubino GF, Drago W. Ferrochelatase, ALA-dehydrogenase and ALA-synthase activity in human tumour tissue. Panminerva Medica 1967;8:132-135.
31. Siersema PD, Wilson JHP, Edixhoven-Bosdijk A, De Rooij FWM, Tilanus HW. Increased porphobilinogen deaminase activity in pre- and malignant tissue of the esophagus. Gastrointest Oncol 1995;41:A537.
32. Linuma S, Farshi SS, Ortel B, Hasan T. A mechanistic study of cellular photodestruction with 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrin. Br J Cancer 1994;70:21-28.
33. Chang SC, MacRobert AJ, Porter JB, Bown SG. The efficacy of an iron chelator (CP94) in increasing cellular protoporphyrin IX following intravesical 5-aminolevulinic acid administration: an in vivo study. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol1997;38:114-122.
34. Ward CG, Bullen JJ, Rogers HJ. Iron and infection: new developments and their implications. J Trauma 1996;41:356-364.

Part IV

Optimization of Photodynamic Therapy

Chapter 9

Timing of Illumination is Essential for Safe and Efficient Photodynamic Therapy

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.* *British Journal of Cancer* 1999;79:825-830.

INTRODUCTION

The incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma has been rising more rapidly over the past decade than that of any other solid tumour (Chapter 1).[1] The majority of these carcinomas arises in a Barrett's oesophagus, which is characterized by metaplastic specialized columnar epithelium.[2] The development of cancer is thought to progress morphologically through low- and high-grade dysplasia, to invasive carcinoma. Oesophagus resection has been advocated for patients with high-grade dysplasia. However, this is controversial because its associated morbidity and mortality have been judged too high in context of a pre-neoplastic disease (Chapter 2).[3] A less mutilating treatment is required that would be acceptable to more patients and applicable in patients at high risk for surgery and general anaesthesia. Photodynamic therapy (PDT) could be such a treatment as it ideally causes only necrosis of the mucosa and submucosa, leaving the muscularis propria intact. Large areas of tissue can be treated and general anaesthesia is not required. PDT is a technique combining photosensitizing agents and illumination in the presence of tissue oxygen to produce photochemical tissue destruction (Chapter 3). In combination with acid suppression, PDT may lead to re-epithelialization with normal-appearing squamous epithelium. In some cases however, islands of residual columnar epithelium and thus of potentially pre-malignant cells have been described underneath regenerated squamous mucosa, so-called pseudoregression.[4,5] These therapy-resistant cells may be eliminated by improving the PDT treatment.

In this study the optimal time of illumination after administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) was determined in a rat model. The effectiveness of destroying epithelial cells as well as the possible impact on oesophageal function in the healing phase, were evaluated.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animals

The experimental protocol was approved by "The Committee on Animal Research" of the Erasmus University Rotterdam. Sixty-two male Wistar rats (Harlan CPB, Zeist, The Netherlands), weighing 275-325 grams were used. They had free access to tap water and rat chow (AM II, Hope Farms, Woerden, The Netherlands). To avoid skin lesions, animals were put in a cage in subdued light.

Experimental design

Fifty-six animals were randomly allocated to seven groups of eight animals each. In six treatment groups the animals received 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA (Sigma

Chemical Company, St Louis, MO, USA) dissolved in phosphate-buffered saline, by single oral gavage. The animals in the seventh group served as controls and received phosphate-buffered saline only. PDT was carried out under intramuscular ketamine and xylazine anaesthesia. In the six treatment groups, illumination was performed at 1, 2, 3, 4, 6 or 12 h after ALA administration. In control animals, illumination was performed at 3 h. Four rats in each group were sacrificed at 48 h after illumination to study the acute effects, as a pilot study had shown a maximum PDT effect at 48 h. The other four rats in each group were sacrificed on day 28 after illumination to study healing because, by then, a pilot study had shown complete re-epithelialization. Furthermore, that time interval was found to show full expression of stenosis after oesophageal corrosive burns.[6]

Additionally, six animals were used for separate temperature and pressure measurements and were sacrificed 48 h after the procedure.

Light delivery

A balloon catheter (PTA Balloon Catheter Opta 5, Cordis, Roden, The Netherlands) was used to deliver homogeneous and circumferential light to the oesophagus.[7] The device consisted of a semiflexible catheter and an inflatable cylindric optically clear balloon (length 20 mm; outside diameter 3.5 mm inflated with 0.4 ml air) attached to the distal end of the catheter (Figure 9.1). A 400-μm fiber with a 10-mm length cylindrical diffusing tip of 760 μm diameter (Lightstic 360, Rare Earth Medical Inc, West Yarmouth, MA, USA) was placed exactly in the centre of the balloon and thus centrally in the oesophagus.

Light of 633 nm (600 Series Dye Module pumped by KTP/532 laser, Laserscope, San Jose, CA, USA) was transmitted through the fiber. A spectroscope (WaveMate, Coherent, Auburn, CA, USA) was used to verify the accuracy of the laser wavelength. The output power emitted by the fiber tip, 100 mW, was calibrated and measured before and after treatment by the built-in power meter of the dye laser.

Illumination was performed with a radiant energy of 25 J, giving an incident light dose of approximately 22.7 J per cm^2 tissue surface (area of a 1-cm long, 3.5-mm diameter cylinder).

Fluorescence and dosimetry

True light fluence (J cm^{-2}) and protoporphyrin IX (PpIX) fluorescence spectra were monitored during illumination at 15 s interval with a spherical isotropic probe of 800 μm diameter (Rare Earth Medical inc., West Yarmouth, MA, USA), which was positioned halfway along the cylindrical diffuser and pressed against the oesophageal wall by the balloon catheter (Figure 9.1). The distal fibre end was led to a 50/50% beam splitter (Rare Earth Medical inc., West Yarmouth, MA, USA)

to transport part of the light to a light dose meter and the other part to an optical multichannel analyser system (Multispec 77400 spectrometer + Instaspec-IV 77131 CCD-camera, Oriel Instruments, CT, USA) with a built-in combined 630 nm notch plus 665 nm long wavelength pass filter to block the laser light (Figure 9.1). The response of the isotropic probe was calibrated for true fluence rate measurements using an integrating sphere with a homogeneous diffuse light field.[8]

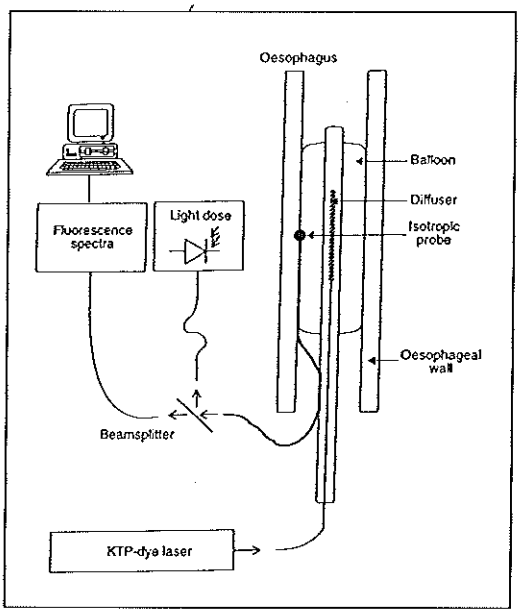


Figure 9.1 Experimental set-up for oesophagus photodynamic therapy facilitating a homogeneous illumination and real-time measurements of the true light fluence rate and protoporphyrin IX fluorescence spectra. Illumination parameters: 1 cm cylindrical diffuser, 25 J radiant energy, power output 100 mW.

Recorded *in vivo* fluorescence spectra were normalized by dividing them by the fluence rate, which was simultaneously recorded by the light dose meter. This yields, in first order approximation, spectra that are corrected for different tissue optical properties, geometrical aberrations and different output power of the cylindrical diffuser. Next, the mean normal tissue autofluorescence spectrum measured in the control group was subtracted from the fluorescence spectra measured in the animals with oral ALA administration. The remaining PpIX fluorescence peak was integrated over a 15-nm range resulting in a number that is a measure for the average local PpIX concentration.

Measurement of temperature and pressure effect

To monitor the thermal effects of the procedure, temperature was measured

every 10 s in three rats during illumination at 3 h after administration of ALA. Three thermal probes (SMM probe for model 790 fluoroptic thermometer, Luxtron, Santa Clara, CA, USA) were placed, either in the suprahepatic space or supragastric space next to the oesophagus, or in the oesophagus between the inflated balloon and the oesophageal wall.

The effect of pressure from the inflated balloon was studied by histological examination of the oesophagus of three rats, 48 h after a sham procedure in which the balloon was inflated during 250 s without illumination and without previous ALA administration.

Analysis of tissue damage

In rats sacrificed 48 h after PDT, the oesophagus with a small piece of stomach was removed. The oesophagus was opened longitudinally, the circumference at the laser site was measured and the macroscopic and microscopic appearance were noted. Thereafter the oesophagus was curled up from distal to proximal, fixed in formalin, sectioned and stained with haematoxylin and eosin for conventional light microscopy. Damage was scored quantitatively on a scale from 0 to 3 for each separate esophageal layer by a pathologist who was not aware of the performed treatment. Oedema of the submucosa and serosa was scored based on the thickness of the submucosa (-, normal; +, 2 times thicker than normal; ++, 3-5 times thicker; +++, ≥5 times thicker). Inflammation of the submucosa, muscularis propria and serosa was scored on the basis of the amount of inflammatory cells (mostly lymphocytes) using a grid (-, none; +, <1 per grid; ++, 1-2 per grid; +++, ≥3 per grid). The severity of the necrosis of the muscularis propria was scored on basis of the presence of vital muscle cells (-, 100%; +, >75%; ++, >25%; +++, ≤25%). In rats sacrificed at day 28 after PDT, a barium oesophagogram under intramuscular ketamine (60 mg kg^{-1}) and xylazine (2.5 mg kg^{-1}) anaesthesia was performed before sacrifice to diagnose stenotic changes and dilatations. Thereafter, rats were sacrificed and the oesophagus was taken out, opened longitudinally and the circumference was measured at 0.5-cm intervals. Apart from the haematoxylin and eosin staining, the sections were stained with anti-S-100 (labels Schwann cells of the peripheral nervous system) to investigate possible changes in nerve tissue.[9] The number of anti-S-100 positive areas along the oesophagus was scored using a grid. Thereafter the average number of anti-S-100 positive areas at the laser site and at the non-laser site was compared with oesophageal diameter on the oesophagogram.

Statistical analysis

The values are expressed as mean ± standard error of the mean (SEM). Comparisons of oesophageal circumference, diameter on oesophagogram, weight

and fluorescence intensity were made using Student's *t*-test. Comparison of weight was controlled by the Mann-Whitney *U*-test. Spearman's rank order correlation for anti-S-100 staining against oesophageal diameter was used to analyse the relation between nerve damage and oesophageal diameter. A difference was considered to be significant at P values of <0.05.

RESULTS

One animal (illuminated at 3 h after ALA administration) died of anaesthesia during illumination. One animal (illuminated at 6 h after ALA administration) died at day 7 after PDT of oesophageal necrosis and perforation.

Temperature and pressure effects

Temperature of the suprahepatic and supragastric space maximally rose 0.6°C to a maximum of 36.7°C. The temperature in the oesophagus maximally rose 1.2°C to a maximum of 37.1°C. Histological analysis of the oesophagi of the rats after sham balloon insufflation procedure showed no abnormalities.

Tissue fluorescence

The *in vivo* fluorescence spectrum recorded in rats after administration of ALA showed the PpIX-specific fluorescence peak at 705 nm, and was virtually the same as in the *in vitro* fluorescence of PpIX dissolved in Triton (2 nmol ml^{-1}) measured under the same conditions (Figure 9.2).

The PpIX peak at 635 nm interferes with the illumination light (633 nm) and is blocked by the long wavelength pass filter. Besides the typical 705 nm PpIX fluorescence peak, an additional 680 nm peak was observed in five animals (one control, one at 1 h, one at 3 h, and two at 4 h after ALA administration), probably due to mucus, food components or bacteria (Figure 9.2). Largest initial PpIX fluorescence was observed in the group illuminated at 3 h after ALA administration (Figure 9.3).

Rats illuminated at 1, 6 or 12 h after ALA administration showed a significantly smaller initial fluorescence peak ($P<0.01$, $P<0.02$, and $P<0.02$, respectively) compared to values at 3 h, whereas animals illuminated at 2 or 4 h after ALA administration did not differ significantly ($P=0.07$ and $P=0.2$, respectively). Fluorescence intensity declined with illumination time to intensities of around background level after 150 s in the groups illuminated at 1, 6 or 12 h after ALA administration. In the other treatment groups, fluorescence was still declining at the end of illumination.

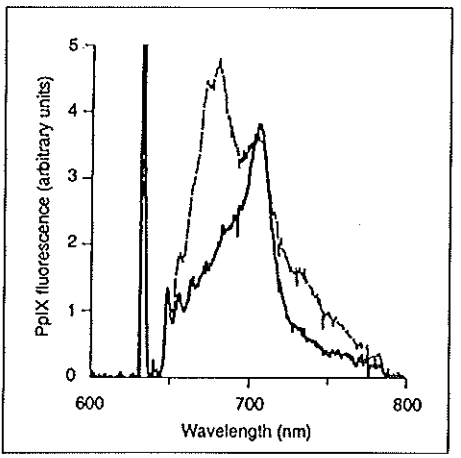


Figure 9.2 Typical protoporphyrin IX fluorescence (solid line) with a peak at 705 nm and anomalous fluorescence with a peak at 680 nm observed in five animals (dashed line). Spectra are corrected for the normal tissue auto-fluorescence.

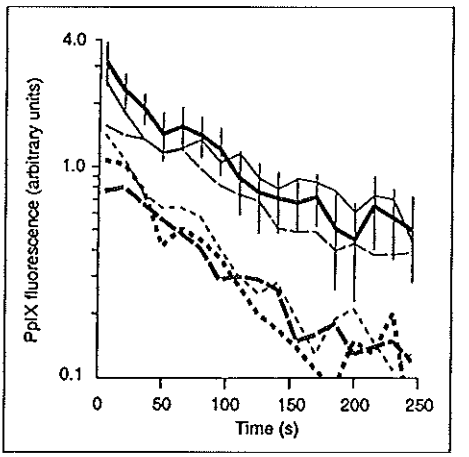


Figure 9.3 Mean integrated protoporphyrin IX fluorescence at 705 nm during optical irradiation. The error bars are standard errors of the mean and are indicative of the inter animal variation (n=8 for each group). Time of illumination after 5-aminolevulinic acid administration: 1 h (▬ ▬), 2 h (— —), 3 h (▬▬), 4 h (——), 6 h (- - -) and 12 h (– – –).

Dosimetry

During optical irradiation, the true fluence rate was on average 3.0±0.1 (mean±SEM, n=56) times higher than the incident non-scattered irradiation, with a minimum of 1.4 and a maximum of 4.1.

Histopathological changes 48 h after PDT

On microscopic examination, no abnormalities were seen in control animals (Table 9.1). Diffuse loss of epithelium in all animals was only seen in the group illuminated at 2 h after ALA administration. In this group, full thickness necrosis with acute inflammatory cell infiltration and diffuse swelling of the submucosa was observed. The epithelial damage was almost complete; however, some patches with one layer of epithelial cells were found, showing mitotic activity (Figure 9.4).

In the groups illuminated at 3, 4 or 6 h after ALA administration, loss of epithelium was only seen in one of four animals. In the other three, the epithelial layer was normal, with different degrees of submucosal oedema and inflammation and necrosis of the muscularis (Figure 9.4). Illumination at 1 or 12 h after ALA administration did not cause any epithelial lesions.

Table 9.1 Histopathological changes of the oesophageal wall at 48 h after 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA)-mediated photodynamic therapy in different treatment groups (n=4 for all groups).

Illumination time after ALA (h)	loss of epithelium (n)	submucosa		muscularis propria		serosa	
		oedema	inflam	inflam	necrosis	oedema	inflam
control	0	—	—	—	—	—	—
1	0	+	+	+	—	—	—
2	4	+++	++	+++	+++	+++	+
3	1	+++	+	+++	+++	++	++
4	1	++	++	++	+	+	+++
6	1	+	++	+	—	++	++
12	0	—	—	—	—	++	++

Treatment parameters: 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA, 1 cm cylindrical diffuser, 25 J radiant energy, 100 mW power output. Inflam = inflammation. Changes within layers: -, none; +, mild; ++, moderate; +++, severe (see materials and methods section).

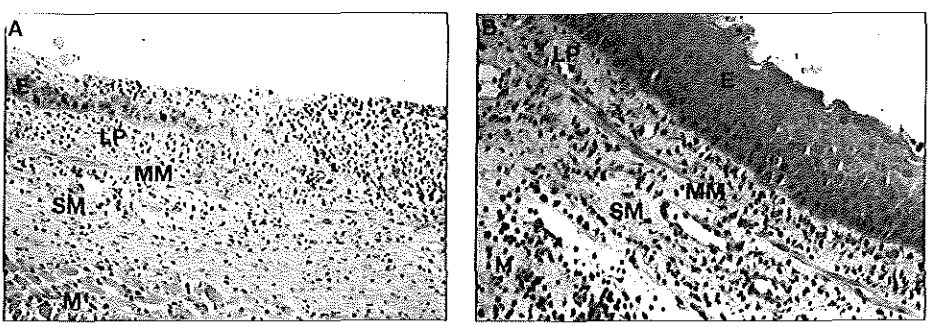


Figure 9.4 Histopathological section of the rat oesophagus at the laser site 48 h after photodynamic therapy with illumination at 2 h (A) and at 3 h (B) after administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid. E, epithelium; LP, lamina propria; M, muscularis propria; MM, muscularis mucosae; SM, submucosa (x 40, haematoxylin and eosin stain).

Histological and radiological changes 28 days after PDT

Twenty-eight days after illumination, four of 11 rats treated at 4, 6 or 12 h after ALA administration had lost more than 30% of their original weight (Table 9.2). However, no statistically significant difference in the groups illuminated at 4 or 12 h was reached because of large variations in gaining weight. In both groups, one animal lost and one animal gained considerable weight (4 h, loss 154 g and gain 59 g; 12 h, loss 102 g and gain 77 g). Weight in these four animals correlated negatively with the oesophageal circumference (4 h, -154 g/12 mm oesophageal circumference and +59 g/9 mm; 12 h, -102 g/11 mm and +77 g/7 mm).

None of the animals showed any strictures on the oesophagogram. The oesophagus was significantly dilated at the laser site in all animals ($P < 0.02$) except

in the group treated at 1 h after ALA administration (Figure 9.5). Almost a doubling of the circumference at the laser site was found in the groups treated at 4, 6 or 12 h ($P<0.02$) (Table 9.2).

Table 9.2 Circumference and diameter of the oesophagus at the laser site and weight gain of the rats at 28 days after photodynamic therapy (n=3 for groups illuminated at 3 and 6 h, n=4 for the other groups).

Illumination time after ALA (h)	circumference in mm±SEM	diameter on radiograph in mm±SEM	weight gain in g±SEM
control	4.3±0.3	3.3±0.2	80±5
1	4.5±0.3	3.5±0.2	74±5
2	5±0.3	4.3±0.2*	50±4*
3	5.7±0.3*	5.1±0.2*	65±2*
4	10.3±0.8*	6.4±0.3*	-2±51
6	10±1.7*	6.0±0.8*	-32±38*
12	10±1.1*	6.3±0.4*	5±39

*P value <0.05 compared to the control group, SEM=standard error of the mean.
Treatment parameters: 200 mg kg^{-1} 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA), 1 cm cylindrical diffuser, 25 J radiant energy, 100 mW power output.

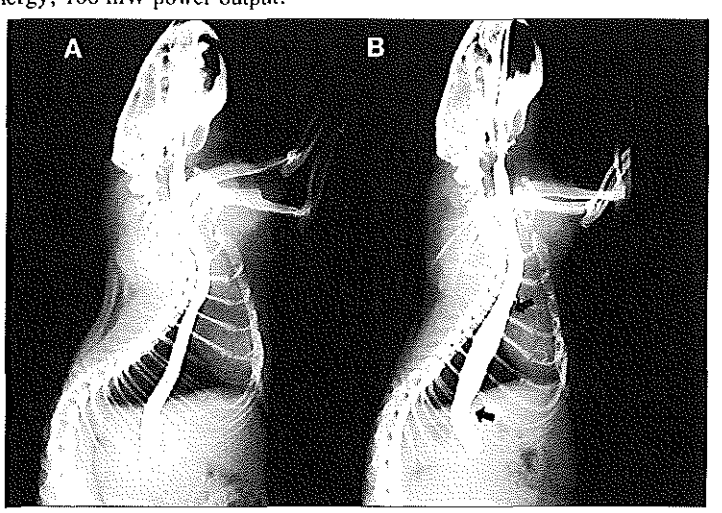


Figure 9.5 Oesophagogram at 28 days after 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) mediated photodynamic therapy: (A) illumination at 1 h after ALA, (B) illumination at 12 h after ALA. In rat A, no dilatations nor strictures were seen. In rat B, the oesophagus was dilated at the laser site with a doubling of the diameter. Arrows indicate the site of laser treatment.

Microscopic examination showed complete re-epithelialization and a normal appearing submucosa, muscularis and serosa in all groups. Oesophageal diameter

on the oesophagogram was significantly negatively correlated with the intensity of Schwann cell staining (anti-S-100) at the laser site (P=0.02, r=-0.56) (Figures 9.6 and 9.7). No correlation was found between the intensity of Schwann cell staining and diameter at the non-laser site (P=0.39, r=-0.17).

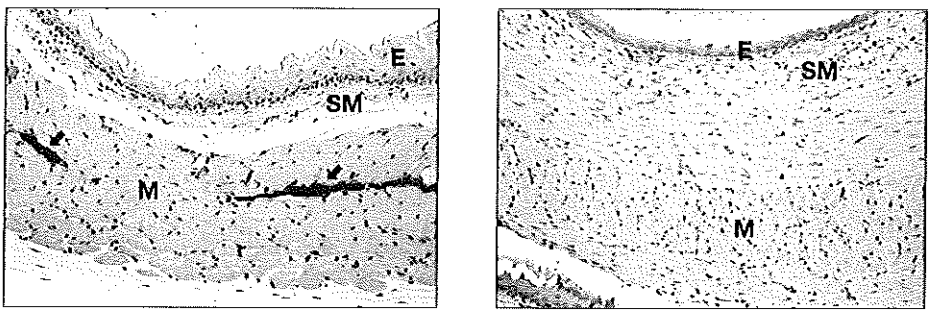


Figure 9.6 Nerve tissue staining at the non-laser site (A) and at the laser site (B), 28 days after photodynamic therapy with illumination at 12 h after administration of 5-aminolevulinic acid. Arrows indicate the myenteric plexus, E, epithelium; M, muscularis propria; SM, submucosa (x 40, anti-S-100 stain).

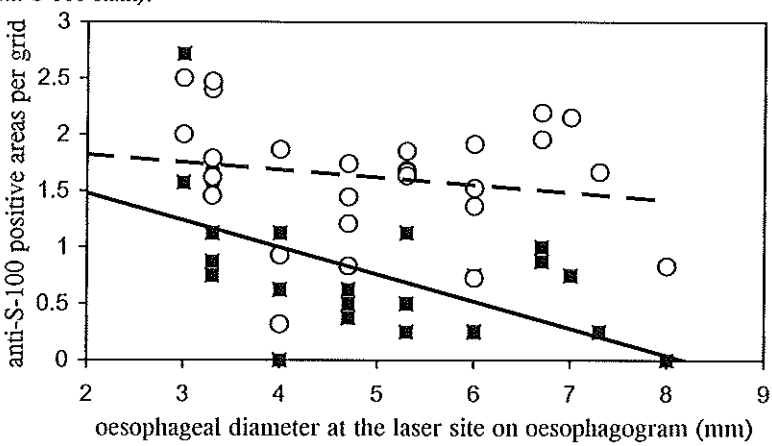


Figure 9.7 Anti-S-100 staining at the laser site (■) and non-laser site (○) versus oesophageal diameter at the laser site on oesophagogram, together with the corresponding trendlines at the laser site (solid line) (P=0.02, r=-0.56), and at the non-laser site (dashed line) (P=0.39, r=-0.17).

Discussion

This study considers the efficacy and safety of ALA-PDT of the normal rat oesophagus. Maximal efficacy was found when rats were treated 2 h after oral administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA. Illumination at 4, 6 or 12 h after ALA administration caused oesophageal dilatation, functional impairment and weight loss.

In a previous study, we found that, after oral administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA, ALA-induced fluorescence of PpIX in the normal rat oesophagus was located almost exclusively in the basal cell layer of the oesophageal epithelium (Chapter 8).[10] Fluorescence of the submucosa and muscularis propria was near background level. We therefore expected to find selective damage to the epithelial layer only. Diffuse destruction of the epithelium in all animals was found only in the group treated 2 h after ALA administration. Even in this group, small areas of epithelial cells showing mitotic activity remained after treatment. It is not clear whether the epithelium in these areas indicates re-epithelialization or incomplete epithelial damage, which may lead to pseudoregression as observed in clinical situations.[4,5] The present illumination schemes were chosen, based on results from pilot studies, with the aim of achieving a range of biological responses (mild to severe damage). Further alterations in the illumination schedule may possibly eliminate these remaining areas of viable epithelium. For example, a longer illumination time in the groups treated at 2 to 4 h could still increase the PDT effect because significant PpIX fluorescence was present at the end of illumination (Figure 9.3). Furthermore, adjustment of the power output, or fractionated illumination, may improve the efficacy of PDT.[11,12]

In the groups illuminated at 1, 3, 4, 6 or 12 h after ALA, the oesophageal epithelium was mostly completely intact. However, in different degrees, damage to the submucosa, muscularis and serosa was always present (Table 9.1). One explanation for this damage pattern is that the photodynamic threshold (tissue photosensitizer concentration x true light dose) to induce necrosis is lower for muscle than for epithelium.[13] One reason for that could be a difference in sensitivity to oxygen-radicals (the damaging agents formed during PDT) between epithelium and muscularis. Several studies have suggested that muscle tissue is particularly prone to oxygen radical-mediated cell membrane damage.[14] Non-protein sulphydryls in the epithelium are capable of binding free radicals, and rapid cell turn over and the process of restitution contribute to an intact epithelial lining.[15] Another explanation for the observed muscle damage could be a high production rate of haemoglobin and myoglobin in muscle. As part of this fast dynamic process, only few of the intermediates between ALA and haem will accumulate. This may lead to a low level of the intermediate PpIX and hence of a low fluorescence intensity on point fluorescence measurement. However, this may be translated into a high cumulative level of PpIX during PDT, resulting in a high production rate of singlet oxygen.

Although we found extensive damage to the submucosa and muscle, at long-term we did not find any strictures. However, severe dilatations occurred in all rats treated 4, 6 or 12 h after ALA administration. This phenomenon could be explained by muscle fibre necrosis, a peripheral neuropathy or a combination of both. Muscle

fiber necrosis seems unlikely as at 48 h after PDT muscle damage was most pronounced in the groups illuminated at 2 and 3 h after ALA administration. In this study, a significant relation between the absence of anti-S-100 staining and oesophageal dilatation at the treatment site was found, indicating nerve tissue damage in the myenteric plexus at the laser site. This may be caused by a relative late production of PpIX in nerve tissue, predominantly in Schwann cells rather than in nerve cells.[16] Furthermore, the brain and nervous system are considered to be more susceptible to oxidative damage than other tissues due to their high content of polyunsaturated lipid-rich neural parenchyma, high oxygen consumption, and low content of scavengers.[17] From an electron microscopic study of the normal mouse skin, it appeared that, besides endothelial cells and fibroblasts, nerve fibers are most sensitive to photodynamic therapy (using haematoporphyrin derivative).[18]

This study confirms earlier studies by Murrer *et al.* and Van Staveren *et al.*, i.e. that the true fluence rate in hollow organs is larger than the calculated incident fluence rate due to the strong light scattering nature of tissue.[19,20] In a clinical setting, real-time light dosimetry and PpIX fluorescence measurements may be used to refine the PDT treatment by delivering equal light doses to different areas and monitoring PpIX levels to determine the duration of the illumination.

In conclusion, our results show that both the effectiveness and safety of ALA-PDT treatment for oesophageal lesions largely depend on the time between ALA administration and illumination. Further improvement of the illumination parameters leading to complete epithelial destruction is needed before it can be used as therapy for Barrett's oesophagus in clinical practice.

REFERENCES

1. Blot WJ, Devesa SS, Kneller RW, Fraumeni JF Jr. Rising incidence of adenocarcinoma of the esophagus and gastric cardia. JAMA 1991;65:1287-1289.
2. Cameron AJ, Lomboy CT, Pera M, Carpenter HA. Adenocarcinoma of the esophagogastric junction and Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1995;109:1541-1546.
3. Wang KK. Barrett's esophagus: current and future management. Compr Ther 1994;20:36-43.
4. Laukka MA, Wang KK. Initial results using low-dose photodynamic therapy in the treatment of Barrett's esophagus. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;42:59-63.
5. Barr H, Sheperd NA, Roberts DJH, Tan WC, Krasner N. Eradication of high-grade dysplasia in columnar-lined (Barrett's) oesophagus by photodynamic therapy with endogenously generated protoporphyrin IX. The Lancet 1996;348:584-585.
6. Berthet B, DiConstanzo J, Arnaud C, Choux R, Assadourian R. Influence of epidermal growth factor and interferon γ on healing of oesophageal corrosive burns in the rat. Br J Surg 1994;81:395-398.
7. Panjehpour M, Overholt BF, DeNovo RC, Petersen MG, Sneed RE. Comparative study between pulsed and continuous wave lasers for Photofrin photodynamic therapy. Lasers Surg Med 1993;13:296-304.
8. Van Staveren HJ, Marijnissen JPA, Aalders MCG, Star WM. Construction, quality assurance and calibration of spherical isotropic fibre optic light diffusers. Lasers Med Sci 1995;10:137-147.
9. Nada O, Kawana T. Immunohistochemical identification of supportive cell types in the enteric nervous system of the rat colon and rectum. Cell Tissue Res 1988;251:523-529.
10. Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Houtsmuller AB, Siersema PD, De Bruin RWF, Tilanus HW. PDT of Barrett's oesophagus: kinetics and localization of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrin accumulation in the rat oesophagus. Proc SPIE 1997;3191:214-220.
11. Messmann H, Milkvy P, Buonaccorsi G, Davies CL, MacRobert AJ, Bown SG. Enhancement of photodynamic therapy with 5-aminolaevulinic acid-induced porphyrin photosensitisation in normal rat colon by threshold and light fractionation studies. Br J Cancer 1995;72:589-594.
12. Robinson DJ, De Bruijn HS, Van der Veen N, Stringer MR, Brown SB, Star WM. Fluorescence photobleaching of ALA-induced protoporphyrin IX during photodynamic therapy of normal hairless mouse skin: the effect of light dose and irradiance and the resulting biological effect. Photochem Photobiol 1998;67:140-149.
13. Cowled PA, Forbes IJ. Phototoxicity in vivo of heamatoporphyrin derivative components. Cancer Lett 1985;28:111-118.
14. Jackson MJ, O'Farrell S. Free radicals and muscle damage. Br Med Bull 1993;49:630-641.
15. Forssell H. Gastric mucosal defence mechanisms: a brief review. Scand J Gastroenterol Suppl 1988;155:23-28.
16. Whetsell WO, Sassa S, Bickers D, Kappas A. Studies on porphyrin-heme biosynthesis in organotypic cultures of chicken dorsal root ganglion: I. Observations on neuronal and non-neuronal elements. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 1978;37:497-507.
17. Urano S, Asai Y, Makabe S, Matsuo M, Izumiyama N, Ohtsubo K, Endo T. Oxidative injury of synapse and alteration of antioxidative defense systems in rats, and its prevention by vitamine E. Eur J Biochem1997;245:64-70.
18. Zhou CN, Yang WZ, Ding ZX, Wang YX, Shen H, Fan XJ, Ha XW. The biological effects of photodynamic therapy on normal skin in mice. An electron microscopic study. Adv Exp Med Biol 1985;193:111-115.
19. Murrer LHP, Marijnissen JPA, Baas P, Van Zandwijk N, Star WM. Applicator for light delivery and in situ light dosimetry during endobronchial photodynamic therapy: first measurements in humans. Lasers Med Sci 1997;12:253-259.
20. Van Staveren HJ, Beek JF, Ramaekers JWH, Keijzer M, Star WM. Integrating sphere effect in whole bladder wall photodynamic therapy: I. 532 nm versus 630 nm optical irradiation. Phys Med Biol 1994;39:947-959.

Chapter 10

Photodynamic Therapy for Oesophageal Lesions: Selectivity Depends on Wavelength, Power and Light Dose

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.* *Annals of Thoracic Surgery* 1999;68:1764-1770.

INTRODUCTION

Since 1970 the incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma has increased, both in Europe and in the United States, at a rate greater than that of any other malignancy.[1] Barrett's epithelial metaplasia is a premalignant condition that causes a 30- to 50-fold greater risk of oesophageal adenocarcinoma (Chapter 1).[2] The current treatment option for patients with Barrett's oesophagus with high-grade dysplasia or oesophageal adenocarcinoma is oesophageal resection (Chapter 2). For Barrett's oesophagus with high-grade dysplasia, however, this treatment is controversial because the mortality and morbidity associated with oesophageal resection is judged to be too high for premalignant lesions.[3] 5-Aminolevulinic acid (ALA)-induced protoporphyrin IX (PpIX)-mediated photodynamic therapy (PDT) is an experimental therapy for Barrett's oesophagus. Pharmacokinetic studies showed selective PpIX fluorescence in oesophageal mucosa (squamous or Barrett's) compared with submucosa and muscularis after ALA administration (Chapter 8).[4,5] Wavelength-dependent activation of accumulated PpIX ideally selectively destroys the Barrett's epithelium. In clinical studies, ALA-PDT has been shown to eliminate Barrett's epithelium followed by re-epithelialization with squamous epithelium.[6,7] However, incomplete ablation leading to remaining islands of residual Barrett's epithelium underneath regenerated squamous epithelium has been described.[6,7]

The present study aimed to find illumination parameters for selective and complete epithelial damage by varying the power output and total light dose applied. A pharmakokinetic study (Chapter 8) showed similar ALA-induced photosensitization in squamous and Barrett's epithelium, so the normal rat oesophagus was chosen to compare lesions in a standardized and reproducible model.[4] Because PDT damage to the underlying muscle layer or nerve tissue has been found to result in oesophageal dilatation (previous chapter), we compared 633 nm light with 532 nm light, which penetrates tissue less deeply.[8,9] In addition, fluorescence was measured during illumination and light dosimetry was done.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animals

The experimental protocol was approved by "The Committee on Animal Research" of the Erasmus University Rotterdam. Seventy male Wistar rats (Harlan CPB, Zeist, The Netherlands), weighing 250-300 grams, were used. They had free access to tap water and rat chow (AM II, Hope Farms, Woerden, The Netherlands). Photodynamic therapy was done using intramuscular ketamine and xylazine anaesthesia.

Experimental design

The animals were randomly allocated to two groups of 35 animals each. In each group illumination was done with either 633 nm or 532 nm light. In both groups, 30 animals received 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA (Sigma Chemical Company, St. Louis, MO, USA) dissolved in phosphate-buffered saline to a volume of 1 ml in one oral gavage directly into the stomach. In both groups, animals were allocated to six groups of five animals each. Illumination was done at 3 h after ALA administration, with either 8.3 or 25 J per cm diffuser length applied with 33, 100 or 300 mW per cm diffuser length. Control animals (n=5 in both 633 nm and 532 nm light group) received phosphate-buffered saline orally and were illuminated 3 h thereafter with 300 mW and 25 J. Animals were sacrificed at 48 h after PDT.

Photodynamic therapy treatment conditions

To deliver homogeneous and circumferential light to the oesophagus, a custom made optically clear double-lumen balloon catheter (PTA Balloon Catheter Opta 5, Cordis, Roden, The Netherlands) was used (length 20 mm, diameter 3.5 mm when inflated with 0.4 ml air), with the lumen for the laser fibre exactly in the centre.[8] Light was transmitted through a 400 μm fibre with a 10 mm long cylindrical diffusing tip of 760 μm in diameter (Lightstic 360, Rare Earth Medical Inc, West Yarmouth, MA, USA). When the balloon catheter and diffuser were used as described, the illuminated area was 1.1 cm^2. Fluence and fluence rates in the present study are expressed per cm diffuser length (and thus per 1.1 cm^2 surface area). Illumination with 633 nm was done with a dye laser, Model 630 (600 Series Dye Module, Laserscope, San Jose, CA, USA), pumped by a KTP/532 surgical laser (Laserscope, San Jose, CA, USA). The power emitted was calibrated with a built-in power meter and could not be tuned below 100 mW. Adjustment of 33 mW was achieved by placing neutral density filters in the light path between the output port of the laser and the fibre of the linear diffuser.

The application of 532 nm was done with the KTP/532 laser. With a linear diffuser, the built-in power meter of the KTP laser could not be used and so the power emitted was measured with an integrating sphere (Optometer Model 370, Graseby Optronics, Orlando, FL, USA). Each desired output power could be achieved by using neutral density filters. A spectroscope (WaveMate, Coherent, Auburn, CA, USA) was used to verify the accuracy of the wavelength in both groups.

Fluorescence and dosimetry

True light fluence and PpIX spectra were monitored during PDT at 15 s intervals. A spherical isotropic probe of 800 μm in diameter (Rare Earth Medical inc., West Yarmouth, MA, USA) was positioned halfway between the balloon and

the oesophageal surface. Its distal fibre end led to a 50/50% beam splitter (Rare Earth Medical inc., West Yarmouth, MA, USA), transporting part of the light to a light dose meter and the other part to an optical multi-channel analyzer system (Multispec 77400 spectrometer + Intstaspec-IV 77131 CCD-camera, Oriel Instruments, CT, USA) with built-in a combined 630 nm notch plus 665 nm long wavelength pass filter during 633 nm illumination, and a 570 nm long wavelength pass filter during 532 nm irradiation. The response of the isotropic probe was calibrated for true fluence rate measurements using an integrating sphere with a homogeneous diffuse light field.[10]

The mean autofluorescence measured in control animals was subtracted from the recorded spectra and the remaining PpIX fluorescence peak (at 705 nm using 633 nm light and at 635 nm using 532 nm light) was integrated over a 30 nm range. Values are given relative to the start value, which was set to 1.

Histology

Animals were sacrificed at 48 h after PDT. After inspection of the thoracic and abdominal cavity, the oesophagus with a small piece of stomach was dissected and opened longitudinally. The width at the laser-site was measured and the oesophageal appearance noted. The oesophagus was curled up from distal to proximal, fixed in formalin, sectioned and stained with haematoxylin and eosin for conventional light microscopy. Damage was scored semi-quantitatively on a scale from 0 to 3 for each separate oesophageal layer by two investigators, masked to the treatment (Table 10.1).

Table 10.1 Histological scoring system for oesophageal damage at the laser site.

oesophageal layer	damage score			
	0	1	2	3
epithelium	normal	>1 cell layer left	1 cell layer left	complete ablation
submucosa				
oedema	no	2 x thicker	3-5 x thicker	>5 x thicker
inflammation	0 inflam cell/grid	<1inflam cell/grid	1-2 inflam cells/grid	>2 inflam cells/grid
muscularis propria				
inflammation	0 inflam cell/grid	<1inflam cell/grid	1-2 inflam cells/grid	>2 inflam cells/grid
necrosis	100% vital muscle	>75% vital muscle	25-75 % vital muscle	<25% vital muscle

Inflam cells = inflammatory cells (mostly leukocytes).

Additionally, a selectivity factor (SF) for epithelial damage was introduced. The SF is defined as the epithelial damage score divided by the muscular damage score (muscular damage score = (muscular necrosis + muscular inflammation)/2).

Statistical analysis

Fluorescence intensity, true fluence rates and damage scores are expressed as mean ± standard error of the mean (SEM). Comparisons were made using Student's *t*-test. A difference was considered to be significant at *P* values less than <0.05.

RESULTS

All animals survived until sacrifice. No abnormalities were seen in the thoracic cavity at autopsy. In the 633 nm light group at all doses with 100 and 300 mW, a white spot (10 to 25 mm^2) was apparent on the cranial surface of the liver next to the oesophagus. In animals treated with 33 mW 633 nm light, a smaller (1 to 5 mm^2) white spot was apparent on the liver in seven of 10 animals (two in the 8.3 J and five in the 25 J group). In controls and animals treated with 532 nm light, no macroscopic liver abnormalities were observed.

Fluorescence

When PpIX fluorescence was plotted versus illumination time, fluorescence in the 633 nm group declined faster when a higher power output was used (Figure 10.1A). When fluorescence was plotted versus the applied energy, fluorescence was increasingly bleached with decreasing output power (Figure 10.1B). When 33, 100 or 300 mW 633 nm light was used, PpIX fluorescence after 8.3 J was not fully bleached because fluorescence after 25 J was significantly lower than after 8.3 J ($P=0.01$, $P=0.04$ and $P=0.002$, respectively). The inversed fluorescence versus the applied energy shows a linear relationship (Figure 10.1C) as was found previously by Robinson *et al.*[11] The slope of the straight lines is a measure for the bleaching rate (with respect to the applied energy). The slopes of the 33, 100 and 300 mW lines differed significantly ($P<0.02$) and were 0.106 ± 0.005, 0.083 ± 0.005, and 0.046 ± 0.005 J^{-1}, respectively.

In the 532 nm groups, PpIX fluorescence versus illumination time declined fastest with 300 mW output (data not shown). The fluorescence after 25 J was significantly lower than after 8.3 J for the 100 and 300 mW groups ($P=0.03$ and $P=0.04$ respectively). Fluorescence intensity after long illumination (25 J) with 33 mW did not differ from the intensity after short illumination (8.3 J) ($P=0.11$). Again, for a certain energy applied, the fluorescence was bleached most for the lowest output power.

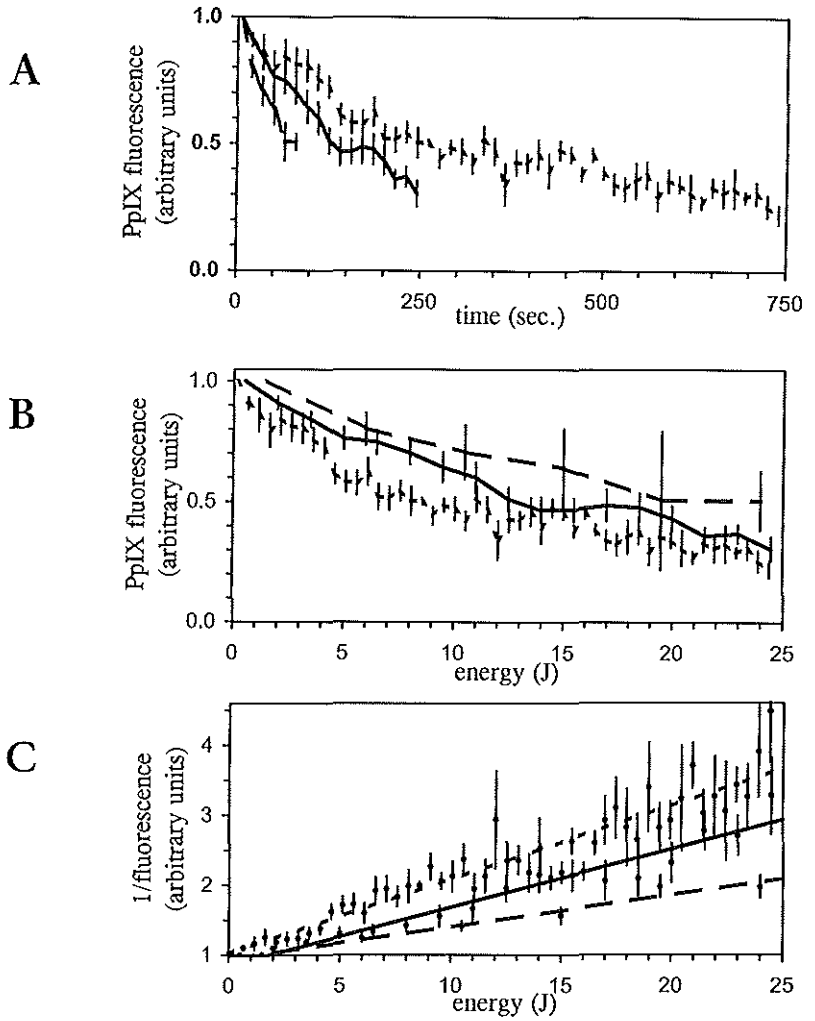


Figure 10.1 Mean integrated protoporphyrin IX (PpIX) fluorescence at 705 nm during 633 nm illumination plotted against illumination time (A) and applied energy (B). The error bars are standard errors of the mean. In Figure C the reciprocal of the normalized PpIX fluorescence is plotted as a function of light dose, the lines are least-square best fits of the data. Energy is applied with 33 (- - - -), 100 (——), or 300 mW (— —).

Dosimetry

In the 633 nm light group, during optical irradiation the measured true fluence rate (scattered plus non-scattered light) at the surface was 2.4 ± 0.05 times higher than the calculated irradiance (non-scattered light), with a minimum of 1.9 and a maximum of 3.0. In the 532 nm light group the true fluence rate was 1.3 ± 0.05 times higher (less than using 633 nm, $P < 0.001$) than the irradiance, with a minimum of 1.0 and a maximum of 2.0.

Histology after 633 nm light illumination

No histological abnormalities were found in the control group. Most damage to the epithelium was observed in animals treated with 33 mW, although the difference was not significant compared with animals treated with 100 mW, 25J (Table 10.2).

Table 10.2. Histopathological changes of the oesophageal wall at 48 h after 5-aminolevulinic acid-mediated photodynamic therapy in different groups, treated with 633 nm light.[a]

lightdose	power	epithelium	submucosa		muscularis propria		SF[b]
(J)	(mW)		oedema	inflam	inflam	necrosis	
8.3	33	2.0±0.6	2.0±0.5	1.4±0.5	0.8±0.4	0.4±0.2	3.7±0.7[c]
	100	0.8±0.6	2.2±0.2	1.4±0.2	2.0±0.3	1.2±0.2	0.6±0.2
	300	0	0.8±0.4	0.8±0.2	0.6±0.2	0.6±0.2	0
25	33	2.8±0.2	2.6±0.2	2.2±0.4	3.0±0	2.4±0.2	1.1±0.1
	100	1.6±0.6	2.8±0.2	1.2±0.2	2.6±0.4	2.4±0.6	0.5±0.1
	300	0.8±0.6	2.0±0.4	1.2±0.2	2.0±0.3	2.2±0.3	0.4±0.1

[a] Mean damage score of the layer ± standard error of the mean on a scale from 0 to 3. Control animals showed no damage (n=5 for all groups).
[b] SF = selectivity factor of epithelial damage = epithelial damage score : muscular damage score, expressed as mean selectivity factor ± standard error of the mean.
[c] Selectivity factor is significantly higher ($P \leq 0.04$) compared with all other 633 nm groups.
Inflam = inflammation.

Using 33 mW and a total light dose of 25 J, complete epithelial ablation was achieved in four out of five animals. In one animal, one epithelial cell layer remained. With 33 mW and a total light dose of 8.3 J complete epithelial ablation was achieved in three out of five animals. Damage to the submucosa was comparable in all groups, only illumination with 300 mW and 8.3 J caused less damage. Damage to the muscularis propria was more severe in the 25 J than in the 8.3 J groups ($P \leq 0.01$). Given a fixed total light dose, lowering the power from 300 mW to 33 mW resulted in more severe epithelial than muscular damage and thus in a higher selectivity factor (SF) (for 8.3 J: 100 mW versus 33 mW, $P=0.02$; 300 mW versus 33 mW, $P=0.04$, for 25 J: $P=0.049$ and $P=0.04$, respectively). Most selective epithelial damage was found after applying 8.3 J with 33 mW (SF=3.7±0.7, $P \leq 0.04$ versus all other 633 nm illumination schemes), and most complete epithelial damage after applying 25 J with 33 mW (SF=1.1±0.1) (Figure 10.2). Other treatment regimes showed less damage to the epithelium than to the muscularis propria (SF<1).

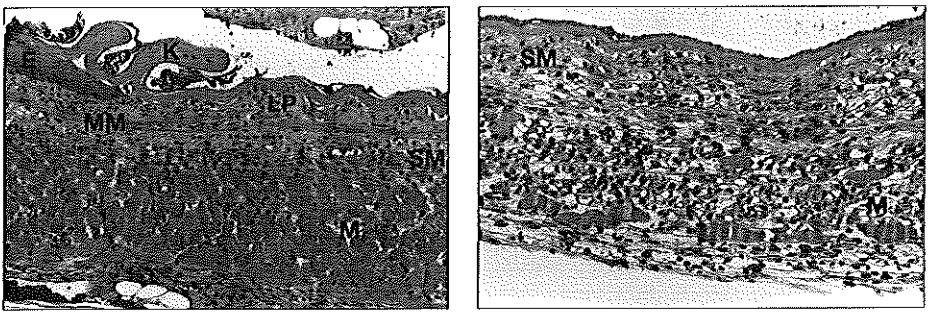


Figure 10.2 Histologic characteristics of a rat oesophagus at the photodynamic therapy site after 633 nm illumination with 33 mW and 8.3 J (A) and 25 J (B). The arrow in panel A indicates the beginning of the illuminated area (from arrow to the right), showing very selective and complete loss of epithelium, whereas the muscle layer was not damaged. Long illumination (B) caused, besides loss of epithelium, severe damage to the muscularis propria. E=epithelium, K=keratin layer, LP=lamina propria, M=muscularis propria, MM=muscularis mucosae, SM=submucosa (x 40, haematoxylin and eosin stain).

Histology after 532 nm light illumination

No histological abnormalities were found in the control group. A light dose of 8.3 J did not cause any epithelial or muscular damage and caused only slight oedema and inflammation of the submucosa (Table 10.3). Only in the groups treated with 25 J applied with 33 or 100 mW, was complete epithelial ablation found in one and two animals, respectively. Most selective epithelial damage was achieved with 33 mW (selectivity factor=2.0±0.7).

Table 10.3 Histopathologic changes of the oesophageal wall at 48 h after 5-aminolevulinic acid-mediated photodynamic therapy in different groups treated with 532 nm light.[a]

light	power	epithelium	submucosa		muscularis propria		SF[b]
dose (J)	(mW)		oedema	inflam	inflam	necrosis	
8.3	33	0	0.2±0.2	0.2±0.2	0	0	-
	100	0	0.4±0.2	0.2±0.2	0	0	-
	300	0	0.2±0.2	0.4±0.3	0	0	-
25	33	0.8±0.6	1.2±0.4	1.2±0.5	0.8±0.2	0	2.0±0.7
	100	1.2±0.7	2.2±0.5	1.6±0.4	1.8±0.5	1.2±0.6	0.8±0.3
	300	0	1.8±0.6	1.0±0	1.4±0.4	0.8±0.2	0

[a] Mean damage score of the layer ± standard error of the mean on a scale from 0 to 3. Control animals showed no damage (n=5 for all groups).
[b] SF = selectivity factor of epithelial damage = epithelial damage score : muscular damage score, expressed as mean selectivity factor ± standard error of the mean.
Inflam = inflammation.

Histology after 633 nm versus 532 nm light illumination

Comparing 633 with 532 nm treatment regimens with the same output power and energy, 532 nm light caused less damage to the epithelium and muscularis propria than 633 nm light (Figure 10.3). Analysis of the different 532 nm and 633 nm groups showed that illumination with 33 mW (8.3 J in the 633 nm group and 25 J in the 532 nm group) caused the most selective epithelial damage.

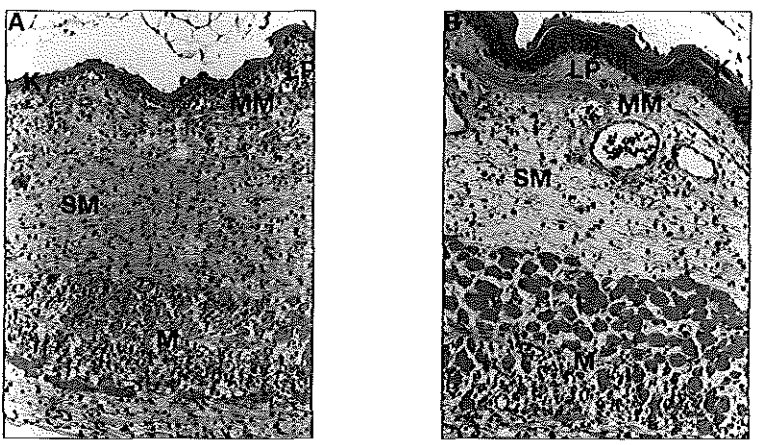


Figure 10.3 Histopathological section of a rat oesophagus at the laser site after 633 nm (A) and 532 nm (B) light irradiation with 100 mW and 8.3 J. 633 nm illumination caused considerably more damage than 532 nm illumination. E=epithelium, K=keratin layer, LP=lamina propria, M=muscularis propria, MM=muscularis mucosae, SM=submucosa (x 40, haematoxylin and eosin stain).

DISCUSSION

Our results indicate that the selectivity of ALA-PDT for inducing oesophageal epithelial damage depends largely on the combination of wavelength, output power and light dose. Most selective epithelial damage was achieved with 33 mW illumination, whereas illumination with 300 mW caused damage to the underlying muscularis propria with less damage to the epithelium. Very selective damage to the epithelium was found after 633 nm light illumination with 33 mW and 8.3 J.

For improving the results of PDT, most attention has been paid to the development of a photosensitizer which accumulates selectively in (pre)malignant lesions. ALA has been a great step forward for PDT of superficial (epithelial) lesions. Until recently, less attention has been given to the influence of illumination parameters. Incomplete destruction of Barrett's epithelium after ALA-PDT in patients and the proved importance of the time interval between ALA administration and illumination (Chapters 8 and 9) suggests that adjusting the

illumination protocol can further improve the results.[6-8]

Because green light (532 nm) penetrates tissue less deep than red light (633 nm), we expected to find more superficial and thus more selective damage to the epithelium using 532 nm light.[12] Indeed, we found no macroscopic liver damage in the green light groups. In general however, comparison of the damage between the 633 and 532 nm groups with the same power and energy delivered showed that 532 nm light caused less epithelial damage than 633 nm light. We choose 532 nm light because PpIX extinction coefficients and the ratio of photon energies are approximately equal at 532 nm and 633 nm. Equivalent rates of photon absorption are therefore achieved with approximately equal energy fluence rates at 532 nm and 633 nm.[12] However, the optical absorption and scattering of tissues also vary at different wavelengths. The *in vivo* dosimetric results showed that for a given output power the *in situ* measured fluence rate for 532 nm light is lower than that for 633 nm light (fluence rate multiplication factor β = measured fluence rate/calculated irradiance, $\beta_{532}=1.3$ and $\beta_{633}=2.4$). Dosimetry in this study suggests a matching "true light dose" for 532 and 633 nm illumination with a 2 times higher output power or a 2 times longer illumination for 532 nm compared with 633 nm light. Based on the results of a pilot study, we had chosen a factor 3 in varying the incident light dose. When the damage in the 633 nm light group was compared with the damage in the 532 nm light group with a comparable true light dose (3 times longer illumination or a 3 times higher power output), there were no differences in epithelial or muscular damage or in SF.

No other studies comparing wavelengths in ALA-PDT have been described. Studies using haematoporphyrin derivatives as a photosensitizer and 514 nm versus 630 nm light drew different conclusions because some used equivalent rates of photon absorption, whereas others did not account for the differences in optical tissue properties at these wavelengths.[9,12-15] The former studies concluded that 514 nm light has equal or more effect and toxicity than 630 nm light.[9,13-15] The latter studies concluded that 514 nm light has less effect than 630 nm light.[12]

In the present study, equal doses of incident light led to the finding that 532 nm light is less effective than 633 nm light, because of the lower true *in vivo* light doses. In clinical ALA-PDT practice, the assumption that the illumination time can be shortened by using 514 nm in stead of 633 nm light to achieve equal damage is based on the higher PpIX excitation coefficient at 514 nm but does not take into account the lower true *in vivo* light dose at 514 nm. The presented results can be extrapolated to indicate that the incident light doses must be approximately equal for 514 nm and 633 nm ALA-PDT to achieve equal damage at the surface. Our results further show the importance of monitoring both the true light dose and the fluorescence in a clinical setting, because both the fluence rate (due to the different light scattering properties of tissue) and concentration of the photosensitizer vary

among patients.

Results of PDT could be improved by varying the power output for a given total light dose. In both the 532 and 633 nm groups, most selective epithelial damage was achieved using low output power. This finding is consistent with two other studies of ALA-PDT on normal mouse skin and transplanted rat tumours.[11,16] Similar results were found in tumours in mice using haematoporphyrin derivative.[17-19] This is probably due to the fact that for achieving an equal light dose, the duration of the illumination increases with decreasing power. Rapid PpIX photobleaching and photochemical oxygen consumption during high irradiances can lead to relative hypoxia and reduced PDT effect. Long illumination implies high oxygen supply (oxygen saturation of blood x vascular flow x time). Thus, there seems to be a critical combination of total light dose (low enough to cause minor muscular damage) and illumination time (long enough to supply oxygen needed for epithelial damage) to achieve selective epithelial ablation.

Although ALA-induced photosensitization occurs almost exclusively in the oesophageal mucosa, almost all animals in the present study showed damage to the submucosa or muscularis, which suggests that the photodynamic threshold to induce damage to the submucosa and muscle is lower than that to the epithelium.[4,5,8] As described in the previous chapter, a difference in vascular supply, sensitivity to singlet oxygen or PpIX metabolism might explain this observation.[8]

Besides the selectivity of the epithelial damage, the completeness of the epithelial ablation is important. In the present study the optimal illumination scheme was between 8.3 and 25 J applied with 33 mW and 633 nm light. One animal in the 25 J group did not have complete epithelial ablation. A second treatment therefore could ensure complete elimination of the Barrett's epithelium in patients.

In summary, we demonstrated the importance of light dosimetry, fluorescence measurements, and, moreover, the choice of the illumination protocol for ALA-PDT of oesophageal lesions. Using equal doses of incident light, illumination with 532 nm light was less effective than 633 nm light, because of the lower true light dose. The application of low power 633 nm light caused selective epithelial damage when a low light dose was given and caused complete epithelial damage when a high light dose was given. With these optimized illumination parameters, efficient and safe oesophageal ALA-PDT can be performed.

REFERENCES

1. Blot WJ, Devesa SS, Kneller RW, Fraumeni JF Jr. Rising incidence of adenocarcinoma of the esophagus and gastric cardia. JAMA 1991;65:1287-1289.
2. Cameron AJ, Ott BJ, Payne WS. The incidence of adenocarcinoma in columnar-lined (Barrett's) oesophagus. N Engl J Med 1985;313:857-859.
3. Wang KK. Barrett's esophagus: current and future management. Compr Ther 1994;20:36-43.
4. Van den Boogert J, Houtsmuller AB, De Rooij FWM, De Bruin RWF, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Kinetics, localization and mechanism of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrin accumulation in normal and Barrett's-like rat esophagus. Lasers Surg Med 1999;24:3-13.
5. Mäkinen K, Grönlund-Pakkanen S, Tiirikainen M, Nuutinen P, Kuusisto A, Alhava E. Protoporphyrin-IX distribution and photodynamic effect in rat esophagus after aminolaevulinic acid administration. Scand J Gastroenterol 1997;32:633-637.
6. Laukka MA, Wang KK. Initial results using low-dose photodynamic therapy in the treatment of Barrett's esophagus. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;42:59-63.
7. Barr H, Sheperd NA, Roberts DJH, Tan WC, Krasner N. Eradication of high-grade dysplasia in columnar-lined (Barrett's) oesophagus by photodynamic therapy with endogenously generated protoporphyrin IX. The Lancet 1996;348:584-585.
8. Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Van Staveren HJ, De Bruin RWF, Van Dekken H, Siersema PD, Tilanus HW. Timing of illumination is essential for effective and safe photodynamic therapy: a study in the normal rat oesophagus. Br J Cancer 1999;79:825-830.
9. Van Gemert JC, Berenbaum MC, Gijsbers GHM. Wavelength and light-dose dependence in tumour phototherapy with haematoporphyrin derivative. Br J Cancer 1985;52:43-49.
10. Van Staveren HJ, Marijnissen JPA, Aalders MCG, Star WM. Construction, quality assurance and calibration of spherical isotropic fibre optic light diffusers. Lasers Med Sci 1995;10:137-147.
11. Robinson DJ, De Bruijn HS, Van der Veen N, Stringer MR, Brown SB, Star WM. Fluorescence photo bleaching of ALA-induced protoporphyrin IX during photodynamic therapy of normal hairless mouse skin: the effect of light dose and irradiance and the resulting biological effect. Photochem Photobiol 1998;67:140-149.
12. Foster TH, Gibson SL, Raubertas RF. Response of photofrin®-sensitised mesothelioma xenografts to photodynamic therapy with 514 nm light. Br J Cancer 1996;73:933-936.
13. Bellnier DA, Prout GR, Lin CW. Effect of 514 nm argon ion laser radiation on hematoporpyrin derivative-treated bladder tumor cells in vitro and in vivo. J Natl Cancer Inst 1985;74:617-625.
14. Nseyo UO, Whalen RK, Lundahl SL. Canine bladder response to red and green light whole bladder photodynamic therapy. Invest Urol 1993;41:392-396.
15. DeLaney TF, Sindelar WF, Tochner Z, Smith PD, Friauf WS, Thomas G, Dachowski L, Cole JW, Steinberg SM, Glatstein E. Phase 1 study of debulking surgery and photodynamic therapy for disseminated intraperitoneal tumors. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1993;25:445-457.
16. Hua ZX, Gibson SL, Foster TH, Hilf R. Effectiveness of delta-aminolevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin as a photosensitizer for photodynamic therapy in-vivo. Cancer Res 1995;55:1732-1731.
17. Gibson SL, Foster TH, Feins RH, Raubertas RF, Fallon MA, Hilf R. Effects of photodynamic therapy on xenografts of human mesothelioma and rat mammary carcinoma in nude mice. Br J Cancer 1994;69:473-481.
18. Pe MB, Ikeda H, Inokuchi T. Tumour destruction and proliferation kinetics following periodic, low power light, haematoporphyrin oligomers mediated photodynamic therapy in the mouse tongue. Eur J Cancer B Oral Oncol 1994;30B:174-178.
19. Sitnik TM, Henderson BW. The effect of fluence rate on tumor and normal tissue responses to photodynamic therapy. Photochem Photobiol 1998;67:462-466.

Chapter 11

Fractionated Illumination: Effect on Ferrochelatase Activity

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.* *Journal of Photochemistry and Photobiology B Biology* (submitted).

INTRODUCTION

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) is an experimental treatment modality for (pre)malignant oesophageal lesions. Apart from exogenously administered porphyrins, endogenously formed porphyrins are used as photosensitizers. Although in the clinical set-up, promising results have been described with both ways of photosensitization, each has its specific drawbacks. PDT with exogenous porphyrins (haematoporphyrin derivative and Photofrin®) causes deeper lesions but may result in strictures or even oesophageal perforations.[1,2] On the other hand, PDT with endogenous photosensitization (5-aminolevulinic acid, ALA) causes more superficial lesions resulting in less complications but incomplete ablation in various cases (Chapter 2).[3,4]

One possibility to optimize the treatment with endogenous photosensitization might be a fractionated delivery of light. Depending on the fractionation scheme, various theories are cited to explain the effect.[5-9] The first reason for the enhanced effect of fractionated light doses as compared to continuous illumination is a delayed vascular shutdown or relaxation of the vasoconstriction, observed as part of PDT-damage.[5-7] This results in improved tissue oxygenation, essential for the photochemical reaction. Secondly, longer fractionation intervals (1-3 h) can produce a renewed PDT effect, probably because new porphyrins are formed from the still apparent ALA.[8,9] Re-appearance of porphyrin fluorescence has been demonstrated several hours after the first illumination.[8,9] Chapter 12 focusses on these two theories regarding fractionated illumination.

Results from others and our personal unpublished experience from *in vitro* work have lead to another, biochemical explanation for the enhanced effect of fractionated light doses.[10,11] ALA is a natural haem precursor and formation of ALA is rate limiting in the haem-synthetic pathway (Chapter 3, Figure 11.1). Furthermore, the synthesis of ALA is regulated via a negative feedback mechanism governed by the concentration of free haem. Exogenous ALA bypasses both the rate limiting enzyme ALA synthase and the feedback mechanism. This results in the accumulation of the photosensitive intermediate protoporphyrin IX (PpIX) in certain types of cells and tissues. The reason for PpIX accumulation in (premalignant) epithelium might be a difference in the activity of certain enzymes of the haem biosynthetic pathway.[12] Ferrochelatase activity might be lower and porphobilinogen deaminase (PBGD) activity higher in these tissues (Chapter 8).[12-16] After ALA synthase, PBGD is rate limiting in PpIX formation whereas ferrochelatase converts photochemically active PpIX into photochemically inactive haem by incorporating ferrous iron.

We hypothesize that a short period of illumination, relative early after ALA administration, may selectively damage ferrochelatase because this enzyme is

temporarily bound to PpIX. Selective destruction of ferrochelatase will further enhance the accumulation of PpIX as it can no longer be transformed into haem. This possibility has been studied *in vitro* by Lim and coworkers with variable results.[10,11] The purpose of the study presented in this chapter was to test this hypothesis in an *in vivo* situation in the normal rat oesophagus using various ALA doses and illumination schemes.

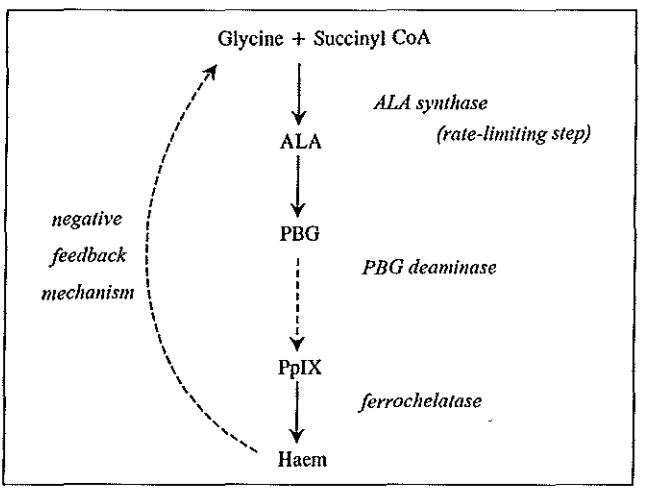


Figure 11.1 Simplified mechanism of 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA)-induced protoporphyrin IX (PpIX) accumulation. PBG=porphobilinogen.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animals and photosensitization

The experimental protocol was approved by "The Committee on Animal Research" of the Erasmus University Rotterdam. Sixty male Wistar rats (Harlan CPB, Zeist, The Netherlands), weighing 325-375 grams, were used. They had free access to tap water and rat chow (AM II, Hope Farms, Woerden, The Netherlands). Photosensitization was achieved by gastric gavage of ALA (Sigma Chemical Company, St. Louis, MO, USA) dissolved in phosphate-buffered saline. The solution was freshly prepared for each animal and immediately given.

Design of the study

Animals were randomly allocated to 2 groups of 30 animals each.
In the first group, ferrochelatase, porphobilinogen deaminase (PBGD), and PpIX concentration were measured. Animals received 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA and were divided into six groups of five animals each. Three groups served as controls and did not

receive illumination. Animals in the three control groups were sacrificed at 3 h (n=5) or 4 h (n=5) after ALA administration, or received a second dose of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA, 4 h after the first dose and were sacrificed 3 h thereafter. The distal 4 cm of the oesophagus was taken out for enzyme and PpIX measurements. Specimens were immediately kept on ice and stored at -80°C. After enzyme determinations, additionally the ratio between PBGD and ferrochelatase activity was determined in every animal. In the experimental three groups the animals received ALA and were sacrificed according to the three former groups but, additionally, the distal oesophagus was illuminated at 1 h after the first dose of ALA with 12.5 J per cm diffuser length.

The second group of 30 animals were used for histological assessment of PDT treatment and was also divided into six groups of five animals each, receiving ALA as outlined above. In three groups, the oesophagus was illuminated continuously with 20 J cm^{-1} (n=5) or 32.5 J cm^{-1} (n=5) at 3 h after ALA administration, or at 3 h after a second dose of ALA with 20 J cm^{-1} (n=5). In the other three experimental groups, the distal oesophagus was illuminated with 12.5 J cm^{-1} at 1 h after ALA and additionally with 20 J cm^{-1} at 3 h (n=5) or 4 h (n=5) after ALA administration, or animals received a second dose of ALA at 4 h after the first dose and were illuminated at 1 h (12.5 J cm^{-1}) after the first and 3 h (20 J cm^{-1}) after the second dose of ALA. Animals were sacrificed at 48 h after PDT.

PDT treatment

PDT was performed with 633 nm light from a dye laser (600 Series Dye Module, Laserscope, San Jose, CA, USA), pumped by a KTP/532 surgical laser (Laserscope, San Jose, CA, USA). Light was transmitted through a 400 μm fiber with a 10 mm length cylindrical diffusing tip of 760 μm diameter (Lightstic 360, Rare Earth Medical Inc, West Yarmouth, MA, USA). To deliver homogeneous and circumferential light to the oesophagus, an optically clear double-lumen balloon catheter (PTA Balloon Catheter Opta 5, Cordis, Roden, The Netherlands) was used (length 20 mm, diameter 3.5 mm when inflated with 0.4 ml air), with the lumen for the laser fiber exactly in the centre (Figure 11.2).[17] This resulted in an illuminated area of 1.1 cm^2. Fluence and fluence rates in the present study are given per cm diffuser length. An output power of 100 mW per cm diffuser length was used in all experiments. The power emitted was calibrated with a built-in power meter. The accuracy of the wavelength was verified with a spectroscope (WaveMate, Coherent, Auburn, CA, USA). During PDT at 15 s intervals, PpIX fluorescence spectra were measured and light dosimetry was performed with a spherical isotropic probe of 800 μm diameter (Rare Earth Medical inc., West Yarmouth, MA, USA), positioned halfway along the balloon. Its distal fiber end led to a 50/50% beam splitter (Rare Earth Medical inc., West Yarmouth, MA,

USA). Part of the light was conveyed to a light dose meter and the other part to an optical multi-channel analyzer system (Multispec 77400 spectrometer + Intstaspec-IV 77131 CCD-camera, Oriel Instruments, CT, USA) with built-in a combined 630 nm notch plus 665 nm long wavelength pass filter. The response of the isotropic probe was calibrated for true fluence rate measurements using an integrating sphere with a homogeneous diffuse light field.[18] The mean autofluorescence measured in control animals was subtracted from the recorded spectra and the remaining PpIX fluorescence peak at 705 nm was integrated over a 15 nm range. Values are given relative to the start value, which was set to 1.

Illumination at 1 h after ALA in the groups for enzyme measurements was performed with a 2 cm cylindrical fiber, also using a balloon catheter. After 12.5 J per cm diffuser illumination the fiber was retracted 2 cm and again 12.5 J per cm diffuser length was given. This was necessary because an oesophageal length of 4 cm was needed for the determinations. Neither dosimetry nor fluorescence spectra were recorded during illumination in these groups.

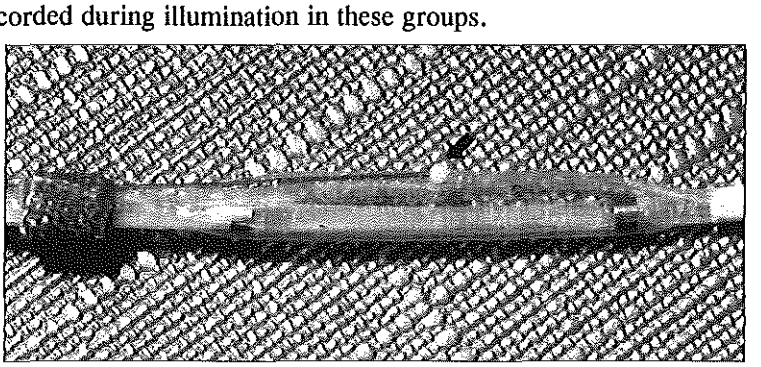


Figure 11.1 The optically clear double-lumen balloon catheter with the lumen for the laser fibre exactly in the centre that was used to deliver homogeneous and circumferential light to the oesophagus. Halfway along the balloon a spherical isotropic probe (arrow) was positioned to measure fluorescence spectra and perform light dosimetry during photodynamic therapy.

Determination of ferrochelatase and porphobilinogen deaminase (PBGD)

Determinations were performed as described in detail in Chapter 8.[12] First, samples were homogenized in sterile water (1:10 w/w). PBGD was measured as previously described by Wilson *et al.* and performed according to the adapted procedure described by Hinnen *et al.*[16,19] Due to storage of tissue samples at -80°C, uroporphyrin decarboxylase activity is destroyed. Ferrochelatase activity was determined as described previously by Van Hillegersberg *et al.*[15]

Determination of PpIX concentration

PpIX was analysed spectrophotometrically according to Chisolm and Brown with some modifications using a red-sensitive photomultiplier (Perkin Elmer,

Nieuwerkerk a/d IJssel, The Netherlands) at an excitation wavelength of 410 nm and an emission wavelength of 650 nm.[12,20] Porphyrin standards were analysed separately for their actual concentration using ultraviolet-spectroscopy and the molar extinction coefficient ($\epsilon 407 = 0.275$ l mol^{-1} cm^{-1}).

Protein content was measured using the method of Lowry et al.[21]

Histology

The animals were sacrificed at 48 h after PDT. The oesophagus was taken out *in toto*, opened longitudinally and curled up from distal to proximal. Specimens were fixed in formalin, sectioned and stained with haematoxylin and eosin for conventional light microscopy. Damage was scored semi-quantitatively for epithelium (0=normal, 1=more than 1 cell layer left, 2=1 cell layer left, 3=complete ablation) and muscularis propria (0=100% vital muscle, 1=more than 75% vital muscle, 2=25-75% vital muscle, 3=less than 25% vital muscle) by two investigators, masked to the treatment. Additionally, the selectivity factor (SF) for epithelial damage, defined as the epithelial damage score : muscular damage score, was determined in every animal.

Statistical analysis

All values are expressed as mean ± standard error of the mean (SEM). Comparisons were made using (paired) Student's *t*-test. A difference was considered to be significant at *P* values of <0.05.

RESULTS

Enzyme determinations and porphyrin concentration

Enzyme determinations showed no difference in PBGD activity at 4 or 7 h after ALA between animals who were not illuminated and those who were illuminated at 1 h after ALA administration (Table 11.1). In animals sacrificed at 3 h, illumination at 1 h caused a decrease in PBGD activity (37.8 ± 1.9 versus 28.7 ± 0.8 pmol h^{-1} of uroporphyrin per mg protein, $P=0.02$). Ferrochelatase activity had significantly declined in animals illuminated at 1 h and sacrificed at 3 or 4 h after ALA (0.56 ± 0.06 versus 0.86 ± 0.04 nmol h^{-1} of zinc PpIX per mg protein, $P=0.002$ and 0.26 ± 0.03 versus 0.80 ± 0.03 nmol h^{-1} of zinc PpIX per mg protein, $P<0.001$ respectively). However, in animals receiving two times 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA ferrochelatase did not change by illumination at 1 h after the first ALA dose (0.96 ± 0.06 versus 1.04 ± 0.02 nmol h^{-1} of zinc PpIX per mg protein, $P=0.3$). Illumination at 1 h caused a significant increase in the ratio PBGD:ferrochelatase in animals sacrificed at 4 h (0.12 ± 0.01 with illumination at 1 h versus

0.042±0.004 without illumination, $P<0.001$). In animals sacrificed at 3 h after the first or second dose of ALA the ratio did not differ between illuminated and non-illuminated animals.

Porphyrin accumulation did not differ between animals illuminated at 1 h after ALA and non-illuminated animals ($P=0.4$, $P=0.8$ and $P=0.5$ at 3, 4 and 7 h, respectively).

Table 11.1 Porphobilinogen deaminase (PBGD), ferrochelatase activity, and porphyrin concentration in the rat oesophagus after oral administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA). Data are expressed as mean±standard error of the mean (n=5 for each group).

illumination	sacrifice time after ALA (h)	PBGD pmol/h^{-1} of URO per mg protein	ferrochelatase nmol/h^{-1} of zinc PpIX per mg protein	ratio PBGD: ferrochelatase	porphyrin pmol per mg protein
no	3	37.8±1.9	0.86±0.04	0.044±0.0003	42.7±3.2
no	4	33.3±2.4	0.80±0.03	0.042±0.004	29.6±2.9
no	7[a]	27.4±0.9	1.04±0.02	0.026±0.005	37.1±3.4
1h (12.5 J cm^{-1})	3	28.7±0.8*	0.56±0.06**	0.053±0.005	37.1±4.7
1h (12.5 J cm^{-1})	4	29.9±0.6	0.26±0.03**	0.12±0.01**	28.0±7.0
1h (12.5 J cm^{-1})	7[a]	30.8±0.9	0.96±0.06	0.33±0.005	40.3±3.7

[a] animals received 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA at 0 h and at 4 h and were sacrificed at 7 h after the first ALA dose. *$P=0.02$ (with versus without illumination at 1 h), **$P\leq0.002$ (with versus without illumination at 1 h). PpIX=protoporphyrin IX, URO=uroporphyrin.

Dosimetry

During optical irradiation the true fluence rate (scattered plus non-scattered light) at the oesophageal surface in the groups illuminated at 3 or 4 h with or without illumination at 1 h was 3 to 3.5 times higher than the calculated irradiance, with a minimum of 2.75±0.12 and a maximum of 3.59±0.28 (Table 11.2).

Table 11.2 The fluence rate multiplication factor β (true fluence rate:calculated irradiance) during illumination (light dose expressed per cm diffuser) at various time-points after 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) administration.

Light dose	1h	3h	4h	7h
20 J cm^{-1} or 32.5 J cm^{-1} (3h)		3.41±0.38		
12.5 J cm^{-1} (1h)+20 J cm^{-1} (3h)	2.75±0.12	3.52±0.25[a]		
12.5 J cm^{-1} (1h)+20 J cm^{-1} (4h)	3.59±0.28		3.29±0.19[b]	
20 J cm^{-1} (7h)*				1.53±0.09
12.5 J cm^{-1} (1h)+20 J cm^{-1} (7h)*	1.52±0.14			1.48±0.05[c]

[a] $P=0.055$ (β_{1h} versus β_{3h}), [b] $P=0.84$ (β_{1h} versus β_{4h}), [c] $P=0.78$ (β_{1h} versus β_{7h}).
* animals received 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA at 0 h and additionally at 4 h.

In animals illuminated at 7 h with or without illumination at 1 h true fluence rate was 1.5 times higher than the incident (calculated) irradiance. In the fractionated groups, illumination at 1 h after ALA caused a fluence rate multiplication factor β (true fluence rate:calculated irradiance) similar to the β during the second illumination at 3, 4 or 7 h (P=0.055, P=0.84 and P=0.78, respectively). Furthermore, β did not differ between animals illuminated only at 3, or 7 h or animals illuminated additionally at 1 h (3.41±0.38 versus 3.52±0.25, P=0.83 and 1.53±0.09 versus 1.48±0.05, P=0.68, respectively).

In vivo porphyrin fluorescence

In vivo porphyrin fluorescence declined in all groups during optical irradiance (Figure 11.3). Initial porphyrin fluorescence in animals treated only at 3 or 7 h after ALA was higher compared to illumination at 1 h (P<0.001). In the fractionated groups, 705 nm fluorescence intensity was not higher at second illumination at 3 or 4 h than at illumination at 1 h (P≥0.1). Fluorescence intensity at second illumination at 7 h was higher than at initial illumination at 1 h (P=0.02).

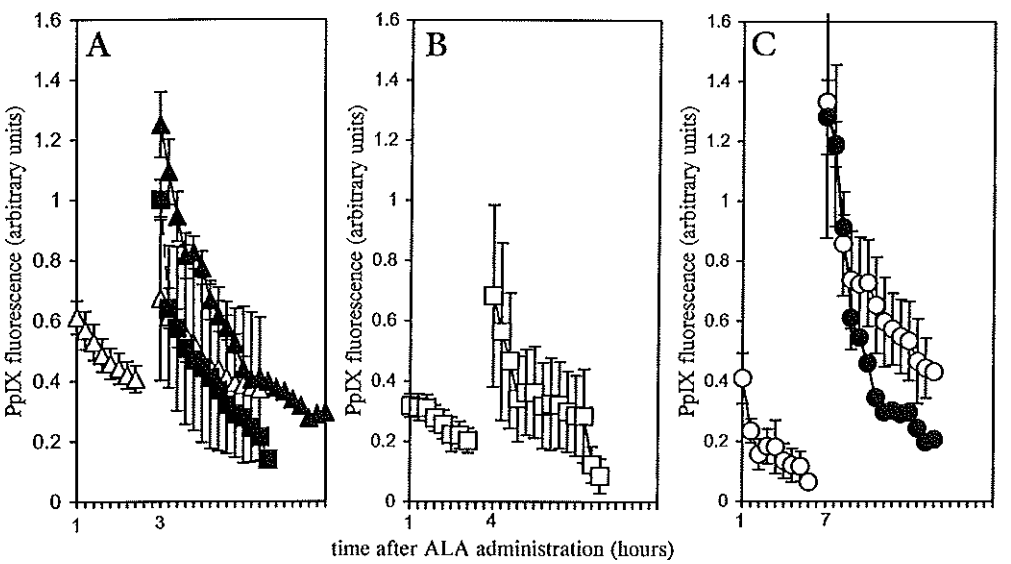


Figure 11.3 Mean integrated *in vivo* apparent porphyrin fluorescence of the oesophageal surface at 705 nm during optical irradiation at 3h with or without illumination at 1h (A), 4h with illumination at 1h (B) and 7h with or without illumination at 1h (C). The error bars are standard errors of the mean (n=5 for each group). As the illumination time is very short in comparison with the time of illumination after 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) administration, two time scales have been used. Fluorescence during illumination is given on a linear time scale (15 s between tick marks) and only the onset of the illumination corresponds with the time after ALA administration as given on the X-axis. (Lightdose:A: —■—=20 J cm^{-1} at 3h, —▲—=32.5 J cm^{-1} at 3h, —Δ—=12.5+20 J cm^{-1} at 1 and 3h, respectively; B: —□—=12.5+20 J cm^{-1} at 1 and 4h, respectively; C: —●—=20 J cm^{-1} at 7h, —○—=12.5+20 J cm^{-1} at 1 and 7h, respectively).

Histology

No difference in epithelial or muscular damage or SF was found between the groups receiving one ALA dose ($P \geq 0.13$) (Table 11.3). Illumination at 3 h caused complete epithelial ablation in 7 out of 10 animals, extra illumination at 1 h resulted in complete ablation in 4 out of 10 animals (2 in both groups) (Figure 11.4).

Table 11.3 Damage of the epithelium and muscularis propria of the normal rat oesophagus produced with 5-aminolevulinic (ALA)-photodynamic therapy (n=5 for each group). Three groups were illuminated at 3 or 7 h after ALA (200 mg kg^{-1} orally). Three groups were illuminated at 1h after ALA to induce selective damage to ferrochelatase and additionally at 3, 4 or 7 h.

illumination		damage		
time after ALA	light dose	epithelium[a]	muscularis[a]	SF[a]
3 h	20 J cm^{-1}	2.8±0.2	3.0±0	0.9±0.1
3 h	32.5 J cm^{-1}	2.0±0.6	2.6±0.4	0.7±0.2
7 h	20 J cm^{-1}	1.4±0.6	1.6±0.4	1.0±0.4
1 h + 3 h	12.5 J cm^{-1} + 20 J cm^{-1}	2.0±0.5	2.6±0.2	0.7±0.2
1 h + 4 h	12.5 J cm^{-1} + 20 J cm^{-1}	1.6±0.7	2.2±0.5	0.5±0.2
1 h + 7 h	12.5 J cm^{-1} + 20 J cm^{-1}	1.8±0.6	1.6±0.4	1.0±0.3

SF=selectivity factor for epithelial damage (epithelial damage score : muscular damage score).
[a]$P \geq 0.1$ between the four groups.

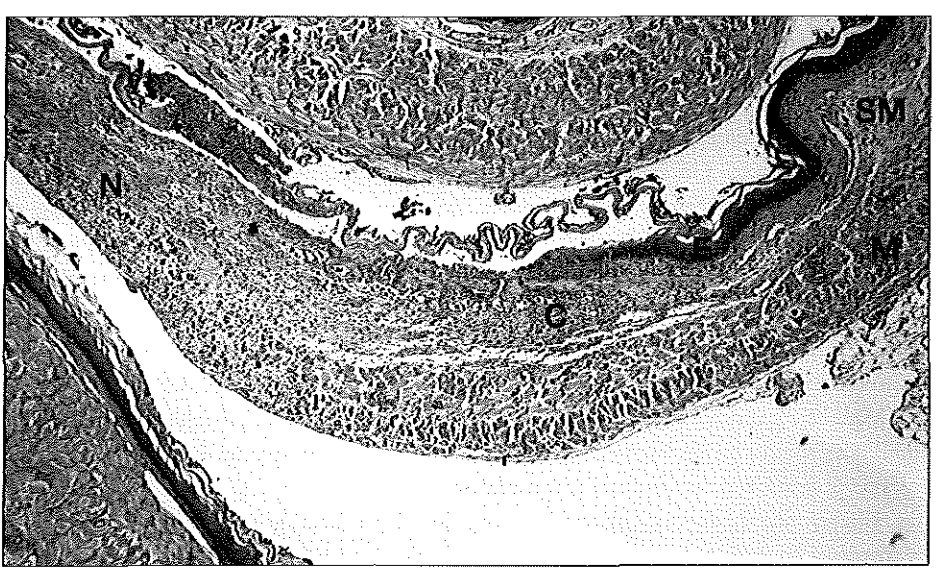


Figure 11.4 Histopathological section of the rat oesophagus after 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA)-mediated photodynamic therapy (PDT) with 633 nm light irradiation. The animal was illuminated at 1 h after ALA (12.5 J cm^{-1}) and received PDT at 3 h after ALA (20 J cm^{-1}). The arrow indicates the beginning of the illuminated area (from arrow to the left), showing complete epithelial ablation. The submucosa shows oedema and the muscle layer necrosis and cellular infiltration. C= cellular infiltration, E=epithelium, M=muscularis propria, N=necrosis, SM= submucosa.

DISCUSSION

When used in treatment of (pre)malignant lesions, ALA-PDT must ensure complete ablation of abnormal tissue. At present however, this is not always achieved.[3,4] One possibility to improve the results is to attain a higher photosensitizer concentration in the tissue to be treated. As ALA by itself is not a photosensitizer but results in endogenous formation of the photosensitizing agent PpIX via the haem biosynthetic pathway (Figure 11.1), several biochemical mechanisms could be used to optimize PpIX accumulation. This study focussed on selective inhibition of the enzyme ferrochelatase.

Under normal (no exogenous ALA) circumstances, the concentration of substrates and intermediates is usually far below the Michaelis constant of the haem synthetic enzymes.[22] For example, carriers of erythropoietic protoporphyria have a 50% or more reduction of the normal ferrochelatase activity but this does not result in clinical symptoms.[23] After administration of ALA, the normal amount of ferrochelatase might be rate limiting in the synthesis of haem. Inhibition of ferrochelatase could then significantly increase the accumulation of the intermediate PpIX. The ratio between PBGD and ferrochelatase is of particular interest as this ratio, at least in part, seems to determine the level of photosensitization of a specific tissue.[12,16]

The results of enzyme measurements in animals receiving a single ALA dose show that ferrochelatase activity can be significantly reduced by illumination with 12.5 J per cm diffuser length at 1 h after ALA administration. The ratio PBGD:ferrochelatase has significantly increased in animals illuminated at 1 h and sacrificed at 4 h. Under the present experimental conditions this did result in neither more porphyrin accumulation nor more damage to the oesophageal epithelium or muscle, probably because part of the PpIX present at 1 h after ALA was bleached during illumination at 1 h. Furthermore, from previous studies it appeared that the amount of ALA present at 1 h decreases rapidly (Chapters 7 and 8).[24] It might therefore be beneficial to give a second dose of ALA after the first illumination to ensure that the relative ferrochelatase deficit becomes relevant due to a high intracellular ALA concentration. Furthermore, the selectivity of the ALA-PDT treatment can be further enhanced by such a procedure as only the area to be treated is enclosed in the first illumination.

Based on these considerations and the first results, a second study was performed in which animals received a second dose of ALA at 4 h after the first dose, as suggested above. However, a second dose of ALA did result in neither more PpIX accumulation, nor more PDT-induced damage. Probably, maximal PpIX formation has already been achieved with an ALA dose lower than 200 mg kg^{-1} and this can not be further increased by more ALA. In addition, it is possible

that the viability of cells is decreased when the activity of ferrochelatase is decreased by illumination at 1 h.

Proper comparison of the damage induced by PDT with and without illumination at 1 h was possible because illumination at 1 h after ALA can be performed without inducing damage to the normal rat oesophagus as a former study has shown (Chapter 9).[17] Furthermore, the dosimetric results presented here show no difference between the fluence rate multiplication factor β during illumination at 1 h compared to illumination in the same animals at 3, 4 or 7 h after ALA administration. Thus, illumination at 1 h does not cause changes in tissue optical properties and therefore does not cause major changes in tissue histology (*e.g.* oedema). All illuminations in animals at 3 and 4 h with or without illumination at 1 h were performed on one day. The study performing illuminations at 7 h with or without illumination at 1h was performed on a different day. The difference between the dosimetric results between animals in the 3 and 4 h groups and animals in the 7 h groups may be due to daily differences in laser and isotropic probe settings. However, recorded *in vivo* porphyrin fluorescence spectra were normalized by dividing them by the fluence rate. This yields, in first order approximation, spectra that are corrected for different tissue optical properties, geometrical aberrations and different output power of the cylindrical diffuser. From the results within the various groups it can be concluded that illumination at 1 h does not result in higher porphyrin fluorescence during the second illumination than non-fractionated illumination alone.

In conclusion, although illumination at 1 h after ALA administration can cause selective destruction of ferrochelatase, resulting in a higher ratio of PBGD:ferrochelatase, this does not result in accumulation of more porphyrins, even when a second dose of ALA is given. Therefore, it appears that fractionated illumination in a scheme studied in this chapter does not enhance ALA-PDT-induced epithelial ablation of the rat oesophagus.

REFERENCES

1. Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Photodynamic therapy eliminates dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1997;112:A634.
2. Wang KK, WongKeeSong LM, Nourbakhsh A, Balm R. Can consistent tissue necrosis be achieved during photodynamic therapy for high-grade dysplasia or cancer within Barrett's esophagus? Gastroenterology 1998;112:A676.
3. Barr H, Shepherd NA, Dix A, Roberts DJH, Tan WC, Krasner N. Eradication of high-grade dysplasia in columnar-lined (Barrett's) oesophagus by photodynamic therapy with endogenously generated protoporphyrin IX. Lancet 1996;348:584-585.
4. Gossner L, Stolte M, Sroka R, Rick K, May A, Hahn EG, Ell C. Photodynamic ablation of high-grade dysplasia and early cancer in Barrett's esophagus by means of 5-aminolevulinic acid. Gastroenterology 1998;114:448-455.
5. Hua Z, Gibson SL, Foster TH, Hilf R. Effectiveness of δ-aminolevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin as a photosensitizer for photodynamic therapy in vivo. Cancer Res 1995;55:1723-1731.
6. Messmann H, Mlkvy P, Buonaccorsi G, Davies CL, MacRobert AJ, Bown SG. Enhancement of photodynamic therapy with 5-aminolaevulinic acid-induced porphyrin photosensitisation in normal rat colon by threshold and light fractionation studies. Br J Cancer 1995;72:589-594.
7. Svanberg K, Liu DL, Wang I, Andersson-Engels S, Stenram U, Svanberg S. Photodynamic therapy using intravenous delta-aminolaevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX sensitisation in experimental hepatic tumours in rats. Br J Cancer 1996;74:1526-1533.
8. Van der Veen N, Van Leengoed HLLM, Star WM. In vivo fluorescence kinetics and photodynamic therapy using 5-aminolaevulinic acid-induced porphyrin: increased damage after multiple irradiations. Br J Cancer 1994;70:867-872.
9. Van der Veen N, De Bruijn HS, Star WM. Photobleaching during and re-appearance after photodynamic therapy of topical ALA-induced fluorescence in UVB-treated mouse skin. Int J Cancer 1997;72:110-118.
10. Lim HM, Behar S, He D. Effect of porphyrin and irradiation on heme biosynthetic pathway in endothelial cells. Photodermatol Photoimmunol Photomed 1994;10:17-21.
11. He D, Behar N, Nomura N, Sassa S, Lim HW. The effect of ALA and radiation on porphyrin/heme biosynthesis in endothelial cells. Photochem Photobiol 1995;16:656-661.
12. Van den Boogert J, Houtsmuller AB, De Rooij FWM, De Bruin RWF, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Kinetics, localization and mechanism of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrin accumulation in normal and Barrett's-like rat esophagus. Lasers Surg Med 1999;24:3-13.
13. Rubino GF, Rasetti L. Porphyrin metabolism in human neoplastic tissues. Panminerva Med 1966;8:290-292.
14. El-Sharabasy MM, El-Waseef AM, Hafez MM, Salim SA. Porphyrin metabolism in some malignant diseases. Br J Cancer 1992;65:409-412.
15. Van Hillegersberg R, Van den Berg JW, Kort WJ, Terpstra OT, Wilson JH. Selective accumulation of endogenously produced porphyrins in a liver metastasis model in rats. Gastroenterology 1992;103:647-651.
16. Hinnen P, De Rooij FWM, Van Velthuysen MLF, Edixhoven A, Van Hillegersberg R, Tilanus HW, Wilson JHP, Siersema PD. Biochemical basis of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX accumulation: a study in patients with (pre)malignant lesions of the oesophagus. Br J Cancer 1998;78:679-682.
17. Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Van Staveren HJ, De Bruin RWF, Van Dekken H, Siersema PD, Tilanus HW. Timing of illumination is essential for effective and safe photodynamic therapy: a study in the normal rat oesophagus. Br J Cancer 1999;79:825-830.
18. Van Staveren HJ, Marijnissen JPA, Aalders MCG, Star WM. Construction, quality assurance and calibration of spherical isotropic fibre optic light diffusers. Lasers Med Sci 1995;10:137-147.
19. Wilson JHP, De Rooij FWM, Te Velde K. Acute intermittent porphyria in the Netherlands:

heterogeneity of the enzyme porphobilinogen deaminase. Neth J Med 1986;29:393-399.
20. Chisolm J, Brown DH. Micro-scale photofluoremetric determination of "free erythrocyte porphyrin" (protoporphyrin IX). Clin Chem 1975;21:1669-1682.
21. Lowry OH, Rosebrough NJ, Farr AL, Randall RJ. Protein measurement with the Folin phenol reagent. J Biol Chem 1951;193:265-275.
22. Bottomly SS, Muller-Eberhard U. Pathophysiology of heme synthesis. Semin Hematol 1988;25:282-302.
23. Goerz G, Bunselmeyer S, Bolsen K, Schurer NY. Ferrochelatase activities in patients with erythropoietic protoporphyria and their families. Br J Dermatol 1996;134:880-885.
24. Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, De Rooij FWM, De Bruin RWF, Edixhoven-Bosdijk A, Houtsmuller AB, Siersema PD, Wilson JHP, Tilanus HW. 5-Aminolaevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX accumulation in tissues: pharmacokinetics after oral or intravenous administration. J Photochem Phiotobiol B Biol 1998;44:29-38.

Chapter 12

Fractionated Illumination: Effect on Blood Flow and Protoporphyrin IX Formation

This chapter has been adapted from Van den Boogert *et al.* *Lasers in Medical Science* (submitted).

INTRODUCTION

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) is a new treatment modality for (pre)malignant oesophageal lesions like Barrett's oesophagus (Chapter 1). In PDT, laser light is used to activate a photosensitive drug previously administered to accumulate in (pre)malignant tissue (Chapter 3). This activation causes a photochemical reaction, in which singlet oxygen is formed, resulting in tissue damage.[1] In Barrett's oesophagus, endoscopic PDT can eliminate Barrett's epithelium after which normal squamous epithelium regenerates (Chapter 2).[2-9] However, the use of exogenous photosensitizers has been found to cause side effects, such as strictures and perforation.[2-6] With the introduction of the endogenous photosensitizer 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA), these side effects may be reduced as endogenous photosensitization selectively occurs in the oesophageal mucosa. This results in selective PDT damage to the epithelial layer without the occurrence of strictures.[7-9] In contrast, complete ablation often could not be achieved and Barrett's cells remained at the surface or beneath normal appearing squamous epithelium (pseudoregression).[7,9] Optimization of ALA-PDT should lead to a more complete ablation of Barrett's epithelium.

One option for improving the results is fractionating the illumination.[10-16] Depending on the length of the time interval between the light fractions, different theories are cited to explain the effect. In the former chapter one theory has been studied. The results did not support the hypothesis that the supposed enhanced PDT-effect by fractionating the illumination can be explained by selective damage of ferrochelatase during the first illumination.

Another reason for the enhanced effect of fractionated light doses as compared to continuous illumination is a delayed vascular shutdown or relaxation of the vasoconstriction, observed as part of PDT-damage.[17-21] This results in improved tissue oxygenation, essential for the photochemical reaction. Probably a single interval between the illuminations is enough to achieve relieve of vasoconstriction.[13] Using ALA, intervals varying between 30 s and 180 s are reported to be beneficial by reducing vasoconstriction.[12,13] However, the effect of ALA on vessels is not well defined. Both vasoconstriction and vasodilatation have been found.[21-23]

Furthermore, relocation of the photosensitizer during the dark interval is a theory behind light fractionation.[24] With use of ALA this seems unlikely as not ALA itself but endogenously produced protoporphyrin IX (PpIX) is the photosensitive compound. However, due to the histological heterogeneity of Barrett's oesophagus, maximal endogenous formation of PpIX following ALA is probably not achieved in all cells of the Barrett's oesophagus at the same time, which results in heterogeneous porphyrin fluorescence.[25] Fractionation therefore could be used to completely ablate the heterogeneous Barrett's epithelium.

Longer fractionation intervals (1 to 3 h) can produce renewed PDT effect, probably because new porphyrins are formed from the still apparent ALA.[11] Re-appearance of PpIX fluorescence has been demonstrated several hours after the first illumination.[11,26]

The present study was carried out to investigate both hypothesis on enhanced PDT effect with fractionated illumination using short and long time intervals in the normal rat oesophagus.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animals and photosensitization

The experimental protocol was approved by "The Committee on Animal Research" of the Erasmus University Rotterdam. Forty male Wistar rats (Harlan CPB, Zeist, The Netherlands), weighing 325-375 grams, were used. They had free access to tap water and rat chow (AM II, Hope Farms, Woerden, The Netherlands). Photosensitization was achieved by oral administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA (Sigma Chemical Company, St. Louis, MO, USA) dissolved in phosphate-buffered saline. The solution was freshly prepared for each animal and immediately given. All study animals were sacrificed at 48 hours after PDT.

Design of the study

Animals were randomly allocated to two groups of 20 animals each.

In the first group the vascular effects of fractionation were studied by laser Doppler flowmetry (see below). Animals were randomly allocated to four groups of five animals. Two groups served as control: five animals received ALA but no illumination and five animals were illuminated in two equal light doses of 10 J per cm diffuser length with a 150 s interval in between without prior ALA administration. In the study groups five animals received endo-oesophageal ALA-PDT in one continuous light dose of 20 J cm^{-1} at 3 h after ALA administration. The other five animals were illuminated at 3 h after ALA in two equal light doses of 10 J cm^{-1} with a 150 s interval in between.[13]

In the second group new porphyrin forming was studied by PpIX fluorescence measurements. Animals were randomly allocated to four groups of five animals. One group served as control: animals were illuminated (40 J cm^{-1}) without ALA administration (n=5). Two study groups were illuminated at 3 h after ALA, with either 20 J cm^{-1} (n=5) or 40 J cm^{-1} (n=5). Animals in the third study group were illuminated at 3 h (20 J cm^{-1}) plus 6 h (20 J cm^{-1}) after ALA. In all animals PpIX fluorescence was measured at 3, 4, 5 and 6 h after ALA.

PDT treatment

PDT was performed with 633 nm light from a dye laser, (600 Series Dye Module, Laserscope, San Jose, CA, USA), pumped by a KTP/532 surgical laser (Laserscope, San Jose, CA, USA). Light was transmitted through a 400 μm fiber with a 10 mm length cylindrical diffusing tip of 760 μm diameter (Lightstic 360, Rare Earth Medical Inc, West Yarmouth, MA, USA). To deliver homogeneous and circumferential light to the oesophagus, an optically clear double-lumen balloon catheter (PTA Balloon Catheter Opta 5, Cordis, Roden, The Netherlands) was used (length 20 mm, diameter 3.5 mm when inflated with 0.4 ml air), with the lumen for the laser fibre exactly in the centre.[27] This resulted in an illuminated area of 1.1 cm^2. An output power of 100 mW per cm diffuser length was used in all experiments, which corresponds with an irradiance of 91 mW cm^{-2}. The power emitted was calibrated with a built-in power meter. The accuracy of the wavelength was verified with a spectroscope (WaveMate, Coherent, Auburn, CA, USA). During PDT at 15 s intervals, PpIX fluorescence spectra were measured and light dosimetry was performed with a spherical isotropic probe of 800 μm diameter (Rare Earth Medical inc., West Yarmouth, MA, USA), positioned halfway along the balloon (Figure 12.1).

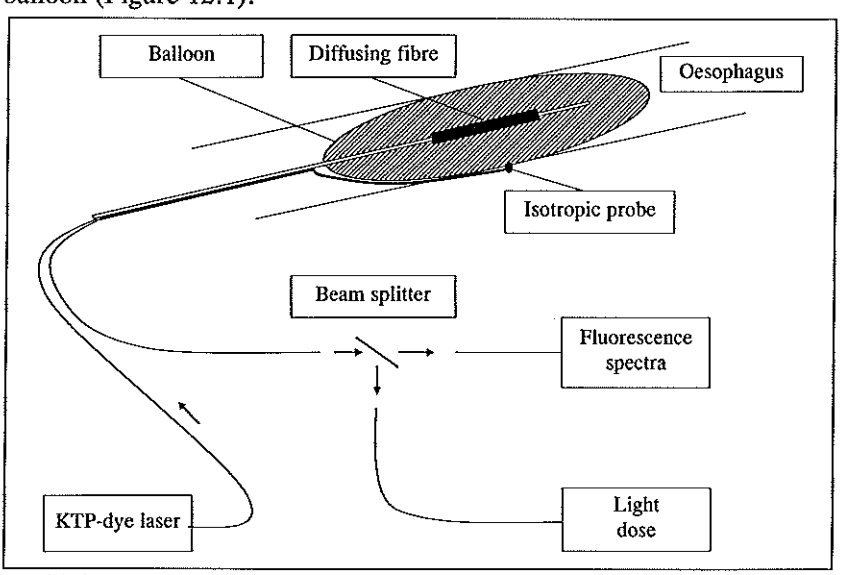


Figure 12.1 Experimental set-up for photodynamic therapy of the rat oesophagus. A cylindrical light diffuser in the centre of a balloon catheter was used to deliver homogeneous and circumferential light to the oesophagus. With the isotropic probe, the true fluence rate and protoporphyrin IX fluorescence spectra were simultaneously recorded.

Its distal fiber end led to a 50/50% beam splitter (Rare Earth Medical inc., West Yarmouth, MA, USA). Part of the light was conveyed to a light dose meter

and the other part to an optical multi-channel analyzer system (Multispec 77400 spectrometer + Intstaspec-IV 77131 CCD-camera, Oriel Instruments, CT, USA) with built-in a combined 630 nm notch plus 665 nm long wavelength pass filter. The response of the isotropic probe was calibrated for true fluence rate measurements using an integrating sphere with a homogeneous diffuse light field.[28] The mean autofluorescence measured in control animals was subtracted from the recorded spectra and the remaining PpIX fluorescence peak at 705 nm was integrated over a 15 nm range. Values are given relative to the start value, which was set to 1. In order to minimize additional PDT effect of the fluorescence measurements performed every hour in the "3 h fractionation" group, a helium/neon laser (633 nm) with an output power of 4.5 mW per cm diffuser length was used. Dosimetry was performed and fluorescence spectra were recorded as described above but were integrated during 60 seconds. This resulted in an additional light dose of approximately 0.3 J cm^{-2} per measurement.

Oesophageal blood flow

A commercially available laser Doppler flowmeter (LDF) (Periflux PF 2B, Perimed, Järfälla, Sweden) equipped with a special angled endoscopic probe (PF 306S, Perimed, Järfälla, Sweden) was used (helium/neon laser, 633 nm, 2 mW). Hereby a flow-dependent output is extracted from the power and frequency distribution of Doppler-shifted signals generated by laser light scattered from perfused tissue.[29] The LDF output should maintain a linear relationship between output and capillary blood cell flux (mean blood cell speed x red blood cell concentration). The sensitivity of the LDF was checked using a calibration standard consisting of 2-μm latex spheres (PF 1001, Perimed, Järfälla, Sweden). From a pilot study it appeared that the flow through the *ex vivo* kidney was grossly linearly related to the LDF signal. Flowmetry during PDT was not possible as the laser light interfered with the Doppler signal. Therefore, blood flow measurements were performed just before and immediately after illumination. To prevent differences in the groups due to laser Doppler flowmetrically induced damage, blood flow was measured in all animals during 240 s. In the continuously illuminated animals, blood flow was measured during 120 s before and after PDT. In the fractionated group flow was measured during 45 s before the first light dose, during the 150 s dark interval and during 45 after the second light dose. Additionally, in all animals oesophageal blood flow was measured during 30 s at 30, 60 and 90 min after PDT.

Histology

Animals were sacrificed at 48 h after PDT and the oesophagus was dissected and opened longitudinally. The oesophagus was curled up from distal to proximal, fixed in formalin, sectioned and stained with haematoxylin and eosin for

conventional light microscopy. Damage was scored semi-quantitatively for epithelium (0=normal, 1=more than 1 cell layer left, 2=1 cell layer left, 3=complete ablation) and muscularis propria (0=100% vital muscle, 1=more than 75% vital muscle, 2=25-75% vital muscle, 3=less than 25% vital muscle) by two investigators, masked to the treatment. Additionally, the selectivity factor (SF) for epithelial damage, defined as the epithelial damage score:muscular damage score was determined.[30]

Statistical analysis

Fluorescence intensity, fluence rate multiplication factors and damage scores are expressed as mean ± standard error of the mean (SEM). Comparisons were made using (paired) Student's *t*- test. A difference was considered to be significant at *P* values of <0.05.

RESULTS

One animal (illuminated at 3 h after ALA with 20 J cm^{-1}) in the "3 h fractionation" group died of anaesthesia during illumination.

Dosimetry

During optical irradiation at 3 h after ALA, the true fluence rate (scattered plus non-scattered light) at the oesophageal surface was approximately 3 times higher than the calculated irradiance (fluence rate multiplication factor β = true fluence rate : calculated irradiance), with a minimum of 2.60±0.35 and a maximum of 3.61±0.33 (Table 12.1). At 3 h after ALA β did not differ between the various study groups ($P \geq 0.13$) or between the study and control groups ($P \geq 0.08$). β was not changed by a single dark interval of 150 s (3.35±0.29 versus 2.97±0.18, $P=0.20$).

At 4, 5 and 6 h after ALA in animals illuminated at 3 h after ALA, β was lower than during the initial illumination at 3 h ($P \leq 0.03$, $P \leq 0.01$ and $P \leq 0.001$ respectively). In control animals without ALA, illumination did not cause a change in β.

Blood flow

The pattern of the oesophageal blood flow did not differ between animals illuminated continuously or with a 150 s interval between the light fractions. In general, oesophageal blood flow had not declined directly after PDT treatment, whether performed with continuous or fractionated illumination. Moreover, no difference in blood flow pattern was observed between animals illuminated with and

without prior ALA administration. Administration of ALA itself did not lead to a change in oesophageal blood flow.

Table 12.1 The fluence rate multiplication factor β (true fluence rate:calculated irradiance) in the various treatment groups.

hours after ALA	0h	3h	4h*	5h*	6h
150 s light fractionation					
control - after 10 J cm^{-1}	3.61±0.33				
- after 20 J cm^{-1}	2.62±0.19				
continuous 20 J cm^{-1}		2.60±0.35			
fractionated - after 10 J cm^{-1}		3.35±0.29			
- after 20 J cm^{-1}		2.97±0.18			
3 h light fractionation					
control (40 J cm^{-1})	2.89±0.12				
continuous 20 J cm^{-1}		2.97±0.06	1.96±0.13[a]	1.62±0.06[a]	1.47±0.05[a]*
continuous 40 J cm^{-1}		3.09±0.10	2.08±0.08[a]	1.76±0.06[a]	1.39±0.07[a]*
fractionated 20 J cm^{-1} + 20 J cm^{-1}		2.70±0.11	2.17±0.11[b]	2.10±0.05[c]	1.83±0.08[a]

Light dose expressed as J per cm diffuser length (cm^{-1}), ALA = 5-aminolevulinic acid, * dosimetry performed during low power fluorescence measurements (additional light dose 0.3 J cm^{-2}), [a] $P \leq 0.001$ (versus 3h), [b] $P = 0.03$ (versus 3h), [c] $P = 0.01$ (versus 3h).

Tissue fluorescence

After administration of ALA the *in vivo* fluorescence spectrum showed the PpIX specific fluorescence peak at 705 nm. In some animals, during PDT a new fluorescence peak appeared at approximately 675 nm (Figure 12.2).
This is probably due to the formation of photoproducts and especially of the hydroxyaldehyde-chlorin photoproducts of PpIX with an emission band at 674 nm.[31-33]

In animals illuminated at 3 h continuously or with a 150 s interval between the two light doses, porphyrin fluorescence equally declined during continuous and fractionated illumination (Figure 12.3). In animals in the "3 h interval group" PpIX fluorescence intensity after 20 J cm^{-1} illumination at 3 h after ALA has equally declined in all groups ($P < 0.001$) (Figure 12.4). In the fractionated and 40 J cm^{-1} group, fluorescence at 705 nm has significantly increased at 4 h after ALA compared to fluorescence at the end of the illumination at 3 h ($P = 0.03$ and $P \leq 0.01$, respectively). In these groups PpIX fluorescence at 5 h was higher than at 4 h after ALA ($P \leq 0.01$). In the 20 J cm^{-1} group significance was not reached. At 6 h after ALA, relative 705 nm fluorescence intensity in the fractionated group was lower than in the continuous groups ($P < 0.001$) and, in all groups, did not differ

from PpIX fluorescence at 5 h after ALA. During the second illumination at 6 h, 705 nm fluorescence intensity declined to background levels.

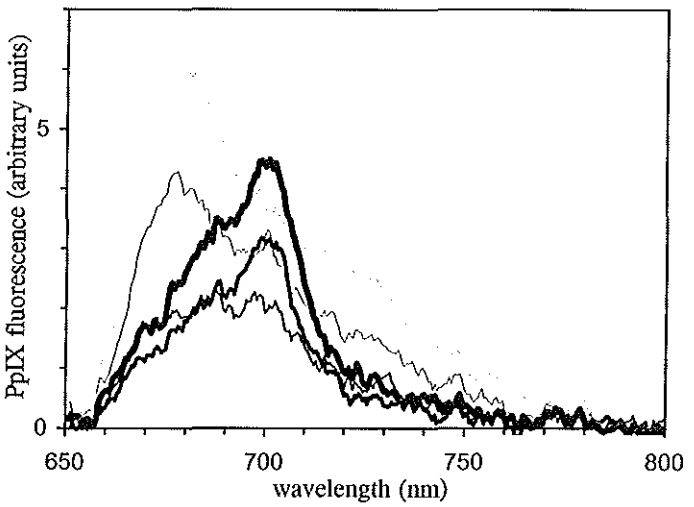


Figure 12.2 Typical protoporphyrin IX (PpIX) fluorescence with a peak at 705 nm seen early during 633 nm illumination with 100 mW cm^{-1} at 3 h after 5-aminolevulinic acid. During illumination, after several minutes, in some animals a new fluorescence peak appeared at 674 nm, probably due to the formation of (hydroxyaldehyde-chlorin) photoproducts of PpIX. (▬ at start of the illumination, ▬ after 1 min, ▬ =after3 min, —— =after 6 min, —— after 7 min).

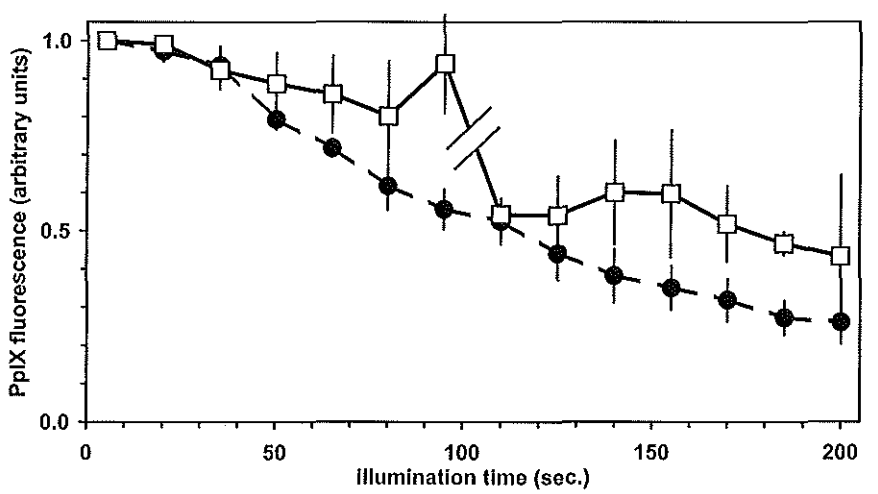


Figure 12.3 Mean integrated protoporphyrin IX (PpIX) fluorescence at 705 nm during 633 nm photodynamic therapy (20 J per cm diffuser length, 100 mW cm^{-1}) at 3 h after 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) administration. The irregularity of the curves of the fractionated group near 100 s illumination time, is due to repositioning of the isotropic probe after the dark interval. The error bars are standard errors of the mean (n=5 for each group). – –●– – = continuous illumination, —□— = fractionated illumination with 150 s dark interval between 2 x 10 J cm^{-1}.

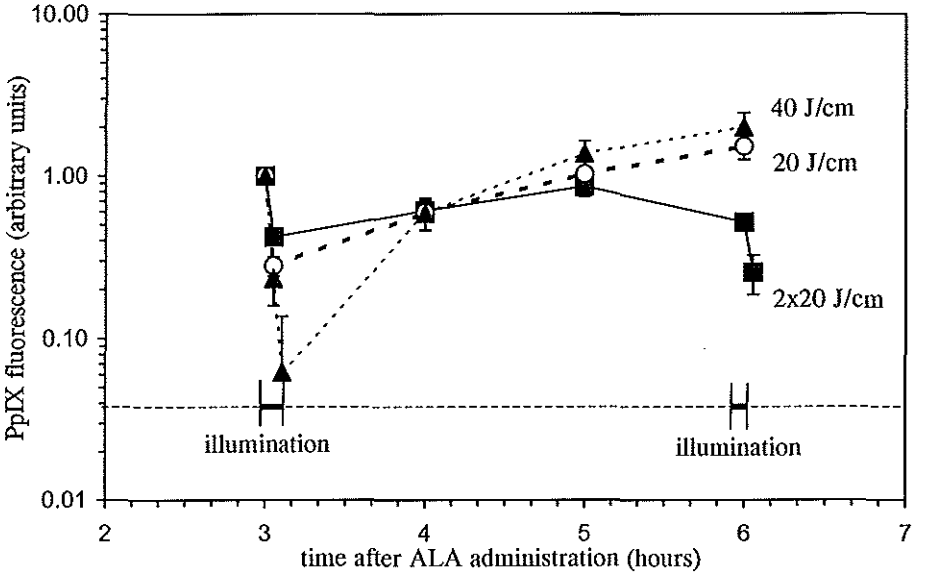


Figure 12.4 Mean integrated porphyrin fluorescence at 705 nm during and after 633 nm photodynamic therapy. Illumination was performed with 100 mW per cm diffuser length at 3 h after 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) (– –o– – = 20 J per cm diffuser length, n=4; ...▲... = 40 J per cm diffuser length, n=5) or with 20 J per cm diffuser length at 3 and 6 h after ALA, n=5 (—■—). The error bars are standard errors of the mean.

Histology

None of the control animals showed any damage to the epithelium or muscle layer. A single interval of 150 s halfway the illumination did neither increase epithelial or muscular damage nor the selectivity factor compared to continuous illumination (P=0.9, P=0.3 and P=0.3, respectively) (Table 12.2). Three animals in the fractionated and two in the continuous group showed complete epithelial ablation.

Table 12.2 Histological damage of the "150 s interval" groups, 48 h after illumination (n=5 for each group). Damage is expressed as mean±standard error of the mean. None of the control animals showed any damage to the epithelium or muscle layer.

illumination	damage		
	epithelium[a]	muscularis[a]	SF[a]
continuous (20 J cm^{-1})	1.9±0.6	2.4±0.4	0.7±0.2
fractionated (1 stop of 150 s between 2x10 J cm^{-1})	1.8±0.7	1.6±0.5	1.0±0.3

Light dose expressed as J per cm diffuser length, SF=selectivity factor for epithelial damage (epithelial damage score:muscular damage score). [a] $P \geq 0.3$ between the two groups. Score (see materials and methods section): 0= no damage, 1= minor damage, 2=major damage, 3=complete epithelial ablation or <25% vital muscle.

The selectivity factor and the damage to the epithelial and muscular layer did not differ significantly between animals illuminated at 3 h only or at 3 h plus 6 h ($P \geq 0.2$, $P \geq 0.2$ and $P \geq 0.1$, respectively) (Table 12.3).

Table 12.3 Histological damage of the "3 h interval" groups, 48 h after illumination. Damage is expressed as mean±standard error of the mean. Animals in the control group did not show any damage to the epithelium or muscle layer.

illumination		damage		
time after ALA	light dose	epithelium[a]	muscularis[a]	SF[a]
3 h[b]	20 J cm^{-1}	2.8±0.3	2.4±0.4	1.3±0.2
3 h[c]	40 J cm^{-1}	3.0±0	2.6±0.2	1.2±0.1
3 h + 6 h[c]	20 J cm^{-1} + 20 J cm^{-1}	3.0±0	3.0±0	1.0±0

Light dose expressed as J per cm diffuser length (cm^{-1}), SF=selectivity factor for epithelial damage (epithelial damage score:muscular damage score). [a] $P \geq 0.1$ between the three groups, [b] n=4, [c] n=5. Score (see materials and methods section): 0= no damage, 1= minor damage, 2=major damage, 3=complete epithelial ablation or <25% vital muscle.

All animals in the groups receiving 40 J cm^{-1} in one single dose at 3 h or in two equal fractions at 3 and 6 h, showed complete epithelial ablation (Figure 12.5). One animal that had received 20 J cm^{-1} had a lower epithelial damage score of 2.

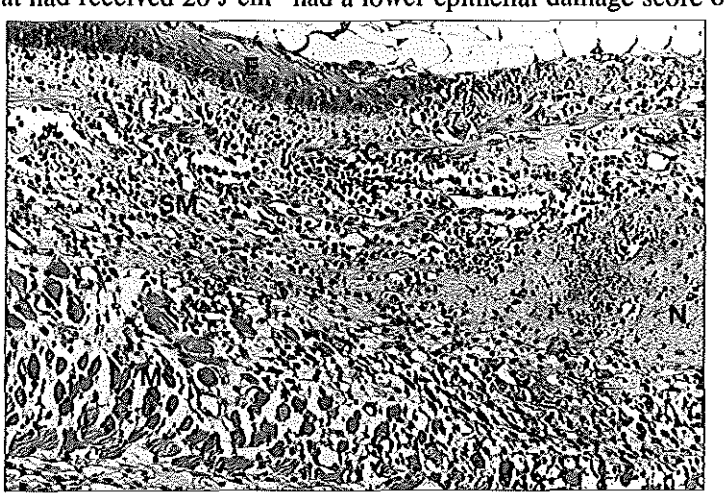


Figure 12.5 Histopathological section of the rat oesophagus after 5-aminolevulinic acid-mediated photodynamic therapy with 633 nm light irradiation of 100 mW per cm diffuser length and 40 J per cm diffuser length. The arrow indicates the beginning of the illuminated area (from arrow to the right), showing complete epithelial ablation. The submucosa shows oedema and the muscle layer necrosis and cellular infiltration. C=cellular infiltration, E=epithelium, M=muscularis propria, N=necrosis, SM=submucosa.

DISCUSSION

The study described in this chapter was carried out to reveal whether a fractionated light delivery could improve the results of ALA-PDT for superficial oesophageal lesions. In the normal rat oesophagus, ALA-PDT did not cause a reduction in microvascular blood flow as measured by Doppler flowmetry. During an interval of 3 h new PpIX is formed. In the present study, fractionated illumination using short or long time intervals did not result in more damage.

To study the effect of fractionated illumination on oesophageal blood flow, a single dark interval of 150 s was chosen on the basis of results from previous studies in which it appeared that a single short dark interval results in a five times larger area of necrosis after ALA-PDT.[13] In the studies performing fractionated ALA-PDT however, blood flow was not measured.[12,13] Other studies, in which blood flow during and after ALA-PDT was measured show conflicting results and were not combined with fractionation of the light dose.[21-23] The time needed for relieve of vasoconstriction ranges between 0.05 s (pulsed laser light) and several minutes. Pulsed laser light, investigated in an in vitro study using meta-tetrahydroxy-phenylchlorin (mTHPC) as photosensitizer, may act via short phases of recovery during the dark intervals, probably resulting in more singlet oxygen.[34] However, using Photofrin®, pulsed and continuous wave laser light induced comparable injury in the dog oesophagus.[35] Furthermore, the rate of photobleaching of PpIX, an oxygen dependent process, did not differ between continuous or fractionated (150 s stop) light delivery, indicating similar oxygen and thus vascular circumstances.[33] The histological sections at 48 h after PDT, show severe inflammation of the treated area with infiltration of inflammatory cells and hyperaemia and show no signs of vasoconstriction.

The observed hyperaemia could explain the difference in tissue optical properties between the first illumination at 3 h after ALA and measurements at 4, 5 and 6 h after ALA. The resulting decrease in the fluence rate multiplication factor β is probably caused by an increase of the absorption of light by blood due to hyperaemia.

The observation that a single 150 s dark interval did not result in more complete epithelial ablation is clearly in contradiction with the observed five to eight times larger area of necrosis mentioned by Messman *et al.*[13] They performed ALA-PDT in the normal rat colon, and so the differences may be explained by the organ investigated.

The second part of this study dealt with fractionating the light to make ongoing PpIX formation possible. In accordance with two other studies, we observed new PpIX fluorescence in the hours following the initial illumination.[11,26] At 6 h after ALA, PpIX fluorescence in animals illuminated at 3 h plus 6 h after ALA was

lower than in animals illuminated at 3 h after ALA only. This can be explained by the fact that in the former group of animals PpIX fluorescence has more bleached as it was recorded during PDT treatment with the Dye laser (fluorescence measurement after 20 s, 2 J cm^{-2}) whereas PpIX fluorescence in the latter group of animals was recorded with the helium/neon laser (60 s, 0.3 J cm^{-2}).

An ALA-kinetic study we performed earlier showed that maximal PpIX concentration in the rat oesophagus is found at 3 h after ALA administration (Chapter 8).[25,27] Furthermore, at 3 h after ALA administration, ALA can still be detected in oesophageal mucosa and muscle layer.[25] This provides possibilities for ongoing PpIX formation but to ensure this, cells must at least have the haem synthetic pathway enzymes up to PpIX formation working. *In vitro* experiments will be needed to determine cell viability shortly after ALA-PDT. Furthermore, from the results of studies by He and coworkers and the study described in Chapter 11 it appears that during PDT the enzyme ferrochelatase can be selectively destructed as PpIX is temporarily bound to this enzyme.[36,37] Ferrochelatase converts PpIX into photochemically inactive haem and a lower activity of this enzyme therefore theoretically leads to accumulation of more PpIX. However, although the study in Chapter 11 shows damage to ferrochelatase by fractionating the illumination, no enhancement of the PDT-induced epithelial ablation was achieved.

Other possible producers of PpIX after initial illumination are attracted inflammatory cells. After the first illumination inflammatory cells migrate quickly to the damaged area. Neutrophils and mast cells are found already at 5 minutes after PDT.[38] Being not activated by the laser light, these cells carry their unbleached ALA-induced PpIX and may additionally use the ALA that leaks from the damaged oesophageal cells for PpIX formation. Whether oesophageal cells formed new PpIX out of still apparent ALA or that PpIX was carried to the treated area by inflammatory cells attracted by cell damage induced during the initial illumination, needs to be established.

In conclusion, ALA-PDT of the normal rat oesophagus did not cause a decrease in oesophageal microvascular blood flow. During an interval of 3 h after initial illumination at 3 h after ALA administration, new PpIX fluorescence was observed, which was bleached during a second treatment at 6 h. Whether oesophageal cells formed new PpIX out of still apparent ALA or that PpIX was carried to the treated area by inflammatory cells attracted by cell damage induced during the initial illumination, needs to be established. Under the present treatment conditions, fractionated illumination using short (150 s) or long (3 h) time intervals did not result in more damage. Thus, this study shows no evidence for improved PDT effect with fractionated light delivery.

REFERENCES

1 Moore MR. The photochemistry, photobiology, and phototherapeutic use of porphyrins. In: Moore MR, McColl KE Rimmington C, Goldberg A (eds). Disorders of porphyrin metabolism. Plenum, New York 1987:21-72.

2 Laukka MA, Wang KK. Initial results using low-dose photodynamic therapy in treatment of Barrett's esophagus. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;42:59-63.

3 Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Barrett's esophagus: photodynamic therapy for ablation of dysplasia, reduction of specialized mucosa, and treatment of superficial esophageal cancer. Gastrointest Endosc 1995;42:64-69.

4 Wang KK, WongKeeSong LM, Nourbahkhs A,Laukka M, Geller A, Balm R. Controlled trial of low dose photodynamic therapy for Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1997;112:A676.

5 Overholt BF, Panjehpour M. Photodynamic therapy eliminates dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology 1997;112:A634.

6 Wang KK, WongKeeSong LM, Nourbakhsh A, Balm R. Can consistent tissue necrosis be achieved during photodynamic therapy for high-grade dysplasia or cancer within Barrett's esophagus? Gastroenterology 1998;112:A676.

7 Barr H, Shepherd NA, Dix A, Roberts DJH, Tan WC, Krasner N. Eradication of high-grade dysplasia in columnar-lined (Barrett's) oesophagus by photodynamic therapy with endogenously generated protoporphyrin IX. Lancet 1996;348:584-585.

8 Ackroyd R, Davis MF, Stephenson TJ, Brown NJ, Stoddard CJ, Reed MWR. Photodynamic therapy for Barrett's oesophagus: a prospective randomised placebo-controlled trial. Endoscopy 1997;29:E17.

9 Gossner L, Stolte M, Sroka R, Rick K, May A, Hahn EG, Ell C. Photodynamic ablation of high-grade dysplasia and early cancer in Barrett's esophagus by means of 5-aminolevulinic acid. Gastroenterology 1998;114:448-455.

10 Moan J, Christensen T. Photodynamic inactivation of cancer cells in vitro. Effect of irradiation temperature and dose fractionation. Cancer Let 1979;6:331-335.

11 Van der Veen N, Van Leengoed HLLM, Star WM. In vivo fluorescence kinetics and photodynamic therapy using 5-aminolaevulinic acid-induced porphyrin: increased damage after multiple irradiations. Br J Cancer 1994;70:867-872.

12 Hua Z, Gibson SL, Foster TH, Hilf R. Effectiveness of δ-aminolevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin as a photosensitizer for photodynamic therapy in vivo. Cancer Res 1995;55:1723-1731.

13 Messmann H, Mlkvy P, Buonaccorsi G, Davies CL, MacRobert AJ, Bown SG. Enhancement of photodynamic therapy with 5-aminolaevulinic acid-induced porphyrin photosensitisation in normal rat colon by threshold and light fractionation studies. Br J Cancer 1995;72:589-594.

14 Van Geel IP, Oppelaar H, Marijnissen JP, Stewart FA. Influence of fractionation and fluence rate in photodynamic therapy with Photofrin or mTHPC. Radiat Res 1996;145:602-609.

15 Mlkvy P, Messmann H, MacRobert AJ, Pauer M, Sams VR, Davies CL, Stewart JCM, Bown SG. Photodynamic therapy of a transplanted pancreatic cancer model using meta-tetrahydroxyphenylchlorin (mTHPC). Br J Cancer 1997;76:713-718.

16 Messmann H, Szeimies RM, Bäumler W, Knüchel R, Zirngibl H, Schölmerich J, Holstege A. Enhanced effectiveness of photodynamic therapy with laser light fractionation in patients with esophageal cancer. Endoscopy 1997;29:275-280.

17 Star WM, Marijnissen JPA, Van den Berg-Blok AE, Versteeg AAC, Franken NAP, Reinhold HS. Destruction of rat mammary tumor and normal tissue microcirculation by hematoporphyrin derivative photoradiation observed in vivo in sandwich observation chambers. Cancer Res 1986;46:2532-2540.

18 Wieman TJ, Mang TS, Fingar VH, Hill TG, Reed MWR, Corey TS. Effect of photodynamic therapy on blood flow in normal and tumor vessels. Surgery 1988;104:512-517.

19 Reed MWR, Wieman TJ, Schuschke DA, Tseng MT, Miller FN. A comparison of the effect of photodynamic therapy on normal and tumour blood vessels in the rat microcirculation.

Radiat Res 1989;119:542-552.
20 Roberts DJH, Cairnduff F, Driver I, Dixon B, Brown SB. Tumour vascular shutdown following photodynamic therapy based on polyhaematoporphyrin or 5-aminolevulinic acid. Int J Oncol 1994;5:763-768.
21 Leveckis J, Brown NJ, Reed MWR. The effect of aminolaevulinic acid-induced, protoporphyrin IX mediated photodynamic therapy on the cremaster muscle circulation in vivo. Br J Cancer 1995;72:1113-1119.
22 Svanberg K, Liu DL, Wang I, Andersson-Engels S, Stenram U, Svanberg S. Photodynamic therapy using intravenous delta-aminolaevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX sensitisation in experimental hepatic tumours in rats. Br J Cancer 1996;74:1526-1533.
23 Wang I, Andersson-Engels S, Nilsson GE, Wardell K, Svanberg K. Superficial blood flow following photodynamic therapy of malignant non-melanoma skin tumours measured by laser Doppler perfusion imaging. Br J Dermatol 1997;136:184-189.
24 Anholt H, Moan J. Fractionated treatment of CaD2 tumors in mice sensitized with aluminium phtalocyanine tetrasulfonate. Cancer Let 1991;263-267.
25 Van den Boogert J, Houtsmuller AB, De Rooij FWM, De Bruin RWF, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Kinetics, localization and mechanism of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrin accumulation in normal and Barrett's-like rat esophagus. Lasers Surg Med 1999;24:3-13.
26 Van der Veen N, De Bruijn HS, Star WM. Photobleaching during and re-appearance after photodynamic therapy of topical ALA-induced fluorescence in UVB-treated mouse skin. Int J Cancer 1997;72:110-118.
27 Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Van Staveren HJ, De Bruin RWF, Van Dekken H, Siersema PD, Tilanus HW. Timing of illumination is essential for effective and safe photodynamic therapy: a study in the normal rat oesophagus. Br J Cancer 1999;79:825-830.
28 Van Staveren HJ, Marijnissen JPA, Aalders MCG, Star WM. Construction, quality assurance and calibration of spherical isotropic fibre optic light diffusers. Lasers Med Sci 1995; 10:137-147.
29 Almond NE, Wheatley AM. Measurement of hepatic perfusion in rats by laser Doppler flowmetry. Am J Physiol 1992;262:G203-G209.
30 Van den Boogert J, Van Staveren HJ, De Bruin RWF, Eikelaar JHR, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Photodynamic therapy for esophageal lesions: selectivity depends on wavelength, power and light dose. Ann Thorac Surg (in press).
31 Konig K, Schneckenburger H, Ruck A, Steiner R. In-vivo photoproducts formation during PDT with ALA-induced endogenous porphyrins. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1993;18:287-290.
32 Ahram M, Cheong WF, Ward K, Kessel D. Photoproduct formation during irradiation of tissues containing protoporphyrin. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1994; 26:203-204.
33 Robinson DJ, De Bruijn HS, Van der Veen N, Stringer MR, Brown SB, Star WM. Fluorescence photobleaching of ALA-induced protoporphyrin IX during photodynamic therapy of normal hairless mouse skin: the effect of light dose and irradiance and the resulting biological effect. Photochem Photobiol 1998;67:140-149.
34 Müller S, Walt H, Dobler-Girdzuinaite D, Fiedler D, Haller U. Enhanced photodynamic effect using fractionated laser light. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1998;42:67-70.
35 Panjehpour M, Overholt BF, DeNovo RC, Petersen MG, Sneed RE. Comparative study between pulsed and continuous wave lasers for Photofrin® photodynamic therapy. Lasers Surg Med 1993;13:296-304.
36 He D, Behar S, Nomura N, Sassa S, Lim HW. The effect of ALA and radiation on porphyrin/heme biosynthesis in endothelial cells. Photochem Photobiol 1995;61:656-661.
37 Van den Boogert J, Van Staveren HJ, De Bruin RWF, De Rooij FWM, Edixhoven-Bosdijk A, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Fractionated illumination in oesophageal PDT: effect on ferrochelatase activity. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol (submitted).
38 Krosl G, Korbelik M, Dougherty GJ. Induction of immune infiltration into murine SCCVII tumour by Photofrin-based photodynamic therapy. Br J Cancer 1995;71:549-555.

Part V

General Discussion

Chapter 13

General Discussion: Considerations for Clinical Application

INTRODUCTION

The studies described in this thesis were prompted by the realization that although Barrett's oesophagus is the known precursor of oesophageal adenocarcinoma, there is no curative therapy for Barrett's oesophagus.[1] At present, patients with Barrett's oesophagus and reflux complaints are treated with antireflux medication or possibly antireflux surgery. However, these therapies have no effect on the Barrett's epithelium itself nor on the development of adenocarcinoma. It would be a great step forward if Barrett's epithelium could be ablated before adenocarcinoma has developed. Furthermore, a minimally invasive treatment as an alternative to oesophagectomy as treatment for Barrett's oesophagus with high-grade dysplasia or superficial cancer is needed because of the high morbidity and mortality associated with this operation. This alternative treatment should also be applicable in patients at high risk for surgery and general anaesthesia.

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) with 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA)-induced photosensitization is one of the new modalities for the endoscopic treatment of Barrett's oesophagus. Some promising case-reports have been described. However, until know, very few clinical studies on ALA-based PDT for Barrett's oesophagus have been performed (Chapter 2).[2] Complete reversal of the Barrett's epithelium has been achieved in 10% of patients. Therefore, the results have to be improved before ALA-PDT can routinely be used for the treatment of patients with Barrett's oesophagus.

At present, PDT has not yet been approved for the treatment of Barrett's oesophagus. Approval for PDT has been given for palliation in obstructive oesophageal cancer in The Netherlands, USA and Canada.[3] The U.S. Food & Drug Administration approved only Photofrin® as photosensitizer and no second- or third-generation photosensitizers. However, approvals for ALA-PDT for the treatment of patients with Barrett's oesophagus are currently being sought. Then, the treatment is no longer confined to use in clinical trials or inoperable patients. This implies that patients fit for surgery will be treated by a still experimental treatment modality with a change of incomplete ablation of the premalignant epithelium and the occurrence of side-effects. This incomplete ablation is extra dangerous because the phenomenon of pseudoregression (regenerated squamous mucosa covering remnant Barrett's cells) makes the remnant premalignant cells invisible at endoscopic surveillance.

Our research was therefore directed towards improvement of ALA-PDT in inducing selective and complete epithelial ablation of the oesophagus with a low occurrence of side-effects. Furthermore, the experiments described in the present thesis provide insight in the working mechanism of the therapy resulting in a well-founded treatment proposal for further clinical studies on ALA-PDT for Barrett's oesophagus.

ANIMAL MODEL

Present

The first step necessary to investigate ALA-PDT for Barrett's oesophagus in animals was the development of an animal model for Barrett's oesophagus. This proved to be difficult. Especially because studies in human suggest that Barrett's oesophagus is a lesion that takes years to develop. We are the first who managed to develop an animal model for macroscopic Barrett's oesophagus in the rat (Chapter 4).[4] Besides rats we used opossums because the upper gastrointestinal tract of this species resembles the human situation. Although not actually the scope of this thesis, several important conclusions concerning the pathogenesis and etiology of Barrett's oesophagus can be drawn from our studies.

First, Barrett's oesophagus does not originate from submucosal gland ducts as rats lack these structures. Furthermore, longstanding duodeno-oesophageal reflux, and bile reflux in particular, induces Barrett's oesophagus in rats and it provides an imperative environment for the development of carcinoma when combined with a carcinogen. Opossums only developed microscopic foci of specialized metaplasia in a minority of cases probably because they have less severe bile reflux after oesophagojejunostomy and they have a different composition of bile.

Future

In the rat model for Barrett's oesophagus several questions concerning the pathogenesis and treatment of Barrett's oesophagus can be investigated. Surgical modifications (for example, Roux-en-Y procedure) inducing selective reflux of bile acids or pancreatic enzymes or adding possible promoting or protecting factors (for example, pepsine, HCl, H-2 blockers, proton pump inhibitors, taurinedeoxycholaat, glycinedeoxycholaat) should lead to further insight in the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus. On the other hand, it is possible that not one particular component in the refluxate induces intestinal metaplasia but that reflux in general leads to chronic irritation and a higher cell turn-over. As the various bile acids differ in their irritating action (depending in part on the pH of the refluxate) the composition of the refluxate remains important. In addition, studies influencing the inflammatory reaction (for example, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, corticosteroids) must be performed.

Pathogenetic studies on Barrett's oesophagus can be combined with studies on the prevention and treatment of Barrett's oesophagus and malignant degeneration of the entity. As mentioned before, the most widely used form of management of patients with Barrett's oesophagus is acid suppression, although this does not address the issue of bile reflux. Moreover, the observation that the recent increase in the incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma parallels the introduction of H-2

blockers and proton pump inhibitors might indicate that bile reflux is also (or even more) damaging in an alkaline environment.[5] Besides that, antireflux medication induces bacterial overgrowth in the stomach (and these bacteria are able to deconjugate bile acids). Antireflux surgery is practised on the basis that it abolishes both acid and alkaline reflux. It has been shown to arrest or even regress the progression of columnarisation but occasionally the development of adenocarcinoma has been reported following successful antireflux surgery.[6-11] Our findings support the need for a multi-centre, randomised, controlled clinical trial in which acid suppression by proton pump inhibition will be compared to antireflux surgery on the risk of development of adenocarcinoma.

It is theoretically possible that surgery may prevent adenocarcinoma if performed sufficiently early in the sequence of genomic instability, but that the point may reached beyond which no form of treatment can prevent the development of adenocarcinoma.[12] The only way to reduce the predetermined cancer risk would be to remove the abnormal epithelium and encourage a normal lining to regenerate. This could be achieved by endoscopic mucosal ablation, which must be followed or even preceded by antireflux surgery. At present, most patients are maintained on a proton pump inhibitor after endoscopic ablation therapies (including PDT) for Barrett's oesophagus. Some failures of the treatment are attributed to "inadequate antireflux therapy" or "intractable reflux".[13-16] Considering the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus this seems unlikely. Despite the debate, it is believed that suppressive acid therapy must be maintained after PDT for Barrett's oesophagus. The optimal management of Barrett's oesophagus should be identified by comparing the long-term efficacy and influence on the risk of developing adenocarcinoma of PDT alone, PDT together with antireflux surgery and PDT with pharmacological acid suppression. To investigate this, studies in the animal model and prospective clinical trials are supplementary.

PHARMACOKINETICS

General

In chapter 7 it is shown that a relative high dose of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA is not toxic in rats, neither after oral nor after intravenous administration.[17] A considerable amount of ALA was lost via the urine. Therefore, a dose of 40 or 60 mg kg^{-1} ALA as is used in patients seems to be safe. In contrast to what is found in approximately one third of patients, we did not find a transient increase in serum aminotransaminase level after oral ALA administration.[18,19] Furthermore, an important outcome of the study was that oral administration induces similar porphyrin accumulation in almost every organ compared to intravenous administration, making it more easy and likely safer to use in patients.

Oesophageal

We were especially interested in the pharmacokinetics of ALA and subsequent porphyrin accumulation in the normal rat oesophagus and in rats with Barrett's oesophagus. The study in the normal rat oesophagus was more easy to perform. The entire oesophagus provided enough tissue to perform ALA and porphyrin measurements and porphyrin fluorescence was homogeneous resulting in an intensity value with a rather small standard deviation.[20] In animals with (microscopic) Barrett's oesophagus chemical extraction was not possible as, after 18 weeks of duodeno-oesophageal reflux, animals only had small areas of microscopic Barrett's epithelium. Furthermore, porphyrin fluorescence in these animals was more heterogeneous due to the histological heterogeneity of Barrett's oesophagus.

From the fluorescence study it appears that, in contrast to what is often cited and what many involved in ALA-PDT believe, the selectivity of ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation lies in the difference between epithelium, whether squamous or Barrett's, and the muscularis and not between Barrett's and squamous epithelium. However, although porphyrin accumulation did not selectively occur in Barrett's epithelium, ALA-induced endogenous photosensibilization seems highly suitable for PDT treatment of Barrett's oesophagus, since, for the treatment of oesophageal lesions it is more important to leave the muscle layer intact than the fast-regenerating adjacent normal squamous epithelium.

Whether a difference in ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation does appear in case of Barrett's oesophagus with high grade dysplasia or adenocarcinoma needs to be established. Some studies show a higher intracellular accumulation of endogenous protoporphyrin IX in areas of high-grade dysplasia and malignant lesions than in the surrounding mucosa in oesophagus, duodenum and colon.[18,21] This preferential accumulation in dysplastic cells can be used for diagnosis. Initial experience with ALA-induced photodynamic diagnosis seems to indicate reliable tumour photosensitization.[22,23] However, the diagnostic predictive value depends on the ALA dose (local application of ALA with a spray catheter is also under investigation) and the time interval between administration and endoscopy. Further investigations are needed to evaluate the sensitivity and specificity of photodynamic diagnosis for different tumour entities.

From the present study it is clear that photodynamic diagnosis based on ALA-induced photosensitization will not be able to differentiate between normal squamous epithelium and Barrett's epithelium with no dysplasia. In addition, one needs to keep in mind that performing ALA-PDT for Barrett's oesophagus will always also induce damage to the adjacent normal squamous epithelium. The position of the laser fibre finally determines the semi-selectivity of the treatment.

OPTIMIZATION OF ALA-PDT

The major limiting factor in using PDT is the restricted depth of ablation. Furthermore, from both clinical and preclinical studies it appears that part of the treated tissues and tumours respond with unpredictable depths of necrosis. This is complicated by the dependence of PDT on numerous complex variables: photosensitizer localization, tissue concentration, oxygenation and blood flow, target tissue optical properties, activation wavelength, power density, light source and treatment regimen.[24]

To optimize the results of ALA-PDT for oesophageal lesions we performed four studies (chapter 9 to 12).[25-28] The most important outcome of these studies is that the way in which illumination is performed determines to a great extent the results of ALA-PDT. The sole combination of photosensitizer and laser light is no guarantee for success. Although there has been far less attention to the physical performance of illumination than to the selectivity of the photosensitizer, our studies proof that the boundary between success and failure depends on the accuracy of the illumination. There is no reason to assume that herein Barrett's oesophagus differs from the normal oesophagus, nor that the human oesophagus differs from the rat one.

First, the time of illumination after administration of ALA is important and there is a rather narrow time span in which illumination has to be performed, in our study between 2 and 3 h after ALA administration (Chapter 9).[25] Otherwise only minor damage to the epithelium can be achieved, although ALA induces "selective" PpIX accumulation in the oesophageal epithelium. Furthermore, not only for the completeness of the epithelial ablation but also for the occurrence of side-effects it is important to choose the right time interval between ALA administration and illumination. Fortunately, we saw the lowest occurrence of side effects at the time points where maximal epithelial damage was induced (2 and 3 h after ALA administration). Oesophageal dilatation and weight loss, probably caused by nerve damage, occurred in animals illuminated relatively late after ALA administration.

Second, the choice of the laser parameters is important. Wavelength, total light dose and power output need to be chosen accurately. In our study, 633 nm light was more effective in inducing epithelial damage than 532 nm light, probably because fluence rate at the oesophageal surface was highest for 633 nm light.[26] Furthermore, delivering 8.3 J cm^{-1} did not cause any damage to the epithelium when it was applied with 300 mW cm^{-1}, some damage when it was applied with 100 mW cm^{-1} and very selective and complete epithelial ablation using 33 mW cm^{-1}. The importance of this observation is not in the exact figures but in the realization that choosing a relatively low power output dramatically increases the induced epithelial damage. Increasing the total light dose will further increase the damage, both to the

epithelial and muscle layer. We found no difference in (epithelial) damage between fractionated (using short or long time intervals) and continuous illumination.[27,28]

In patient studies performing PDT it is important that the way in which PDT is performed is mentioned in detail, including the time of illumination after administration of the photosensitizer and all laser parameters. In general, most reports of PDT are anecdotal or preliminary and include patients with different types of tumours and different stages. Further, many treatment parameters are not comparable. These variables make it difficult to interpret the various data.

In addition, our studies demonstrate the importance of light dosimetry and fluorescence measurements during illumination. Only when studies comply with these requirements, the various results can be properly compared, leading to a better insight in ALA-PDT-induced damage and a well-considered performance of the treatment in the future.

Further optimization of ALA-PDT should include use of ALA esters, addition of iron chelators, raising the concentration and activity of neutrophils, enhancement of the apoptotic response and the combination with hyperthermia to PDT.[29-34]

Considerations for Clinical Application

In the studies described in this thesis, ALA-PDT has been found to produce selective and complete epithelial ablation of the normal rat oesophagus. The induced damage was found to heal fast and complete.

Besides the possible difference in reaction on ALA-PDT between normal squamous and Barrett's epithelium in rats, there might also be a difference between the rat and human oesophagus. The studies in the present thesis did not intend to provide a "ready-made" PDT scheme for use in clinical practice and the results can not be translated literally to the human situation. However, important results on the pharmacokinetics, mechanism, optimization and dangers of ALA-PDT treatment in general and ALA-PDT for oesophageal lesions in particular described in the present thesis provide insight that is of use in both clinical and preclinical studies. For further "fine-tuning" patient studies, parallel to further preclinical studies as outlined above, are indispensable.

We believe that the experimental studies presented in this thesis have justified phase I clinical studies to investigate the feasibility of ALA-PDT for Barrett's oesophagus. Hereby it is most important that the results of the treatment are accurately histologically controlled. Taking random biopsies is not enough as small islands of Barrett's mucosa and especially the presence of Barrett's cells beneath normal appearing squamous mucosa (pseudoregression) can be overlooked. A study in which additional ALA-PDT is performed in patients, who will have to undergo

oesophagectomy for high-grade dysplasia or adenocarcinoma at various time intervals after PDT, is preferable. Like we performed in our animal studies, thorough transmural histological examination of the resection specimen provides essential information on the completeness of PDT-induced epithelial ablation. In our opinion this is the only way in which a "promising new treatment modality" like ALA-PDT, can become an "approved treatment modality" for patients with Barrett's oesophagus. It is such an elegant therapy that we should "treat" it with caution in midst of more aggressive ablation and surgical therapies.

The studies in this thesis have provided a strong fundament for the further development of ALA-PDT as clinical therapy for patients with Barrett's oesophagus. However, randomized trials are certainly necessary before ALA-PDT can be recommended as primary treatment for Barrett's oesophagus and early oesophageal cancer. Until then, given the good long-term results after surgery for Barrett's oesophagus and high-grade dysplasia or superficial adenocarcinoma, along with the fact that it eliminates the need for repeated endoscopies and acid suppression, we believe surgery should remain the preferred treatment for these entities. On the other hand, the fact that PDT can be performed on an out-patient base, the minimally invasive character of the therapy and the low morbidity rate make ALA-PDT well suited for non-operative candidates and for continued clinical trials aimed at improving its efficacy.

REFERENCES

1 Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Siersema PD, De Bruin RWF, Tilanus HW, Barrett's oesophagus: pathophysiology, diagnosis and management. Scand J Gastroenterol 1998;33:449-453.

2 Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Siersema PD, De Bruin RWF, Tilanus HW. Endoscopic ablation therapy for Barrett's esophagus with high-grade dysplasia: a review. Am J Gastroenterol 1999;94:1153-1160.

3 Webber J, Herman M, Kessel D, Fromm D. Current concepts in gastrointestinal photodynamic therapy. Ann Surg 1999;230:12-23.

4 Van den Boogert J, De Bruin RWF, Van Dekken H, De Rooij FWM, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Duodenogastroesophageal reflux induces macroscopic Barrett's esophagus in the rat but not in the opossum. Gastroenterology (submitted).

5 Marshall REK, Anggiansah A, Owen WJ. Bile in the oesophagus: clinical relevance and ambulatory detection. Br J Surg 1997;84:21-28.

6 Ortiz A, Martinez De Haro LF, Parilla P, Morales G, Molina J, Bermejo J, Liron R, Aguilar J. Conservative treatment versus anti-reflux surgery in Barrett's oesophagus: long-term results of a prospective study. Br J Surg 1996;78:274-278.

7 Brand DL, Ylvisaker JT, Gelfand M, Pope CE. Regression of columnar esophageal (Barrett's) epithelium after anti-reflux surgery. N Engl J Med 1980;302:844-848.

8 Williamson WA, Ellis FH, Gibb SP, Shahian DM, Aretz HT. Effect of anti-reflux operations on Barrett's mucosa. Ann Thorac Surg 1990;49:537-542.

9 Attwood SEA, Barlow AP, Norris TL, Watson A. Barrett's oesophagus: effect of anti-reflux surgery on symptom control and development of complications. Br J Surg 1992;79:1050-1053.

10 Sagar PM, Ackroyd R, Hosie KB, Patterson JE, Stoddard CJ, Kingsnorth AN. Regression and progression of Barrett's oesophagus after anti-reflux surgery. Br J Surg 1995;82:806-810.

11 Hamilton SR, Hutcheon DF, Ravich WJ, Cameron JL, Paulson M. Adenocarcinoma in Barrett's esophagus after elimination of gastroesophageal reflux. Gastroenterology 1984;86:356-360.

12 Hameeteman W, Tytgat GN, Houthoff HJ, Van den Tweel JG, Barrett's esophagus: development of dysplasia and adenocarcinoma. Gastroenterology 1986;96:1249-1256.

13 Jackson FW, Husson M, Wright S, Lipschutz W, DuFayne F, Aronchick C. Eradication of Barrett's epithelium with multipolar electrocautery. Gastrointest Endosc 1997;45:AB71.

14 Kovacs BJ, Chen YK, Lewis TD, DeGuzman LJ, Thompson KS, Walter MM, Griffin RA. Reversal of Barrett's esophagus with multipolar elektrocoagulation: is acid suppression important? Gastrointest Endosc 1997;45:AB72.

15 Brandt LJ, Kauvar DR. Laser-induced transient regression of Barrett's epithelium. Gastrointest Endosc 1992;38:619-622.

16 Overholt BF, Panjehpour M, Haydek JM. Photodynamic therapy for Barrett's esophagus: follow-up in 100 patients. Gastrointest Endosc 1999;49:1-7.

17 Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, De Rooij FWM, De Bruin RWF, Edixhoven-Bosdijk A, Houtsmuller AB, Siersema PD, Wilson JHP, Tilanus HW. 5-Aminolaevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX accumulation in tissues: pharmacokinetics after oral or intravenous administration. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1998;44:29-38.

18 Regula J, MacRobert AJ, Gorchein A. Photosensitisation and photodynamic therapy of oesophageal, duodenal, and colorectal tumours using 5-aminolaevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX: a pilot study. Gut 1995;36:67-75.

19 Herman MA, Webber J, Fromm D, Kessel D. Hemodynamic effects of 5-aminolevulinic acid in humans. J Photochem Photobiol Biol 1998;43:61-65.

20 Van den Boogert J, Houtsmuller AB, De Rooij FWM, De Bruin RWF, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Kinetics, localization, and mechanism of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced porphyrin accumulation in normal and Barrett's-like rat esophagus. Lasers Surg Med 1999;24:3-13.

21 Bedwell J, MacRobert AJ, Phillps D, Bown SG. Fluorescence distribution and photodynamic effect of ALA-induced PpIX in the DMH rat colonic tumour model. Br J Cancer 1992;65:818-824.
22 Messmann H, Knüchel R, Bäumler W, Holstege A, Schölmerich J. Endoscopic fluorescence detection of dysplasia in patients with Barrett's esophagus, ulcerative colitis, or adenomatous polyps after 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced protoporphyrin IX sensitization. Gastrointest Endosc 1999;49:97-101.
23 Mayinger B, Reh H, Hochberger J, Hahn EG. Endoscopic photodynamic diagnosis: oral aminolevulinic acid is a marker of GI cancer and dysplastic lesions. Gastrointest Endosc 1999;50:242-246.
24 Van Hillegersberg R, Kort WJ, Wilson JHP. Current status of photodynamic therapy in oncology. Drugs 1994;48:510-527.
25 Van den Boogert J, Van Hillegersberg R, Van Staveren HJ, De Bruin RWF, Van Dekken H, Siersema PD, Tilanus HW. Timing of illumination is essential for safe and efficient photodynamic therapy: a study in the normal rat oesophagus. Br J Cancer 1999;79:825-830.
26 Van den Boogert J, Van Staveren HJ, De Bruin RWF, Eikelaar JHR, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Photodynamic therapy for esophageal lesions: selectivity depends on wavelength, power and light-dose. Ann Thorac Surg (in press).
27 Van den Boogert J, Van Staveren HJ, De Bruin RWF, De Rooij FWM, Edixhoven-Bosdijk A, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Fractionated illumination in oesophageal ALA-PDT: effect on ferrochelatase activity. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol (submitted).
28 Van den Boogert J, Van Staveren HJ, De Bruin RWF, Siersema PD, Van Hillegersberg R. Fractionated illumination for oesophageal ALA-PDT: effect on blood flow and PpIX formation. Lasers Med Sci (submitted).
29 Peng Q, Moan J, Warloe T, Vladimir I, Steen HB, Bjorseth A, Nesland JM. Build-up of esterified aminolevulinic-acid-derivative-induced porphyrin fluorescence in normal mouse skin. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 1996;34:95-96.
30 Curnow A, McIlroy BW, Postle-Hacon MJ, Porter JB, MacRobert AJ, Bown SG. Enhancement of 5-aminolevulinic acid-induced photodynamic therapy in normal rat colon using hydroxypyridinone iron chelating agents. Br J Cancer 1998;78:1113-1118.
31 De Vree WJ, Essers MC, Koster JF, Sluiter W. Role of interleukine 1 and granulocyte colony-stimulating factor in photofrin-based photodynamic therapy of rat rhabdomyosarcoma tumors. Cancer Res 1997;57:2555-2558.
32 Korbelik M, Dougherty GJ. Photodynamic therapy-mediated immune response against subcutaneous mouse tumors. Cancer Res 1999;59:1941-1946.
33 Kim HRC, Luo Y, Gangyong L, Kessel D. Enhanced apoptotic response to photodynamic therapy after bcl-2 transfection. Cancer Res 1999;59:3429-3432.
34 Orenstein A, Kostenich G, Kopolovic Y, Babushkina T, Malik Z. Enhancement of ALA-PDT damage by IR-induced hyperthermia on a colon carcinoma model. Photochem Photobiol 1999;69:703-707.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Since 1970 the incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma has increased in many Western countries, at a rate that exceeds that of any other malignancy. One assumes that the majority of these adenocarcinoma arise in a Barrett's oesophagus. A generally accepted definition of Barrett's oesophagus is the presence of columnar mucosa with intestinal metaplasia, characterized by goblet cells, in the oesophagus. Photodynamic therapy with use of 5-aminolevulinic acid is a new treatment option ideally leading to selective endoscopic ablation of the Barrett's epithelium. Before photodynamic therapy can routinely be used for the treatment of patients with Barrett's oesophagus in clinical practice the technique must be optimized to ensure complete ablation of all (pre)malignant cells and minimize the occurrence of unwanted side effects. The preclinical studies described in this thesis intend to provide insight in the therapy and to investigate the modalities for effective results. As such, this thesis forms the fundamentals for future clinical patient studies on photodynamic therapy with use of 5-aminolevulinic acid for oesophageal lesions.

Chapter 1 presents the state of the art of the pathophysiology, diagnosis and management of Barrett's oesophagus. Barrett's oesophagus is probably caused by longstanding gastro(duodeno)-oesophageal reflux. Its diagnosis requires endoscopic examination with biopsy and histology from the lower oesophagus. Carcinogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus is thought to follow a sequence from intestinal metaplasia, to low-grade dysplasia, through high-grade dysplasia, to adenocarcinoma. Research on objective markers to determine the risk of malignant degeneration must lead to efficient surveillance of a selected group of patients in the future. At present, cost and time consuming surveillance programs -with still doubtful efficacy- are carried out in a few clinics only. Antireflux medication or eventually antireflux surgery are the current treatment options. Although reflux complaints disappear in almost 100%, no effect on the Barrett's epithelium itself has been shown and malignant

degeneration can still proceed.

Experimental endoscopic therapies, therefore, focus on the ablation of the columnar epithelium with restoration of the squamous epithelium. Endoscopic ablation can be performed by either a thermal, chemical or mechanical method. The characteristics and results of these therapies are outlined in the next chapter.

Chapter 2 reviews the current management and results of experimental endoscopic ablation therapies for patients with Barrett's oesophagus and high-grade dysplasia. The various methods of endoscopic ablation, including multipolar electrocoagulation, argon plasma beam coagulation, contact laser photoablation and photodynamic therapy and their advantages and disadvantages are considered. Furthermore, this chapter presents an overview of the results of 37 published patient studies, case reports, and abstracts on experimental endoscopic therapies for Barrett's oesophagus. It seems that all endoscopic ablation therapies, in combination with antireflux treatment, can result in reversal of both high-grade dysplasia and Barrett's oesophagus in a variable percentage of patients. However, the treatment parameters of the various ablation therapies should be optimized and the long-term benefits should be carefully evaluated in prospective randomised trials. The present chapter therefore concludes that, until then, the use of endoscopic ablation therapy for Barrett's oesophagus with high-grade dysplasia should remain investigational.

In **Chapter 3** the fundamentals of photodynamic therapy (PDT) and especially of 5-aminolevulinic acid (ALA)-based PDT are outlined. PDT is concerned with the use of laser light to activate a photosensitive drug previously administered to accumulate selectively in (pre)malignant tissues such as Barrett's epithelium. Subsequent illumination with laser light of an appropriate wavelength results in a photochemical reaction with the generation of singlet oxygen what causes cell death and thus destruction of the Barrett's epithelium. Porphyrins are most widely used as photosensitizers. The photosensitive porphyrins can be administered exogenously or produced endogenously. ALA, the photosensitizer that is used in the present thesis, induces endogenous production of porphyrins and especially of protoporphyrin IX (PpIX). The photophysics, photochemistry and photobiology of ALA-based PDT are discussed.

Chapter 4 describes the development of an animal model for Barrett's oesophagus. Assuming that reflux of duodenal contents is a causal factor in the pathogenesis of Barrett's oesophagus, duodenal reflux was induced in Wag/Rij rats and opossums (*Monodelphis domestica*) by means of an oesophagojejunostomy. Opossums were chosen, because, unlike rats, their gastrointestinal tract has non-

keratinized squamous epithelium in the oesophagus, oesophageal gland ducts and a gall bladder, more resembling the human situation. Animals were sacrificed at either 8 or 12 months thereafter. At 12 months after oesophagojejunostomy all rats showed macroscopic and microscopic Barrett's oesophagus (length: 16.5 ± 1.6 mm), whereas only 25% of the opossums showed microscopic foci of specialized intestinal metaplasia (length: 0.4 ± 0.3 mm). The duration of reflux correlated well with the length of Barrett's oesophagus in rats. This is the first study to show macroscopic Barrett's oesophagus in rats due to continuous duodenal reflux, and in which an oesophagojejunostomy was performed in opossums. Opossums only developed microscopic intestinal metaplasia in a minority of cases, probably because opossums have a different bile acid composition, a gall bladder and a functioning sphincter of Oddi, which results in reflux at only certain times of a day, whereas in rats fluid bile continuously flows into the jejunum. Furthermore it can be concluded that Barrett's oesophagus does not originate from oesophageal gland ducts because rats lack these structures. In the extensive introduction and discussion part of the present chapter, the results of other studies on the development of an animal model for Barrett's oesophagus and of studies on the etiology and pathology of Barrett's oesophagus are evaluated and discussed. The presented rat model provides a unique, reliable animal model for Barrett's oesophagus.

To investigate the possibilities of PDT for Barrett's oesophagus an animal model for a fast induction of Barrett's oesophagus would be more convenient. Therefore, in **Chapter 5** several pathogenetic factors and possible synergistic factors that could result in a faster development of Barrett's oesophagus have been studied. An oesophagojejunostomy was performed in six groups of six rats each. The following additional variables were studied: (1) drinking water acidified to pH 1.8, (2) an oesophagus-specific carcinogen: N-nitrosomethyl-benzylamine, (3) modalities 2 and 3 combined, (4) keratinolysis, and (5) denudation of the mucosa. Animals were sacrificed 18 weeks thereafter. In 80% of animals Barrett's oesophagus with a length of 1 to 9 mm was found. None of the additional factors hastened the induction of Barrett's oesophagus. Administration of a carcinogen in combination with an oesophagojejunostomy resulted in squamous or adenosquamous carcinoma in 82% of rats, whereas administration of carcinogen alone did not induce carcinoma. It can be concluded that in rats an oesophagojejunostomy provides a reproducible animal model for Barrett's oesophagus. Furthermore, in combination with a carcinogen, duodeno-oesophageal reflux induces oesophageal carcinoma.

In **Chapter 6** the differential diagnosis of gastric ulceration and perforation as was found in some animals in the rat model for Barrett's oesophagus, as described

in the previous chapters, is drawn. Infection, gastric ischaemia and acidity could be excluded as pathogenetic factors. Although the exact pathogenesis remains unclear, the withdrawal of food away from the bypassed stomach might have been crucial. Furthermore, vagotomy (inherent to the surgical procedure) leads to anacidity and a motorical impaired stomach unable to evacuate its alkaline contents leading to pooling at the junction between non-glandular and glandular stomach, the location where the perforations appeared. The most important lesson from the presented observation is that the gastric consequences of withdrawal of food should never be forgotten when experiments (*e.g.*, on the ulcer producing or anti-ulcer effect of agents) are carried out on the rat stomach.

The first step in making ALA-PDT clinically applicable for the treatment of Barrett's oesophagus is a thorough investigation of the pharmacokinetics of ALA after various routes of administration. **Chapter 7**, therefore, presents the results of a pharmacokinetic study in which the biodistribution of ALA and subsequent accumulation of PpIX was examined in rats. Animals were given 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA orally or intravenously and they were sacrificed at 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12 or 24 h thereafter. After ALA administration, ALA and porphyrin concentrations were measured in 18 tissues and fluids using a chemical extraction method. Liver enzymes and renal function were measured to determine ALA toxicity. The exact localization of porphyrins within tissues was determined using laser scanning microscopy. After both oral and intravenous ALA administration, mild, short-lasting elevation of creatinine was seen. In both treatment groups, ALA concentration was highest in kidney, bladder and urine. After oral administration, high ALA concentrations were also found in duodenal aspirate and jejunum. Porphyrins, especially PpIX, accumulated mainly in duodenal aspirate, jejunum, liver and kidney (>10 nmol per g tissue), less in oesophagus, stomach, colon, spleen, bladder, heart, lung and nerve (2-10 nmol per g tissue), and only slightly in plasma, muscle, fat, skin and brain (<2 nmol per g tissue). Peak levels (typically reached at 2 to 3 h after ALA administration) and total production of porphyrins were equal after oral and intravenous ALA administration. From analysis of the sequence of events that took place after ALA administration it appeared that *in situ* synthesis of porphyrins rather than an enterohepatic circulation or supply by serum contributed to PpIX accumulation. Laser scanning microscopy showed selective porphyrin fluorescence in epithelial layers. From this chapter it can be concluded that administration of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA results in accumulation of photosensitive concentrations of PpIX, 1 to 6 h after ALA administration, in all tissues but muscle, fat, skin and brain. This knowledge of the time-concentration relationship should be helpful in selecting dosages, routes of administration and timing of ALA-PDT.

Chapter 8 focusses in more detail on the pharmacokinetics of ALA and ALA-induced PpIX accumulation in the rat normal and Barrett's oesophagus. Animals with Barrett's oesophagus, induced by longstanding duodeno-oesophageal reflux as described in Chapters 4 and 5, and unoperated animals received 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA intravenously or orally. At different time intervals thereafter (t = 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12 or 24 h), ALA and porphyrin concentration in the oesophagus was measured using chemical extraction, and porphyrin localization was determined by laser scanning microscopy. Furthermore, to understand the mechanism of porphyrin accumulation, the activity of the enzyme porphobilinogen deaminase (rate-limiting in PpIX formation) and ferrochelatase (converts PpIX into haem by incorporating ferrous iron) and the iron concentration were determined in the oesophageal mucosa and muscle layer. After chemical extraction it appeared that porphyrin accumulation in the normal oesophageal mucosa was 3.5 fold higher than in the muscularis, with a maximum at 3 h after ALA administration. Laser scanning microscopy also showed maximum porphyrin fluorescence at 3 h after ALA administration. Due to the precise localizing properties of laser scanning microscopy, this study clearly showed selective homogeneous porphyrin fluorescence in the normal oesophageal mucosa and especially in the basal cell layer of the squamous epithelium. The underlaying submucosa and muscularis only showed minor fluorescence. In animals with Barrett's oesophagus porphyrin fluorescence was heterogeneous but also restricted to epithelial cells. There was no difference in fluorescence intensity between Barrett's and adjacent squamous epithelium. Porphobilinogen deaminase activity was higher and iron concentration lower in mucosa than in the muscularis ($P<0.001$). These results show that ALA-induced porphyrin accumulation selectively occurs in oesophageal mucosa, whether normal or Barrett's, compared to the muscularis, with a maximum at 3 h after ALA administration. This selectivity may be caused by a different activity of haem synthetic enzymes or a relative iron deficiency in the mucosa. Although porphyrin fluorescence did not selectively occur in Barrett's epithelium, ALA-induced endogenous photosensibilization seems highly suitable for PDT treatment of Barrett's oesophagus because for the treatment of oesophageal lesions it is more important to leave the muscle layer intact than the fast-regenerating adjacent normal squamous epithelium. The localization of the laser fibre during treatment will eventually determine the semi-selectivity of ALA-PDT for Barrett's oesophagus.

Chapters 9 to 12 deal with optimization of ALA-PDT for oesophageal lesions. **Chapter 9** aimed to optimize the time of illumination after ALA administration. The effectiveness of destroying epithelial cells as well as the possible impact on oesophageal function in the healing phase were evaluated. Animals received 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA orally and were illuminated at 1, 2, 3, 4, 6 or 12 h thereafter, all with the

same illumination parameters (wavelength 633 nm, radiant energy 25 J per cm diffuser, power output 100 mW per cm diffuser). To deliver homogeneous and circumferential light to the oesophageal wall, a 1 cm cylindrical diffuser was placed in an optically clear balloon catheter. During illumination, PpIX fluorescence spectra and true light fluence at the oesophageal surface were monitored. Animals were sacrificed at 48 h or 28 days after PDT. At day 28, animals were weighed and an oesophagogram was performed to diagnose strictures and dilatations. Damage was scored histologically for each oesophageal layer separately. In accordance with the results of the pharmacokinetic study described in the previous chapter, highest PpIX fluorescence was found at 3 h after ALA administration. Dosimetric results show that, due to the strong light scattering nature of tissue, the *in vivo* fluence rate was 3 times higher than the calculated incident fluence rate. At 48 h after PDT, major epithelial damage was found in all animals illuminated at 2 h, whereas minor epithelial damage was found in animals illuminated at 3, 4 or 6 h after ALA and none at 1 or 12 h. At day 28, in animals illuminated at 4, 6 or 12 h but not at 2 h after ALA, oesophagograms showed severe dilatations. Weight loss of the animals in these groups indicated functional impairment of the oesophagus. Histology showed a loss of Schwann cells, probably because these cells accumulate porphyrins relatively late after ALA administration. The results presented in this chapter demonstrate that the time interval between ALA administration and illumination is critical for achieving epithelial damage without functional impairment. A short interval of 2 to 3 h seems to be most appropriate.

In **Chapter 10** the influence of the choice of the laser parameters, including wavelength, power output and total light dose has been evaluated. Animals received 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA orally and were illuminated with either 633 or 532 nm light through an endo-oesophageal balloon catheter as described in Chapter 9. In all animals illumination was performed at 3 h after ALA administration with either 8.3 or 25 J per cm diffuser, applied with 33, 100, or 300 mW per cm diffuser. During illumination, tissue fluorescence measurements and light dosimetry were performed. Animals were sacrificed at 48 h after PDT and oesophageal damage was scored histologically. During illumination with both wavelengths, PpIX fluorescence (versus illumination time) declined faster when a higher power output was used. Furthermore, due to different optical absorption and scattering of tissue at different wavelengths, fluence rate at the oesophageal surface was highest for 633 nm. This might be the reason why 532 nm light caused less damage to the epithelium and muscle than 633 nm light. In both wavelength groups, illumination with low power output resulted in selective epithelial ablation, whereas illumination with high power output caused muscle damage with minor epithelial damage. Very selective epithelial ablation was achieved by the following laser parameters:

wavelength 633 nm, power output 33 mW per cm diffuser and total light dose 8.3 J per cm diffuser. Probably, rapid PpIX photobleaching and photochemical oxygen consumption during high power irradiances lead to relative hypoxia and therefore to a reduced PDT effect. Increasing the total light dose resulted in more damage, mainly to the muscle layer. The results of the study in this chapter indicate that the selectivity of ALA-PDT for inducing oesophageal epithelial lesions largely depends on the combination of the wavelength, power output and light dose. Most selective epithelial damage was found using low power red light and a low total light dose.

Apart from optimizing the timing of illumination and the laser parameters, the results of ALA-PDT might be further enhanced by fractionating the illumination. In **Chapter 11** the hypothesis has been tested that illumination at 1 h after ALA may selectively damage ferrochelatase (the enzyme that converts PpIX into haem), as this enzyme is temporarily bound to PpIX, finally resulting in enhanced PpIX concentrations. Furthermore, the effect of a second ALA dose, administered to ensure that the relative ferrochelatase deficit becomes relevant, was tested. Animals received 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA orally at t=0 h or at 0 h and at 4 h. The activity of the enzymes ferrochelatase and porphobilinogen deaminase and the PpIX concentration in the oesophageal wall were measured with and without illumination at 1 h after the first ALA administration. In a second study, animals received intra-oesophageal PDT at 4 h after ALA administration with or without illumination at 1 h, or they received a second ALA dose and PDT at 3 h after that second ALA dose, again with or without illumination at 1 h after the first ALA dose.

The results of both studies show that illumination at 1 h after ALA caused inhibition of the ferrochelatase activity at 3 and 4 h after ALA. This resulted in a significant increase in the ratio "porphobilinogen deaminase:ferrochelatase" in animals illuminated at 1 h and sacrificed at 4 h after ALA ($P<0.001$). However, this resulted in neither more PpIX accumulation nor more PDT-induced damage to the oesophageal epithelium or muscle layer. Furthermore, the administration of a second dose of ALA did not result in enhanced porphyrin accumulation or more damage. Therefore, it appears that fractionated illumination in a scheme as studied in this chapter does not enhance ALA-PDT-induced epithelial ablation of the rat oesophagus.

Chapter 12 describes the results of another study in which the effect of fractionating the 633 nm illumination of ALA-PDT of the normal rat oesophagus was studied. In this chapter the hypothesis was tested that fractionation of the illumination could enhance the PDT by: (1) delay of the vascular shutdown or relaxation of the vasoconstriction induced by ALA-PDT or (2) use of newly formed protoporphyrin IX (PpIX), produced between the illuminations. Rats were

randomly allocated to two groups. To study vascular effects, in group 1 illumination with 633 nm was performed at 3 h after oral ALA administration (200 mg kg^{-1}) either continuously with 20 or 40 J per cm diffuser length or fractionated 2x10 J per cm diffuser length with a 150 s interval. Blood flow in the oesophagus was measured with a laser Doppler flowmeter. To study the effect of renewed PpIX formation, animals in group 2 were illuminated continuously at 3 h after ALA with 20 J per cm diffuser length or 40 J per cm diffuser length or fractionated 2x20 J per cm diffuser length with a 3 h interval. In all animals the *in vivo* fluence rate and PpIX fluorescence were measured during illuminations and animals were sacrificed at 48 h after PDT. ALA-PDT did not cause any significant vasoconstriction. Fluorescence measurements and dosimetric results in group 1 did not differ between animals illuminated continuously or fractionated with a 150 s interval. In group 2, during a 3 h dark interval, PpIX fluorescence increased and bleaching occurred during the second illumination. The tissue optical properties changed during the 3 h dark interval, resulting in a lower in vivo fluence rate ($P \leq 0.001$). Fractionation did not result in more oesophageal damage. From this study it can be concluded that a 150 s interval during illumination in ALA-PDT does not increase oesophageal blood flow. During an interval of 3 h new PpIX is formed. In the present study, fractionated illumination using short or long time intervals did not result in more damage. Thus, this study shows no evidence for improved PDT effect with fractionated light delivery.

Chapter 13 includes the general discussion of this thesis and the considerations for clinical application. It provides a review of the results of the studies described in the present thesis, it discusses the consequences of the thesis for the clinical applicability of ALA-PDT for Barrett's oesophagus and provides recommendations for further research. It is important that whilst the results of both experimental and clinical studies are awaited concerning the completeness of the epithelial ablation, the occurrence of side-effects, the long-term results and in particular the development of adenocarcinoma, the use of ALA-PDT for patients with Barrett's oesophagus should be limited to randomized clinical studies.

CONCLUSIONS

1. In rats Barrett's oesophagus can be induced by longstanding duodeno-oesophageal reflux.

2. Barrett's oesophagus does not originate from oesophageal submucosal glands or gland ducts.

3. 5-Aminolevulinic acid is a safe photosensitizer inducing accumulation of photosensitive concentrations of protoporphyrin IX in the oesophagus.

4. 5-Aminolevulinic acid induces selective protoporphyrin IX accumulation in the oesophageal mucosa compared to the underlaying submucosa and muscle layer. There is no selectivity of protoporphyrin IX accumulation in Barrett's epithelium in favour of adjacent squamous epithelium.

5. When performing oesophageal ALA-PDT, the choice of the time interval between ALA administration and illumination is crucial to achieve epithelial damage without functional impairment.

6. The combination of wavelength, power output and total light dose largely determines the selectivity of ALA-PDT concerning the induction of epithelial lesions in the oesophagus.

7. Fractionated light delivery in oesophageal ALA-PDT does not result in enhanced PDT-induced epithelial ablation.

SAMENVATTING EN CONCLUSIES

In veel Westerse landen neemt sinds 1970 de incidentie van het adenocarcinoom van de slokdarm sneller toe dan die van enige andere soort kanker. Men neemt aan dat het merendeel van deze adenocarcinomen ontstaat vanuit een Barrett oesofagus. Een algemeen geaccepteerde definitie van een Barrett oesofagus is de aanwezigheid van cilindercel epitheel met intestinale metaplasie en de daarvoor kenmerkende slijmbekercellen in de slokdarm. Fotodynamische therapie met gebruik van 5-aminolevuline zuur is een nieuwe behandelingsmogelijkheid voor patiënten met een Barrett oesofagus. Hierbij vindt idealiter selectieve endoscopische ablatie van het Barrett epitheel plaats. Alvorens fotodynamische therapie routinematig in de kliniek kan worden toegepast voor de behandeling van patienten met een Barrett oesofagus dient de techniek te worden geoptimaliseerd teneinde complete ablatie van alle (pre)maligne cellen te bewerkstelligen en het optreden van complicaties te minimalizeren. De preklinische studies in deze dissertatie beogen inzicht te verschaffen in de therapie en vast te stellen op welke wijzen de resultaten ervan verbeterd kunnen worden. Dit proefschrift vormt daarmee de fundamenten voor toekomstige klinische studies betreffende fotodynamische therapie met gebruik van 5-aminolevuline zuur voor slokdarmaandoeningen.

In **Hoofdstuk 1** wordt de huidige stand van zaken betreffende de pathofysiologie, diagnose en behandeling van patiënten met een Barrett oesofagus gepresenteerd. Een Barrett oesofagus wordt waarschijnlijk veroorzaakt door langdurige reflux van maag en/of darminhoud in de slokdarm. De diagnose Barrett oesofagus wordt gesteld middels endoscopie, waarbij biopten genomen worden van de distale oesofagus. Waarschijnlijk verloopt de maligne ontaarding in een Barrett oesofagus via verschillende stadia. Eerst ontstaat intestinale metaplasie, vervolgens lichte dysplasie, dan ernstige dysplasie en uiteindelijk adenocarcinoom. Er wordt veel onderzoek gedaan naar objectieve markers om het risico op maligne ontaarding te kunnen voorspellen. Dit zou op den duur moeten leiden tot efficiënte controle

van een selecte groep patiënten met een Barrett oesofagus met een verhoogd risico op het ontstaan van slokdarmkanker. Vooralsnog worden de dure, tijdrovende controles, waarvan het nut nog ter discussie staat, alleen uitgevoerd in enkele gespecialiseerde klinieken. Tegenwoordig worden patiënten met een Barrett oesofagus vrijwel altijd behandeld met antireflux medicatie, een enkeling ondergaat antireflux chirurgie. Hoewel de klachten van zuurbranden na medicamenteuze danwel chirurgische behandeling vrijwel altijd verdwijnen, heeft de behandeling geen effect op het Barrett epitheel zelf en evenmin op het risico op maligne ontaarding. Experimentele endoscopische therapieën richten zich daarom op ablatie van het Barrett epitheel met regeneratie van plaveiselcel epitheel. Chirurgische endoscopische ablatie kan bereikt worden middels een thermische, chemische of mechanische methode. De kenmerken en resultaten van deze therapieën worden besproken in het volgende hoofdstuk.

Hoofdstuk 2 behandelt allereerst de huidige therapie van patiënten met een Barrett oesofagus met ernstige dysplasie. Daarnaast wordt een aantal experimentele endoscopische ablatie therapieën, waaronder multipolaire electrocoagulatie, argon plasma beam coagulatie, contact laser fotoablatie en fotodynamische therapie, besproken. Van elk van deze therapieën worden de voor- en nadelen gepresenteerd. Bovendien geeft dit hoofdstuk een overzicht van de resultaten van 37 gepubliceerde patiëntenstudies, case-reports en abstracts over experimentele endoscopische ablatie therapieën voor patiënten met een Barrett oesofagus. Uit de resultaten blijkt dat in principe alle genoemde experimentele therapieën, in combinatie met zuurremming, kunnen leiden tot verwijdering van zowel de ernstige dysplasie als van het Barrett epitheel zelf. Het succespercentage wisselt echter sterk. In hoofdstuk 2 wordt derhalve geconcludeerd dat endoscopische ablatie therapie voor patiënten met een Barrett oesofagus en ernstige dysplasie vooralsnog slechts in onderzoeksverband dient plaats te vinden. Middels prospectieve gerandomiseerde trials moeten de verschillende therapieën geoptimaliseerd worden en kunnen de effecten en resultaten op de lange termijn zorgvuldig worden onderzocht.

Hoofdstuk 3 behandelt het werkingsmechanisme van fotodynamische therapie (PDT) in het algemeen en van PDT met gebruik van 5-aminolevuline zuur (ALA) in het bijzonder. Bij PDT wordt laserlicht gebruikt om een lichtgevoelige stof te activeren. Deze lichtgevoelige stof hoopt zich idealiter selectief op in (pre)maligne weefsel, zoals Barrett oesofagus. Daaropvolgende belichting met laserlicht met een geschikte golflengte veroorzaakt een fotochemische reactie waarbij zuurstof-radicalen vrijkomen die schade toebrengen aan het Barrett epitheel. Porfyrines worden het meest gebruikt als lichtgevoelige stof. Deze porfyrines kunnen exogeen worden toegediend danwel endogeen worden geproduceerd. ALA, de fotosensitizer

die in dit proefschrift wordt gebruikt, induceert een endogene productie van de lichtgevoelige stof protoporfyrine IX (PpIX). In dit hoofdstuk worden de fysische, chemische en biologische processen die plaatsvinden bij ALA-gemedieerde PDT behandeld.

In **Hoofdstuk 4** wordt de ontwikkeling van een diermodel voor Barrett oesofagus beschreven. Ervan uitgaande dat reflux van dunne darm inhoud een causale factor in de pathogenese van Barrett oesofagus is, is reflux van dunne darm inhoud via een oesofagojejunostomie geïnduceerd in zowel Wag/Rij-ratten als opossums (buidelratten, *Monodelphis domestica*). Opossums werden gekozen omdat het maagdarmstelsel van deze dieren, meer dan dat van de rat, lijkt op dat van de mens. Opossums hebben onder andere niet-verhoornend plaveisel epitheel en submucosale kliertjes in de slokdarm. Daarnaast hebben zij een galblaas. De dieren werden op 8 of 12 maanden na de operatie opgeofferd. Na 12 maanden duodeno-oesofageale reflux hadden alle ratten een macroscopische en microscopische Barrett oesofagus (lengte: 16.5 $\pm$ 1.6 mm) ontwikkeld, terwijl slechts 25% van de opossums microscopische foci van cilinderepitheel met intestinale metaplasie (lengte: 0.4 $\pm$ 0.3 mm) had ontwikkeld. De duur van de reflux correlleerde goed met de lengte van het Barrettepitheel in de rat. Dit is de eerste studie waarin ratten een macroscopische Barrett oesofagus ontwikkelden door langdurige duodeno-oesofageale reflux en waarin een oesofagojejunostomie werd uitgevoerd in opossums. De verschillende resultaten in ratten en opossums kunnen waarschijnlijk verklaard worden door het feit dat opossums een galblaas en functionerende sfincter van Oddi hebben, wat resulteert in slechts enkele malen reflux per dag, terwijl in ratten vloeibare gal continu in het jejunum stroomt. Daarnaast hebben opossums een andere galzuursamenstelling dan ratten. Aangezien ratten geen submucosale klieren in de slokdarm hebben kan verder worden geconcludeerd dat een Barrett oesofagus niet vanuit deze submucosale klieren ontstaat maar waarschijnlijk vanuit epitheliale stamcellen gelokaliseerd in de basale epitheliale cellaag. Tenslotte worden in de uitgebreide introductie en discussie van dit hoofdstuk de resultaten van andere diermodelstudies voor Barrett oesofagus en een aantal studies naar de etiologie en pathogenese van Barrett oesofagus geëvalueerd en bediscussieërd. Het diermodel in de rat zoals dat beschreven wordt in dit hoofdstuk vormt een uniek en betrouwbaar model voor Barrett oesofagus.

Om de mogelijkheden van PDT voor Barrett oesofagus te onderzoeken zou een diermodel waarmee sneller een Barrett oesofagus geïnduceerd kan worden praktischer zijn. In **Hoofdstuk 5** worden enkele, mogelijk synergistisch, pathogene factoren onderzocht die een snellere inductie van Barrett oesofagus zouden kunnen bewerkstelligen. Hiervoor is bij zes groepen ratten een oesofagojejunostomie

uitgevoerd. De volgende additionele variabelen zijn daarbij onderzocht: (1) aangezuurd drinkwater met een pH van 1.8, (2) de slokdarm-specifieke carcinogene stof N-nitrosomethyl-benzylamine, (3) een combinatie van beide voorgaanden, (4) keratolyse middels lokale applicatie van salicylzuur en (5) chirurgisch strippen van de slokdarmmucosa. Naar aanleiding van de resultaten uit het vorige hoofdstuk werd dit experiment alleen in ratten uitgevoerd. De dieren werden na 18 weken opgeofferd. In 80% van de dieren werd een Barrett oesofagus met een lengte van 1-9 mm gevonden. Geen van de bijkomende factoren versnelde de inductie van Barrett oesofagus. Toediening van carcinogeen in combinatie met een oesofago-jejunostomie resulteerde in 82% van de ratten in een plaveiselcel danwel adenosquameus carcinoom terwijl toediening van alleen de carcinogene stof niet resulteerde in carcinoomvorming. Er kan derhalve worden geconcludeerd dat het solitair uitvoeren van een oesofagojejunostomie in de rat een reproduceerbaar diermodel voor Barrett oesofagus is. Daarnaast induceert duodeno-oesofageale reflux in combinatie met een carcinogeen oesofagus carcinoom.

In **Hoofdstuk 6** wordt de differentiaal diagnose opgesteld van de maagperforatie, zoals deze in sommige dieren in het ratmodel voor Barrett oesofagus, beschreven in de vorige hoofdstukken, optrad. Infectie, ischemie van de maag en "maagzuur" konden worden geëxcludeerd als pathogene factoren. Hoewel de precieze pathogenese onduidelijk blijft, is waarschijnlijk het feit dat er geen voedsel in de maag komt na de chirurgische omleiding cruciaal geweest. Daarnaast induceert de vagotomie, die inherent is aan de chirurgische procedure, anaciditeit en een vermindering van de motoriek van de maag. Dit leidt tot ophoping van alkalische inhoud in de maag met name op de overgang van non-glandulaire en glandulaire maag, exact de locatie waar de perforaties gevonden werden. De belangrijkste conclusie van deze observatie is dat de consequenties van het onthouden van voedsel aan de maag nooit vergeten moeten worden wanneer experimenten (b.v. naar de ulcerogene of anti-ulcerogene werking van stoffen) worden uitgevoerd in de rattenmaag.

Alvorens ALA klinisch gebruikt kan worden voor PDT is een diepgaand onderzoek naar de farmakokinetiek van ALA na verschillende toedieningsvormen noodzakelijk. In **Hoofdstuk 7** worden daarom de resultaten gepresenteerd van een farmakokinetische studie waarin de biodistributie van ALA en de daaropvolgende accumulatie van PpIX in ratten is onderzocht. De dieren kregen 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA oraal of intraveneus toegediend en werden op 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12 of 24 uur na toediening opgeofferd. Middels een chemische extractiemethode is de concentratie ALA en porfyrine in 18 verschillende weefsels en vloeistoffen bepaald. Om de toxiciteit van ALA te bepalen zijn leverenzymen bepaald en nierfunctietesten

uitgevoerd. De porfyrine lokalisatie in de weefsels is met laser scanning microscopie bepaald. Na zowel orale als intraveneuze toediening van ALA werd een milde, kortdurende stijging van het kreatinine waargenomen. In beide behandelingsgroepen was de ALA-concentratie het hoogst in nier, blaas en urine. Na orale toediening werden eveneens hoge ALA-concentraties gevonden in dunne darm inhoud en jejunum. Porfyrines, met name PpIX, accumuleerden voornamelijk in dunne darm inhoud, jejunum, lever en nier (> 10 nmol per g weefsel), minder in oesofagus, maag, colon, milt, blaas, hart, long en zenuw (2-10 nmol per g weefsel), en slechts minimaal in plasma, spier, vet, huid en hersenen (< 2 nmol per g weefsel). De hoogste concentratie (meestal bereikt op 2 tot 3 uur na ALA-toediening) en de totale produktie van porfyrines waren na orale en intraveneuze toediening identiek. Na analyse van de volgorde van gebeurtenissen die plaatsvonden na ALA-toediening bleek dat *in situ* synthese van porfyrines, en niet zozeer een enterohepatische kringloop of aanvoer via het serum zorgde voor PpIX accumulatie. Laser scanning microscopie, tenslotte, toonde selectieve porfyrine fluorescentie in de epitheliale lagen van de onderzochte weefsels aan. Uit dit hoofdstuk blijkt dat toediening van 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA resulteert in accumulatie van fotosensitieve concentraties van PpIX, op 1 tot 6 uur na ALA toediening, in alle weefsels behalve spier, vet, huid en hersenen. Kennis van de ALA en porfyrine concentratie op verschillende tijdstippen na ALA toediening, zoals gepresenteerd in dit hoofstuk, zal moeten lijden tot inzicht in de optimale dosis, de manier van toediening en het tijdstip van belichting na toediening van ALA.

In **Hoofdstuk 8** wordt meer in detail ingegaan op de farmakokinetiek van ALA en van ALA-geïnduceerde PpIX ophoping in de normale en Barrett rattenslokdarm. Aan dieren met een Barrett oesofagus, middels langdurige reflux geïnduceerd zoals beschreven in de hoofdstukken 4 en 5, en aan niet geopereerde dieren werd 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA oraal danwel intraveneus toegediend. Op verschillende tijdstippen na toediening (t=1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12 en 24 uur), werd de ALA- en porfyrine concentratie gemeten in de oesofagus middels een chemische extractie methode. De porfyrine lokalisatie werd met laser scanning microscopie bepaald. Om het mechanisme van porfyrine accumulatie te begrijpen, werd in de mucosa en in de spierlaag van de slokdarm de activiteit van de enzymen porphobilinogeen deaminase (dit enzym is snelheidsbeperkend in PpIX aanmaak) en ferrochelatase (dit enzym zet PpIX om in haem door ijzer te incorporeren), alsmede de ijzerconcentratie gemeten. Na chemische extractie bleek dat porfyrine-accumulatie in de normale oesofagus mucosa 3.5 keer zo hoog was als in de spierlaag, met een maximum op 3 uur na ALA toediening. Laser scanning microscopie toonde eveneens maximale porfyrine fluorescentie op 3 uur na ALA toediening aan. Daarnaast kon met deze techniek worden aangetoond dat homogene fluorescentie zich selectief in de mucosa van de

slokdarm en met name in de basale cellaag van het plaveiselcel epitheel bevond. De onderliggende submucosa en spierlaag lieten slechts zwakke fluores-centie zien. In dieren met een Barrett oesofagus was de porfyrine fluorescentie heterogener, maar beperkte zich eveneens tot de epitheliale cellen. De intensiteit van de fluorescentie verschilde niet tussen Barrett epitheel en aangrenzend plaveisel epitheel. In de slokdarm mucosa was de porphobilinogeen deaminase activiteit hoger en de ijzerconcentratie lager dan in de spierlaag ($P<0.001$). De resultaten van de studie in dit hoofdstuk laten zien dat ALA-geïnduceerde porfyrine accumulatie selectief optreedt in de normale en Barrett slokdarm mucosa, met een maximum op 3 uur na ALA toediening; de accumulatie in de spierlaag is in vergelijking hiermee gering. Deze selectiviteit kan berusten op een verschil in activiteit van de enzymen van de haemsynthese of een relatief ijzer tekort in de mucosa. Aangezien het intact houden van de spierlaag voor de behandeling van slokdarmaandoeningen belangrijker is dan het intact houden van het snel regenererende, aangrenzende, normale plaveiselcel epitheel, lijkt ALA-geïnduceerde lichtgevoeligheid zeer geschikt voor PDT van Barrett oesofagus. De plaats van de laserfiber tijdens belichting zal uiteindelijk de semi-selectiviteit van ALA-PDT bepalen.

De hoofdstukken 9 tot en met 12 handelen over het optimaliseren van ALA-PDT voor slokdarmaandoeningen. In **Hoofdstuk 9** wordt het tijdstip van belichting na toediening van ALA geoptimaliseerd. De effectiviteit in mate van epitheel ablatie alsmede het mogelijke gevolg voor de slokdarmfunctie in de herstelfase is onderzocht. De dieren kregen 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA oraal toegediend en werden belicht op 1, 2, 3, 4, 6 of 12 uur daarna, allemaal met identieke laserparameters (golflengte: 633nm; totale lichtdosis: 25 J per cm diffuser; uitgangsvermogen: 100 mW per cm diffuser). Om de slokdarm homogeen en circumferentieel te belichten werd een 1 cm-lange cylindrische diffuser geplaatst in een doorzichtige balloncatheter. Tijdens de belichting werden PpIX-fluorescentiespectra en de daadwerkelijke lichthoeveelheid op het slokdarmepitheel gemeten. De dieren werden 48 uur of 28 dagen na PDT opgeofferd. Op dag 28 werden de dieren gewogen en werd een slikfoto gemaakt om stricturen en dilataties te diagnostiseren. De schade werd voor iedere weefsellaag apart, histologisch vastgesteld. In overeenstemming met de resultaten van de farmakokinetische studie beschreven in hoofdstuk 8, werd de sterkste PpIX-fluorescentie gemeten op 3 uur na ALA-toediening. De resultaten van de dosimetrie toonden aan dat, door de sterk licht-weerkaatstende eigenschappen van weefsels, de *in vivo* lichtsterkte gemeten op het slokdarm epitheel drie maal hoger was dan de theoretische lichtsterkte. Op 48 uur na PDT werd ernstige schade aan het epitheel gevonden in dieren die belicht waren op 2 uur na ALA, terwijl slechts lichte schade aan het epitheel werd gevonden in dieren belicht op 3, 4 of 6 uur en geen schade in dieren belicht op 1 of 12 uur. Op

dag 28 toonden de slikfoto's van dieren die op 4, 6 of 12 uur na ALA-toediening werden belicht in tegenstelling tot dieren die op 2 uur belicht werden, ernstige dilataties en duidde het gewichtsverlies van de dieren in deze groepen op een verminderde slokdarmfunctie. Histologisch onderzoek liet in deze groepen een verlies van Schwannse cellen zien, mogelijk omdat in deze cellen pas relatief laat na ALA-toediening porfyrines accumuleren. De resultaten die in dit hoofdstuk gepresenteerd worden laten zien dat de keuze van het tijdsinterval tussen ALA-toediening en belichting cruciaal is om epitheelschade zonder functionele achteruitgang te krijgen. Een relatief kort interval van 2 tot 3 uur na ALA-toediening lijkt optimaal.

In **Hoofdstuk 10** wordt het effect van de keuze van de verschillende laserparameters, te weten golflengte, uitgangsvermogen en totale lichtdosis onderzocht. De dieren kregen 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA oraal toegediend en werden belicht met ofwel 633 nm ofwel 532 nm licht via een endo-oesofageale balloncatheter, zoals beschreven in hoofstuk 9. Bij alle dieren vond de belichting plaats op 3 uur na ALA toediening met 8.3 of 25 J per cm diffuser geleverd met 33, 100 of 300 mW per cm diffuser. Tijdens de belichting werden weefselfluorescentie metingen verricht en licht dosimetrie uitgevoerd. De dieren werden op 48 uur na PDT opgeofferd en de schade aan de slokdarm werd histologisch geclassificeerd. Tijdens belichting met beide golflengtes daalde de PpIX-fluorescentie uitgezet tegen de belichtingstijd sneller bij een hoger uitgangsvermogen. De lichtdosis op het slokdarmoppervlak was het hoogste bij 633 nm. Dit kan verklaard worden door het feit dat de optische absorptie en weerkaatsing van weefsels verschilt bij verschillende golflengtes. Dit is mogelijk de reden waarom 532 nm licht minder schade aan het epitheel en de spierlaag veroorzaakte dan 633 nm licht. In beide groepen veroorzaakte belichting met een laag uitgangsvermogen selectieve epitheliale ablatie terwijl belichting met een hoog uitgangsvermogen resulteerde in spierschade met minimale schade aan het epitheel. Zeer selectieve epitheel ablatie werd geïnduceerd met de volgende laser parameters: golflengte 633 nm, uitgangsvermogen 33 mW per cm diffuser en een totale lichtdosis van 8.3 J per cm diffuser. Waarschijnlijk zal snelle PpIX-fotobleking en fotochemische zuurstofconsumptie tijdens belichting met hoog vermogen leiden tot relatieve hypoxie en daardoor tot een verminderd PDT-effect. Verhoging van de totale lichtdosis resulteerde in meer schade, met name aan de spierlaag. Deze resultaten laten zien dat de selectiviteit van ALA-PDT om epitheel laesies van de slokdarm te veroorzaken sterk afhankelijk is van de combinatie van gebruikte golflengte, uitgangsvermogen en lichtdosis. De meest selectieve epitheel ablatie werd verkregen met laag vermogen rood licht en een lage totale lichtdosis.

Naast het optimaliseren van het tijdstip van belichting en de belichtingsparameters is onderzocht of de resultaten van ALA-PDT verder verbeterd kunnen worden door de belichting te fractioneren. In **Hoofdstuk 11** is de hypothese getoetst dat belichting op 1 uur na toediening van ALA selectieve schade aan het enzym ferrochelatase (het enzym dat PpIX omzet in haem) kan toebrengen omdat dit enzym tijdelijk aan PpIX gebonden is, wat uiteindelijk lijdt tot de beoogde hogere PpIX-concentratie. Om ervoor te zorgen dat het relatieve ferrochelatase tekort ontstaan door de eerste belichting, benut wordt, is een studie uitgevoerd waarbij het effect van het toedienen van een tweede dosis ALA is onderzocht. Ratten kregen oraal 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA op 0 uur toegediend of 200 mg kg^{-1} ALA op zowel 0 uur als 4 uur. De activiteit van de enzymen ferrochelatase en porphobilinogeen deaminase en de PpIX concentratie in de slokdarmwand werden gemeten, met of zonder belichting op 1 uur na (de eerste dosis) ALA. In een tweede studie kregen de dieren intra-oesofageale PDT op 4 uur na ALA toediening, met of zonder belichting op 1 uur, of zij kregen een tweede dosis ALA en PDT op 3 uur na deze tweede dosis ALA, eveneens met of zonder belichting op 1 uur na de eerste ALA dosis. De resultaten van deze studie tonen aan dat belichting op 1 uur na ALA de ferrochelatase activiteit op 3 en 4 h na ALA kan verminderen. Dit resulteerde in een significante toename van de ratio "porphobilinogeen deaminase:ferrochelatase" in dieren die op 1 uur waren belicht en op 4 uur werden opgeofferd ($P<0.001$). Dit resulteerde niet in een hogere PpIX accumulatie noch in meer PDT- schade aan slokdarmepitheel of spierlaag. Ook een tweede dosis ALA leidde niet tot meer porfyrine ophoping of tot meer schade. Een gefractioneerde belichting volgens het toegepast tijdschema lijkt derhalve niet te resulteren in betere ALA-PDT-geïnduceerde abalatie van het slokdarmepitheel van de rat.

Hoofdstuk 12 beschrijft de resultaten van een volgende studie waarbij het effect van een gefractioneerde belichting wordt onderzocht. Twee hypotheses die het versterkte PDT-effect van een gefractioneerde belichting zouden kunnen verklaren zijn getoetst: (1) fractioneren vermindert de vasoconstrictie die veroorzaakt wordt door ALA-PDT en (2) bij een gefractioneerde belichting kan nieuw gevormd PpIX (geproduceerd tussen de belichtingen in) gebruikt worden. De ratten werden verdeeld in twee groepen. Om de vasculaire effecten te bestuderen werden de dieren in groep 1 op 3 h na ALA (200 mg kg^{-1}) continue belicht met 20 J per cm diffuser danwel gefractioneerd belicht met een pauze van 150 s tussen 2 maal 10 J per cm diffuser. De doorbloeding van het belichte gebied werd gemeten met een laser Doppler stroomsnelheidsmeter. Om het effect van nieuw gevormd PpIX te bestuderen werden de dieren in groep 2 belicht op 3 h na ALA (met 20 of 40 J per cm diffuser) of op zowel 3 als 6 h na ALA met 20 J per cm diffuser. In alle dieren werd de *in vivo* lichtsterkte op het slokdarm epitheel en de PpIX-

fluorescentie gemeten tijdens belichting. De dieren werden op 48 uur na PDT opgeofferd. Uit de metingen bleek dat ALA-PDT geen significante vasoconstrictie veroorzaakte. Zowel de fluorescentie metingen als de dosimetrie resultaten in groep 1 waren niet verschillend tussen dieren die continue of gefractioneerd belicht waren. Tijdens de 3 uur durende pauze in groep 2 steeg de PpIX fluorescentie en deze daalde opnieuw tijdens de belichting op 6 h na ALA. De optische eigenschappen van het weefsel veranderden tijdens de 3 h durende pauze hetgeen resulteerde in een lagere *in vivo* lichtdosis op 6 h ($P \leq 0.001$). Een gefractioneerde belichting met zowel korte als lange tijdsintervallen resulteerde niet in meer schade aan de slokdarm. Uit deze studie kan geconcludeerd worden dat bij ALA-PDT een pauze van 150 s tussen de belichtingen niet resulteert in een verbetering van de doorbloeding van de slokdarm. Tijdens een 3 uur durende pauze wordt nieuw PpIX gevormd. Dit resulteerde echter niet in meer schade. Deze studie levert derhalve geen bewijs voor een versterkt PDT-effect door een gefractioneerde belichting.

Met de algemene discussie in **Hoofdstuk 13** wordt dit proefschrift besloten. Het geeft een overzicht van de resultaten van de in dit proefschrift beschreven studies, bespreekt de gevolgen ervan voor de kliniek en geeft suggesties voor verder onderzoek. Het is belangrijk dat, zolang de uitkomsten van experimentele en klinische studies nog geen uitkomst hebben geboden ten aanzien van de volledigheid van de epitheel ablatie, het optreden van bijwerkingen, het resultaat op lange termijn en met name het optreden van adenocarcinoom, ALA-PDT voor Barrett oesofagus slechts in trial verband plaatsvindt.

CONCLUSIES

1. In de rat kan een Barrett oesofagus wordt geïnduceerd door langdurige reflux van dunne darm inhoud in de slokdarm.

2. Barrett oesofagus ontstaat niet vanuit submucosale klieren of klierbuizen.

3. 5-Aminolevuline zuur is een veilige fotosensitizer die accumulatie van lichtgevoelige concentraties van protoporfyrine IX induceert in de slokdarm.

4. 5-Aminolevuline zuur induceert selectieve protoporfyrine IX accumulatie in de slokdarm mucosa in vergelijking met de onderliggende submucosa en spierlaag. Er treed geen selectieve accumulatie van protoporfyrine IX op in Barrett epitheel in vergelijking met het aangrenzende plaveisel cel epitheel.

5. Bij ALA-PDT van de slokdarm is de keuze van de tijd tussen ALA toediening en belichting essentieel om selectieve schade aan het epitheel toe te brengen zonder functionele achteruitgang.

6. De combinatie van golflengte, uitgangsvermogen en totale lichtdosis bepaalt in belangrijke mate de selektiviteit van ALA-PDT om epitheel schade in de slokdarm te induceren.

7. Gefractioneerde belichting bij ALA-PDT van de slokdarm resulteert niet in meer PDT-geïnduceerde epitheel ablatie.

ADDENDUM

CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

Dr. R.W.F. de Bruin
Laboratory for Experimental Surgery
Department of Surgery
Erasmus University Rotterdam
Dr. Molewaterplein 50, 3015 GE Rotterdam

Dr. H. van Dekken
Department of Clinical Pathology
Erasmus University Rotterdam
Dr. Molewaterplein 50, 3015 GE Rotterdam

A. Edixhoven-Bosdijk
Department of
Gastroenterology and Hepatology
University Hospital Rotterdam Dijkzigt
Dr. Molewaterplein 40, 3015 GD Rotterdam

Drs. J.H.R. Eikelaar
Department of Surgery
Erasmus University Rotterdam
Dr. Molewaterplein 50, 3015 GE Rotterdam

Dr. R. van Hillegersberg
Department of Surgery
University Hospital Rotterdam Dijkzigt
Dr. Molewaterplein 40, 3015 GD Rotterdam

Dr. A.B. Houtsmuller
Department of Clinical Pathology
Erasmus University Rotterdam
Dr. Molewaterplein 50, 3015 GE Rotterdam

Dr. F.W.M. de Rooij
Department of
Gastroenterology and Hepatology
University Hospital Rotterdam Dijkzigt
Dr. Molewaterplein 40, 3015 GD Rotterdam

Dr. P.D. Siersema
Department of
Gastroenterology and Hepatology
University Hospital Rotterdam Dijkzigt
Dr. Molewaterplein 40, 3015 GD Rotterdam

Dr. H.J. van Staveren
Department of Clinical Physics
Dr. Daniël den Hoed Cancer Centre
Groenehilledijk 301, 3075 EA Rotterdam

Prof. dr. H.W. Tilanus
Department of Surgery
University Hospital Rotterdam Dijkzigt
Dr. Molewaterplein 40, 3015 GD Rotterdam

Prof. J.H.P. Wilson
Department of
Gastroenterology and Hepatology
University Hospital Rotterdam Dijkzigt
Dr. Molewaterplein 40, 3015 GD Rotterdam

DANKWOORD

Dit proefschrift is tot stand gekomen met de hulp en inzet van velen. Graag dank ik een aantal van hen met name.

Mijn promotor prof.dr. H.W. Tilanus. Reeds in het tweede jaar van mijn studie leerde ik u als clinicus (toen nog geen professor) kennen in de periode dat ik werkzaam was in het studententeam op "10 Midden". Dat u nu, jaren later, mijn promotor bent doet mij genoegen. Dank voor het vertrouwen dat u in mij heeft gesteld en de vrijheid die u mij heeft gegeven bij het uitvoeren van het onderzoek.

Mijn begeleider dr. R. van Hillegersberg en mijn copromotor dr. R.W.F. de Bruin. Beste Richard, jij hebt de projectaanvraag geschreven en mij aangenomen als onderzoeker op het project. Zonder jou was ik misschien nooit aan wetenschappelijk onderzoek begonnen. Ik heb veel geleerd van jouw enorme enthousiasme en fascinatie voor wetenschappelijk onderzoek in het algemeen en jouw ervaring en expertise op het gebied van fotodynamische therapie in het bijzonder. Gedurende het onderzoek hebben wij samen vele vruchtbare discussies gevoerd; bij het uitvoeren van de experimenten heb jij mij een grote mate van zelfstandigheid gelaten. Ik heb veel waardering voor de snelheid en deskundigheid waarmee je, naast je drukke werkzaamheden in de kliniek, de manuscripten hebt beoordeeld en gecorrigeerd. Het is spijtig dat niet eerder toegepaste regelgeving verhinderd heeft dat jij samen met Ron mijn copromotor bent. Alle betrokkenen weten echter jouw rol op waarde te schatten en het doet mij des te meer plezier dat jij in de grote commissie zitting wilt nemen.

Beste Ron, samen met Richard vormde jij één van de beste begeleiders die een promovendus zich kan wensen. Jij was er altijd. Dit proefschrift is eens te meer het bewijs dat de volgorde van de auteurs bij de artikelen niet altijd de inspanningen van betrokkenen weerspiegelt. Ik heb het als bijzonder prettig ervaren dat ik met al mijn vragen altijd bij jou terecht kon. Jouw hulp bij de praktische uitvoering is eigenlijk een apart hoofdstuk waard. Daarnaast hebben de inhoudelijke discussies, naarmate ons beider kennis over fotodynamische therapie toenam, regelmatig gezorgd voor nieuwe impulsen leidend tot het verrichten van nog niet eerder

uitgevoerde experimenten. Het feit dat ik mijn ambitie om thorax chirug te worden met jou besprak lang voordat anderen hiervan wisten zegt denk ik genoeg over de band die wij hebben opgebouwd. Ik hoop van harte dat wij in de toekomst gezamenlijk onderzoek kunnen blijven doen.

Prof.dr. J.H.P. Wilson, veel dank voor uw interesse in het onderzoek en de geboden "vanzelfsprekendheid" waarmee vele bepalingen zijn uitgevoerd op het Lab Interne II. Tevens dank ik u voor het aanvaarden van de functie van secretaris van de kleine commissie. Prof.dr. W.J. Mooi en prof.dr.ir. M.J.C. van Gemert dank ik voor de bereidheid het manuscript op zijn wetenschappelijke waarde te beoordelen en zitting te nemen in de kleine commissie. Prof.dr. A.J.J.C. Bogers en prof.dr. J.J.B. van Lanschot voor hun bereidheid zitting te nemen in de grote commissie alsmede voor de getoonde interesse tijdens het dagelijkse werk, respectievelijk op de door ons beiden bezochte congressen.

De Maag Lever Darm Stichting dank ik voor de financiële ondersteuning die het mij mogelijk heeft gemaakt om twee jaar volledig aan de in dit proefschrift beschreven studies te werken.

Een aantal collega's van de afdeling Gastroenterologie en Hepatologie wil ik danken voor hun samenwerking. Dr. P.D. Siersema, beste Peter, dank voor jouw klinische input tijdens de PDT-werkgroep, jouw betrokkenheid bij het onderzoek en voor het doornemen van de manuscripten. Jij corrigeerde de stukken altijd snel en vakkundig. Ik hoop dat de toekomstige gezamenlijke onderzoeken even plezierig en succesvol verlopen. Dr. F.W.M. de Rooij en Annie Edixhoven-Bosdijk wil ik bedanken voor alle bepalingen die zijn verricht op het Lab Interne II. Beste Felix, jouw interesse in en kennis van porfyrines en galzuren heeft tot goede ideeën geleid die de impact van de manuscripten hebben vergroot. Beste Annie, jouw hulp bij de bepalingen in het lab Interne II is onmisbaar geweest. Dank je voor jouw niet aflatende inzet.

Behalve op het Lab Interne II heb ik vele uren doorgebracht op de afdeling Pathologie. Dr. A.B. Houtsmuller dank ik voor de hulp bij het voorbereiden en uitvoeren van de fluorescentie studies. Beste Adriaan, de fluorescentiemeting gaf een extra dimensie aan de farmakokinetische studies (en alleen al om de titel schrijf ik mij in voor jouw volgende CD). Alex Nigg dank ik voor de hulp bij de analyse van de fluorescentieplaatjes en voor het benodigde geduld om mij wegwijs te maken op de KS-400. Dr. H. van Dekken, beste Herman, bedankt voor het beoordelen van de vele histologische coupes, jouw bijdrage aan het ontwikkelen van het diermodel en de discussies over de resultaten. En last but not least Coby Peekstok voor het snelle snijden en kleuren van de honderden coupes. Beste Coby, je kunt het woord "Swiss-roll" waarschijnlijk niet meer horen! Ik hoop dat het jou ook nu je met pensioen bent goed gaat.

Met de PDT-groep van de Daniël den Hoed Kliniek zijn meerdere inspirerende

gesprekken gevoerd. Zeer nauwe samenwerking vond plaats met dr. H.J. van Staveren. Beste Hugo, jouw inbreng in de PDT experimenten is voor de resultaten van deze studies van groot belang gebleken. Jij had de kennis om met dat hele kleine isotrope bolletje zowel de fluorescentie als de lichtdosis in de rattenslokdarm te meten. Omdat ik vaak "vergat" een koffie- of rookpauze in te lassen waren de experimentele dagen lang en intensief. En na afloop ging jij naar huis met een computer vol data waarvan ik de uitwerkingen graag al de volgende dag had willen hebben. Dank je voor jouw (fysische) input en de enthousiaste, prettige samenwerking.

Dr. W.C.J. Hop bedank ik voor de hulp bij de statistische verwerking. Zonder dit aan enige wetenschappelijke test te toetsen durf ik te stellen dat uw bijdrage van significant belang is geweest.

Alle medewerkers van het Laboratorium voor Experimentele Chirurgie wil ik hartelijk danken voor hun hulp en voor de goede sfeer die bij dit - ten principale solistisch - werk onontbeerlijk zijn geweest. Zonder anderen tekort te doen wil ik graag enkelen expliciet noemen. Dr. R.L. Marquet, beste Richard, als pater familias van het chirurgisch lab, heb jij deze naam voor mij waargemaakt toen jij bij mijn eerste voordracht op een congres "vaderlijk" naast mij zat. Onderzoekstechnisch hebben wij niet veel met elkaar te maken gehad, maar des te meer heb ik geleerd van jouw levenswijsheden, grote ervaring op het gebied van algemene onderzoeksprincipes en interesse in het reilen en zeilen van "jouw onderzoekers". Dank je voor de mooie periode die ik op het lab heb gehad. Fred Bonthuis, bedankt voor het bijbrengen van de microchirurgische technieken, het mee-opereren van de opossums, jouw enthousiasme en amicaliteit. Rob Meijer dank ik voor het werk in "the dark room", Lydia van Gastel-Quist voor het vele potter- en pipetteerwerk tijdens de drie "zwaarste" maanden. Prof.dr. A.D.M.E. Osterhaus dank ik voor de verleende toestemming om de opossums te huisvesten, alle dierverzorgers en met name Robert Dias d'Ullois (afdeling Virologie) voor het verzorgen van de ratten respectievelijk opossums en Pim van Schalkwijk en Ton Boijmans voor de hematologische bepalingen.

Betere kamergenoten dan Joos, Sylvia, Elma en Arend kan een mens zich niet wensen. Het was prettig om met jullie verhalen, discussie en anecdotes op de achtergrond, saaie literatuur door te nemen of achter de computer te zitten. De mooiste herinneringen van mijn onderzoekstijd heb ik aan de dagen dat iedereen beneden zat te opereren met de radio op de achtergrond. Ik ben zeer ingenomen met mijn paranymphen Elma en Arend, samen hebben wij de spanning rond experimenten en opleiding meegemaakt. Dank jullie voor de afgelopen drie jaar en bij voorbaat voor jullie steun op 8 december. Elma, bedankt voor de "Engelse" ondersteuning en ik hoop dat we elkaar zullen blijven zien, ook nu je naar Amsterdam gaat. Arie, jouw organisatietalent in acht genomen, je hebt het de

voorbije periode bij menig hockeytournooi in de praktijk gebracht, zal alles 8 december gladjes verlopen.

De thoraxchirurgen en collega arts-assistenten van de afdeling Cardio Thoracale Chirurgie dank ik voor de prettige sfeer op de afdeling. Het plezierige dagelijkse werk in de kliniek heeft het in de avonduren completeren van dit boekje verlicht. Bedankt voor jullie collegialiteit en getoonde interesse.

Resteren de personen die dicht bij mij staan, met wie ik liefde en vertrouwen deel en die zonder medische achtergrond een wezenlijke bijdrage aan dit proefschrift hebben geleverd. Mijn ouders, lieve papa en mama, jullie gaven ons vrijheid in geborgenheid. Het "zorgen voor" is als natuurlijk verminderd, de toewijding en stimulerende belangstelling blijven ongekend. Mijn broer Fred, schoonzus in spe Vivian (mozaïeken op de PC) en alle VdB's voor jullie continue interesse. Ik zal tijdens het eten nooit meer praten over dode ratten, zure reflux en maagperforaties.

Tot slot, Vincent, lieve schat je weet inmiddels beter dan menig clinicus wat de definitie van Barrett oesofagus is, in ieder geval ben je vaker op het lab geweest. Dank je voor alle hulp de afgelopen drie jaar, maar meer nog voor jouw liefde, toewijding en onvoorwaardelijke steun. Ik hou van je.

CURRICULUM VITAE

Jolanda van den Boogert-Kluin was born on May 20, 1971 in Rotterdam, the Netherlands. In 1989 she graduated from the City College St. Fransicus (gymnasium β) in Rotterdam. In the same year she started her medical training at the Erasmus University Rotterdam, where she graduated in May 1994. During her medical studies she worked in the "studentteam" at the Department of General Surgery from the University Hospital Rotterdam Dijkzigt. As part of her 4th year she spent six months in Ivory Coast, West-Africa, working on a research project concerning drug resistance of malaria among children. In June 1996 she obtained her medical degree cum laude.

From August 1996 she worked as a PhD student on the project "Photodynamic therapy for Barrett's oesophagus with use of 5-aminolevulinic acid" which was supported for two years by the Netherlands Digestive Diseases Foundation (applicant dr. R. van Hillegersberg). The studies described in this thesis were performed at the Laboratory for Experimental Surgery from the Erasmus University Rotterdam (dr. R.L. Marquet). The supervision was conducted by dr. R. van Hillegersberg and dr. R.W.F. de Bruin.

For the experiment described in chapter 8 she received the "Resident Award of the American Society for Laser Medicine and Surgery" and with the study described in chapter 10 the "Prix de Communication Scientifique d'Université de Nantes". During her last year as a PhD student she was offered a post-doctoral position at the Laser Centre from the University College London.

However, her ambition led her to the Department of Cardio Thoracic Surgery from the University Hospital Rotterdam Dijkzigt where she works as a house officer since October 1998. In January 2000 she will start her residency in general surgery at the Ikazia Hospital, Rotterdam (dr. W.F. Weidema) as part of her specialty training in cardio thoracic surgery (prof.dr. A.J.J.C. Bogers).

List of Abbreviations

ABPC	argon beam plasma coagulation
ALA	5-aminolevulinic acid
ALAT	alanine aminotransferase
ASAT	aspartase aminotransferase
ASC	adenosquamous carcinoma
ATP	adenosine triphosphate
BO	Barrett's oesophagus
CR	complete remission
DHE	dihaematoporphyrin ester/ether
DMSO	dimethylsulfoxide
FU	follow-up
H&E	haematoxylin & eosin
HGD	high-grade dypslasia
HpD	haematoporphyrin derivative
i.v.	intravenously
KTP	potassium titanium phosphate
LGD	low-grade dysplasia
LDF	laser Doppler flowmeter
MGD	moderate-grade dypslasia
MPEC	multipolar electrocoagulation
ND	no dysplasia
Nd:YAG	neodymium:yttrium-aluminium -garnet
NMBA	N-nitrosomethyl-benzylamine
PAS	periodic acid-Schiff
PBG	porphobilinogen
PBGD	porphobilinogen deaminase
PDT	photodynamic therapy
p.o.	per os (orally)
PpIX	protoporphyrin IX
SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
SEM	standard error of the mean
SF	selectivity factor (for epithelial damage)

Een stuk is voldaan als de meester
zyn voornemen daar in bereikt heeft

(Rembrandt)